

Introduction

Thank you for purchasing SoftBank 920SC.

- Read this guide thoroughly before using 920SC to ensure proper usage.
- After reading this guide, keep it on hand for later reference.
- Should you lose or damage this guide, contact Customer Service (☎P.13-29).
- Accessible services may be limited by contract conditions or service area.

SoftBank 920SC is compatible with both 3G and GSM network technologies.

Notes

- Unauthorized copying of any part of this guide is prohibited.
- Contents are subject to change without prior notice.
- Some functions and services are not available in Japan.
- Steps have been taken to ensure the accuracy of descriptions in this guide. If you find inaccurate or missing information, contact Customer Service (☎P.13-29).
- SoftBank will replace missing/misplaced pages upon request.

Chapter Contents At A Glance

Getting Started	1
Basic Operations	2
Calling	3
Messaging	4
Internet Services	5
Camera & Imaging	6
Media Player & S! Applications	7
Handy Extras	8
Communication Services	9
Handset Security	10
Connectivity & File Backup	11
Handset Customization	12
Appendix	13

Contents.....ii
 Accessories.....v
 About This Guidevi
 Safety Precautionsviii
 General Notes xviii
 SAR Certification..... xxiii
 FCC RF Exposure Information xxiv
 European RF Exposure Information xxv

1 Getting Started

Parts & Functions1-2
 Charging Battery.....1-5
 Power On/Off1-7
 Handling Precautions1-8
 Minding Mobile Manners.....1-9
 Security Codes1-15
 Emergency Numbers1-16
 Standby Window.....1-17

2 Basic Operations

Selecting Functions2-2
 Common Operations2-6
 Standby Display Options.....2-6
 S! Familiar Usability (Japanese).....2-7
 Text Entry.....2-9
 Text Entry Method2-10

User's Dictionary.....2-14
 Phonebook2-16
 Using Phonebook.....2-20
 Account Details.....2-23
 Data Folder2-23
 Viewing Files.....2-25
 Managing Files/Folders.....2-27
 Face Link2-32
 Memory Card2-35
 Viewing Memory Status2-37

3 Calling

Making a Call.....3-2
 Receiving a Call3-3
 Answering Machine3-4
 Video Call.....3-5
 Making a Video Call.....3-5
 Receiving a Video Call3-6
 Speed Dial.....3-7
 Call Time & Cost3-8
 Call Log Records3-9
 Global Roaming Service3-11
 Optional Services.....3-13
 Voice Mail3-14
 Call Forwarding3-16
 Call Waiting3-17
 Conference Call.....3-18

Call Barring.....3-19
 Caller ID.....3-22

4 Messaging

Messaging Basics4-2
 Custom Mail Address4-2
 Sending S! Mail4-3
 Sending SMS Messages4-8
 Received Messages4-9
 Managing & Using Messages4-12
 Managing Folders.....4-16

5 Internet Services

Internet Services5-2
 Yahoo! Keitai.....5-3
 PC Site Browser5-4
 Page Operations.....5-5
 Bookmarks.....5-6
 Saved Pages5-7
 Streaming5-8
 S! Quick News (Japanese)5-9
 S! Town (Japanese)5-13
 S! Loop (Japanese)5-14

6 Camera & Imaging

Mobile Camera6-2

Camera Mode.....6-4
 Single Shot.....6-5
 Capturing Options.....6-7
 Video Mode.....6-10
 Recording Video.....6-10
 Editing Images6-12
 Printing Still Images.....6-14

7 Media Player & S! Applications

Media Player7-2
 Playing Music7-4
 Playing Video7-6
 Using Playlist7-8
 Editing Videos.....7-9
 S! Applications.....7-10
 Downloading S! Appli.....7-11

8 Handy Extras

Saving Calendar Entries8-2
 Alarms8-4
 Calculator.....8-5
 Currency or Unit Converter.....8-5
 World Clock.....8-7
 Notepad8-7
 Tasks8-8
 Voice Recorder.....8-9

Bar Code Reader8-10
 Stopwatch.....8-13
 Dictionary8-14
 File Viewer.....8-14
 BookSurfing® (Japanese).....8-15

9 Communication Services

S! Friend's Status.....9-2
 S! Friend's Status Members List.....9-3
 S! Circle Talk.....9-6
 Near Chat (Japanese).....9-10

10 Handset Security

Changing Phone Password10-2
 Setting PINs10-2
 Setting USIM Lock10-4
 Locking & Restricting Handset Operations...10-4
 Facial Recognition10-7
 Using Facial Recognition10-8
 Restoring Default Settings10-11

11 Connectivity & File Backup

Connectivity.....11-2
 Infrared.....11-2
 Infrared Data Transmission11-3
 Bluetooth®11-5

Bluetooth® Data Transmission11-6
 USB Connection11-9
 Memory Card Backup11-10
 Mass Storage.....11-12
 S! Addressbook Back-up (SAB).....11-13

12 Handset Customization

Messaging Settings12-2
 Internet Settings12-5
 Media Player Settings12-7
 Mobile Camera Settings12-8
 S! Appli Settings.....12-10
 Phonebook Settings12-10
 Standby Window Settings12-11
 Sounds & Alerts Settings.....12-13
 Manner Mode Settings.....12-14
 Display Settings.....12-15
 Phone Settings12-17
 Security Settings12-19
 Call Settings12-20
 Mode Settings12-25
 Connectivity Settings12-25
 Memory Settings12-26

13 Appendix

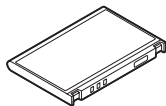
Battery & Charger13-2

USIM Card	13-4
Troubleshooting	13-7
Software Update	13-10
Function List	13-11
Key List for Text Entry	13-14
Symbols & Pictograms	13-15
Memory List	13-17
Specifications	13-17
Index	13-19
Objective Index	13-25
Advanced Settings Index	13-27
Warranty & Service	13-28
Customer Service	13-29

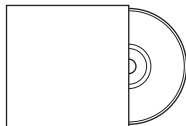
Accessories

Make sure the following accessories are included in the package with handset. These accessories are also sold separately. For details on accessories or optional items, contact Customer Service (☎P.13-29).

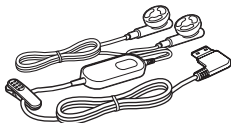
Battery [SCBAJ1]



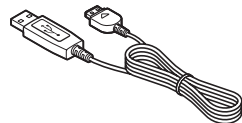
Utility Software¹ (CD-ROM)



Stereo Earphone Microphone [SCLAJ1]



USB Cable [SCDAJ1]



SBM Charger Connector Adapter (SC-A) [SCDAJ2]²



- 1 Utility Software updates/upgrades may become available via SoftBank Website (<http://www.softbank.jp>) without prior notice. Please check for the newest versions of Utility Software and download as required.
 - 2 Connect to AC Charger (☎P.1-5). Two Connector Adapters are included.
- * Use only specified Charger (Optional) for charging.

- 920SC takes microSD™ Memory Card (not included). Purchase one to use Memory Card functions.
- microSD™ Memory Card is referred to as "Memory Card" in this manual.

About This Guide

In this guide, SoftBank 920SC is referred to as 920SC/handset. Instructions are described using mainly default settings. When settings are changed, screen shots or handset responses may differ from those depicted in this guide.

Screen Shots and 920SC Illustrations

Screen shots appearing in this guide are for reference only and may differ from actual Display images. Product illustrations may differ from actual product appearance.

Confirmations & Warning Messages

Messages not described in this guide may appear; read all handset confirmations and warning messages carefully.

Japanese Functions & Services

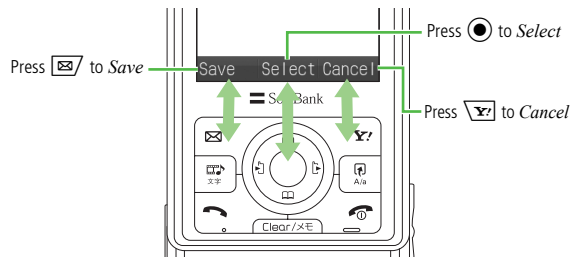
When "(Japanese)" appears in a title, Japanese ability is required to use full range of the function or service.

Symbols

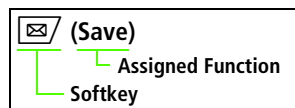
In this guide, graphics represent 920SC keys; see "Parts & Functions" (P.1-2). Softkey and Multi Selector operations are indicated as follows.

Softkeys

Operation options appear at the bottom of Display. Press the corresponding Softkey to execute assigned functions.



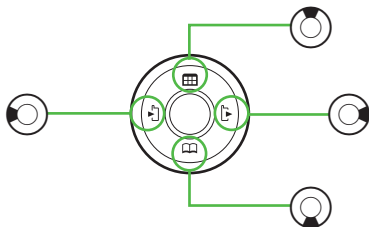
Softkey Operations



Multi Selector Operations

Use Multi Selector to select menu items, move cursor, and scroll, etc. In this guide, Multi Selector operations are indicated as shown below.

Basic Multi Selector Operations



 : Press  or 

 : Press  or 

 : Press , , , or 

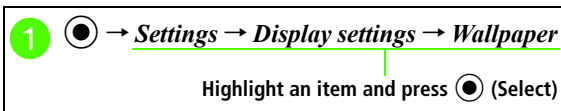
Highlighting

In this guide, "to highlight" means to move cursor to an item.

Menu Operations

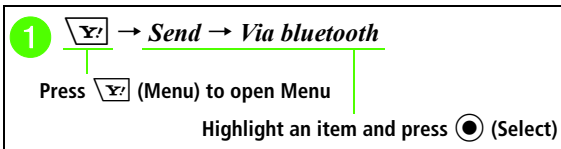
Main Menu/Menu operations are simplified with arrows.

Main Menu



For details, see "Selecting Functions from Main Menu" (P.2-2).

Menu






Safety Precautions

- Read these safety precautions before using handset.
- Observe all precautions to avoid injury to yourself and others, or damage to property.
- SoftBank is not liable for any damage resulting from use of this product.

Before Using Handset

● Symbols

Make sure you thoroughly understand these symbols before reading on. Symbols and their meanings are described below:

 Danger	Great risk of death or serious injury from improper use
 Warning	Risk of death or serious injury from improper use
 Caution	Risk of injury or damage to property from improper use

● Symbols

 Prohibited Actions	 Compulsory Actions	 Attention Required
---	---	---

Danger

Handset, Battery, & Charger

Use only specified battery and Charger (ⓈP.v).

Using non-specified equipment may cause malfunctions, electric shock or fire due to battery leakage, overheating, or bursting.



Do not short-circuit Charger Port.

Keep metal objects away from the Charger Port. Keep handset away from jewelry. Battery may leak, overheat, burst, or ignite causing injury. Use a case to carry handset.



Battery

If battery fluid gets into your eyes, do not rub them. Rinse with clean water and consult a doctor immediately.



Eyes may be severely damaged.

Avoid battery leakage, breakage or fire injury.

Do not:



- Heat or dispose of battery in a fire.
- Disassemble, modify, or break battery.
- Damage or solder on to battery.
- Use a damaged or deformed battery.
- Use a non-specified charger (ⓈP.v).
- Force battery into handset.
- Charge or place battery near fire, heat sources or expose it to extreme heat.
- Use battery for other equipments.

Warning

Handset, Battery, & Charger

Do not insert foreign objects into handset.

Do not place metal or flammable objects in handset or Charger. This may cause fire or electric shock. Keep handset out of the reach of children.



Keep handset out of rain or extreme humidity.

Fire or electric shock may occur.



Keep handset away from liquid-filled containers.

Keep handset and Charger away from chemicals/liquids. Fire or electric shock may result.



Avoid sources of fire.

To prevent fire or explosion, do not use handset near gas or fine particles (Coal, dust, metal, etc.).



Keep handset/Charger out of microwave ovens.

Battery or handset may leak, burst, overheat, or ignite.



Do not disassemble or modify handset.

- Do not open the housing of handset or Charger; it may cause electric shock or injury. Contact the SoftBank Customer Center, Customer Assistance for repairs.
- Do not modify handset or Charger. Fire or electric shock may result.



Do not use Mobile Light near people's faces.

Eyesight may be temporarily affected leading to accidents. Use of controls, adjustments, or performance of procedure other than those specified herein may result in hazardous radiation exposure. As the emission Record from Mobile Light LED used in this product is harmful to the eyes, do not attempt to disassemble the cabinet. Servicing is limited to qualified servicing station only. Contact SoftBank Customer Center, Customer Assistance for repairs.



If water or foreign matter gets inside handset:

Discontinue handset use to prevent fire or electric shock. Turn handset power off, remove battery, unplug Charger and contact the SoftBank Customer Center, Customer Assistance.



Do not subject handset to shocks.

Subjecting handset or Charger to shocks may cause malfunction or injury. Should handset break, remove battery and contact the SoftBank Customer Center, Customer Assistance. Discontinue handset use. Fire or electric shock may occur.



If an abnormality occurs:

Should there be any unusual sound, smoke, or odor, discontinue handset use to avoid fire or electric shock. Turn handset power off, remove battery, unplug the Charger, and contact the SoftBank Customer Center, Customer Assistance. Fire or electric shock may result.



Keep handset off and Charger disconnected near filling station or places with risk of fire/explosion.

Handset use near petrochemicals or other flammables may lead to fire or explosion.



Handset

Preventing accidents

- For safety, never use handset while driving. Pull over beforehand. Mobile phone use while driving is prohibited by the revised Road Traffic Law (Effective November 1 2004).
- Do not use headphones while driving or riding a bicycle. Accidents may result.
- Do not turn the volume up so high that ambient sounds cannot be heard, especially when walking in or around traffic to avoid accidents.



Do not swing handset by the strap.

Injury or breakage may result.



Turn handset power off before boarding aircraft.

Using wireless devices aboard aircraft may cause electronic malfunctions or endanger aircraft operation.



Ringtone & Vibration Settings

Select settings carefully if you have a heart condition or wear a pacemaker/defibrillator.



During thunderstorms, turn power off; move to a safe place.

There is a risk of a lightning strike or electric shock.



Do not use handset with wet hands.

Doing so may lead to electric shock or damage to 920SC.



Charger

Use only the specified voltage.

Non-specified voltages may cause fire or electric shock.



- **AC Charger: AC 100V-240V Input**

SoftBank is not liable for problems caused by charging handset abroad.

- **In-Car Charger: DC 12V/24V Input**

Do not use step up/down transformers.

Use of the AC Charger with step up/down transformers may cause fire, electric shock or damage.



Do not use In-Car Charger inside vehicles with a positive earth.

Fire may result. Use In-Car Charger only inside vehicles with a negative earth.



Do not touch plug blades with wet hands.

Electric shock may occur.



Do not plug multiple cords in one outlet.

Excess heat or fire may occur.



Do not bend, twist, pull, or set objects on the cord.

Do not put heavy objects on the cords or heat or pull the cords.

Fire or electric shock may result.



Do not short-circuit Charger Port.

Keep the metal away from Port. Overheating, fire, or electric shock may result.



Be sure to secure In-Car Charger.

Avoid injury or accidents.



Do not use AC/In-Car Charger if the cord is damaged.

Fire or electric shock may be caused. Contact the SoftBank Customer Assistance to replace the cord.



During thunderstorms:

Unplug Charger to avoid damage, fire, or electric shock.



Keep Charger out of the reach of children.

Electric shock or injury may result.



Battery

If battery does not charge properly, stop charging.

Battery may overheat, burst or ignite.



If there is leakage or abnormal odor, keep battery away from fire sources.

It may catch fire or burst.



If there is abnormal odor, excessive heat, discoloration, or distortion, remove battery from handset.

It may leak, overheat, or explode.



Handset Use & Electronic Medical Equipment

This section is based on "Guidelines on the Use of Radio Communications Equipment such as Cellular Telephones and Safeguards for Electronic Medical Equipment" (Electromagnetic Compatibility Conference, April 1997) and "Report of Investigation of the Effects of Radio Waves on Medical Equipment, etc." (Association of Radio Industries and Businesses, March 2001).

People with implanted pacemakers/defibrillators should keep handset more than 22 cm away.

Implanted pacemakers/defibrillators may malfunction due to radio waves.



Turn handset power off in crowded places such as trains. People with implanted pacemakers/defibrillators may be near.

Implanted pacemakers/defibrillators may malfunction due to radio waves.



Observe these rules inside medical facilities:

- Do not take handset into operating rooms or Intensive or Coronary Care Units.
- Keep handset off in hospitals.
- Keep handset off in hospital lobbies. Electronic equipment may be near.
- Obey rules regarding mobile phone use in medical facilities.



Consult the manufacturer of other electronic medical equipment about radio wave effects.



Caution

Handset, Battery, & Charger

Handset Care



- Place 920SC on stable surfaces to avoid malfunction or injury.
- Keep 920SC away from oily smoke or steam. Fire or accidents may result.
- Cold air from air conditioners may condense, resulting in leakage, or burnout.
- Keep 920SC away from direct sunlight (Inside vehicles, etc.) or heat sources. Distortion, discoloration, or fire may occur. Battery shape may be affected.
- Keep 920SC out of extremely cold places to avoid malfunction or accidents.
- Keep 920SC away from fire sources to avoid malfunction or accidents.

Usage Environment



- Excessive dust may prevent heat release and cause burnout or fire.
- Avoid using 920SC on the beach. Sand may cause malfunction or accidents.
- Keep 920SC away from credit cards, phone cards, etc. to avoid data loss.

Handset

920SC temperature

920SC may become hot while in use. Avoid prolonged contact with skin especially at high temperature. May cause burn injuries.



Avoid leaving 920SC in extreme heat (Inside vehicles, etc.).

Handset may heat up and lead to burns.



Volume settings

Keep handset volume moderate.
Excessive volume may cause damage to your hearing.



Headphones

- Do not unplug by pulling the cord; may damage the cord.
- Keep the plug clean to avoid noise or malfunction.



Inside vehicles:

Handset use may cause other electronic equipment to malfunction.



Should skin irritation occur, discontinue handset use and consult a doctor.





Skin irritation, rashes, or itchiness may result depending on your physical condition.


Parts	Materials & Finishing
Housing (Slide upper)	PC + GF30%
Housing (Slide lower)	Magnesium
Housing (Keys side)	PC
Keypad	PC + Urethane FILM + SILICON
Multi Selector	SUS
Earpiece Ornament	SUS
Charger/External Device Port Cover, Memory Card Slot Cover	PC + Urethane
Battery Cover	PC
Side Keys	ABS + Urethane
Camera Housing	AL

Charger


Charger & In-Car Charger

- Grasp the plug (not the cord) to disconnect Charger. Otherwise, fire or electric shock may result. 
- Keep the cord away from heaters. Exposed wire may cause fire or electric shock.
- Stop use if the plug is hot or improperly connected. Fire or electric shock may result. 
- Keep In-Car Charger socket clean. If might overheat and cause injury.


Use only the specified fuse.

A 1A fuse is specified for In-Car Charger. An improper fuse may cause damage or fire. 

Always charge 920SC in a well-ventilated area.

Avoid covering/wrapping Charger; may cause damage or fire. 

Do not use In-Car Charger when engine is off.

Start engine before use; may weaken car battery. 

Disconnect AC/In-Car Charger during long periods of disuse.

Be sure to unplug AC/In-Car Charger after use. 

Handset Maintenance

When cleaning, disconnect AC/In-Car Charger to prevent shock or injury.



Installing In-Car Charger

Properly position the cable for safe driving to avoid injury or accidents.



Battery

Keep battery out of the reach of children.

They may sustain injuries. And when using, do not let them remove battery from handset.



Do not leave battery in direct sunlight or inside vehicles.

Overheating or fire may occur and performance may be reduced.



Do not expose battery to liquids.

Performance may deteriorate.



If battery fluid makes contact with skin or clothes:

Rinse with clean water immediately.



Do not dispose of exhausted batteries with ordinary refuse.

Tape over battery terminals before disposal, or bring them to a SoftBank shop. Follow local regulations regarding battery disposal.



Do not throw or abuse battery.

Battery may overheat, burst, or ignite.



Charge battery within a range of 5°C- 40°C.

Battery may leak/overheat and performance may deteriorate.



If a child is using handset, explain all these instructions and supervise handset's usage.



If there is any abnormal odor or excessive heat, stop using battery and call the SoftBank Customer Center, Customer Assistance.



Do not leave battery uncharged.

Charge at least once every six months.



General Notes

General Use

- SoftBank is not liable for any damage resulting from accidental loss/alteration of any data on handset/Memory Card. Please keep separate records of Phonebook entries, etc.
- Handset transmissions may be disrupted inside buildings, tunnels, or underground, or when moving into/out of such places.
- Use handset without disturbing others.
- Handsets are radios as stipulated by the Radio Law. Under the Radio Law, handsets must be submitted for inspection upon request.
- Handset use near landlines, TVs or radios may cause interference.
- **Beware of eavesdropping.**

Because this service is completely digital, the possibility of signal interception is greatly reduced. However, some transmissions may be overheard.

Eavesdropping

Deliberate/accidental interception of communications constitutes eavesdropping.

Inside Vehicles

- Never use handset while driving.
- Do not park illegally to use handset.
- Handset use may affect a vehicle's electronic equipment.

Aboard Aircraft

- Never use handset aboard aircraft (Keep the power off). Handset use may impair aircraft operation.

Function Usage Limits

- The following functions are disabled after handset upgrade/replacement or service cancellation:
 - Camera
 - Media Player
 - S! Appli
- After a long period of disuse, these functions may be unusable; establish a Network connection to restore usability.

Handset Care

- If handset is left with no battery or an exhausted one, data may be altered/lost. SoftBank is not liable for any resulting damage.
- Use handset between 5°C - 40°C. Avoid extreme temperatures/direct sunlight.
- Exposing the lens to direct sunlight may damage the color filter and affect image color.
- Do not drop or subject handset to shocks.
- Clean handset with a dry, soft cloth. Using alcohol, thinner, etc. may damage it.
- Do not expose handset to rain, snow, or high humidity.
- Never disassemble or modify handset.
- Avoid scratching Display.
- When closing handset, keep straps, etc. outside to avoid damaging Display.
- When using headphones, moderate the volume to avoid sound bleed.
- Handset is not water-proof. Avoid exposure to liquids and high humidity.
 - Keep handset away from precipitation.
 - Cold air from air conditioning, etc. may condense causing corrosion.
 - Avoid placing handset in damp places (Restrooms, bath/shower rooms, etc.).
 - On the beach, keep handset away from water and direct sunlight.
 - Perspiration may get inside handset causing malfunction.
- Heavy objects or excessive pressure should be avoided. This may cause malfunction or injury.
 - Do not sit down with handset in a back pocket.
 - Do not place heavy objects on handset in a bag.
- Insert only specified devices into Headphone Port. Malfunction or damage may result.
- Always turn power off before removing battery. If battery is removed while saving data or sending mail, data may be lost, changed or destroyed.

Copyrights

Copyright laws protect sounds, images, computer programs, databases, other materials for copyright holders. Duplicated material is limited to private use only.

Use of materials beyond this limit or without permission of copyright holders may constitute copyright infringement, and be subject to criminal punishment. Comply with copyright laws when using images captured with handset camera.

The software contained in 920SC is copy protected material; copyright, moral right, and other related rights are protected by copyright laws. Do not copy, modify, alter, disassemble, decompile, or reverse-engineer the software, and do not separate it from hardware in whole or part.

Trademarks

- Licensed by QUALCOMM Incorporated under one or more of the following United States Patents and/or their counterparts in other nations:

4,901,307	5,490,165	5,056,109	5,504,773	5,101,501
5,506,865	5,109,390	5,511,073	5,228,054	5,535,239
5,267,261	5,544,196	5,267,262	5,568,483	5,337,338
5,600,754	5,414,796	5,657,420	5,416,797	5,659,569
5,710,784	5,778,338			

- Video Call, S! Mail, PC site browser, S! Quick News, S! Town, S! Loop, S! Appli, S! Friend's Status, S! Circle Talk, Near Chat, S! Addressbook Back-up, S! Familiar Usability, Arrange Mail and 3D Pictogram are trademarks or registered trademarks of SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp.
- "BookSurfing®" is a trademark or registered trademark of CELSYS, Inc., Voyager Japan, Inc. and INFOCITY Inc.
- "SOFTBANK", SOFTBANK's equivalent in Japanese, and the SOFTBANK logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of SOFTBANK CORP. in Japan and in other countries.
- "Yahoo!", the "Yahoo!" and "Y!" logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of Yahoo! Inc.

- This product contains ACCESS Co., Ltd.'s NetFront Internet browser software. NetFront is a trademark or registered trademark of ACCESS Co., Ltd. in Japan and in other countries.

ACCESS NetFront®

- Part of the software in this product incorporates a module developed by the Independent JPEG Group.
- THIS PRODUCT IS LICENSED UNDER THE MPEG-4 VISUAL PATENT PORTFOLIO LICENSE FOR THE PERSONAL AND NON-COMMERCIAL USE OF A CONSUMER FOR (i) ENCODING VIDEO IN COMPLIANCE WITH THE MPEG-4 VISUAL STANDARD ("MPEG-4 VIDEO") AND/OR (ii) DECODING MPEG-4 VIDEO THAT WAS ENCODED BY A CONSUMER ENGAGED IN A PERSONAL AND NONCOMMERCIAL ACTIVITY AND/OR WAS OBTAINED FROM A VIDEO PROVIDER LICENSED BY MPEG LA TO PROVIDE MPEG-4 VIDEO. NO LICENSE IS GRANTED OR SHALL BE IMPLIED FOR ANY OTHER USE. ADDITIONAL INFORMATION INCLUDING THAT RELATING TO PROMOTIONAL, INTERNAL AND COMMERCIAL USES AND LICENSING MAY BE OBTAINED FROM MPEG LA, LLC. SEE [HTTP://WWW.MPEGLA.COM](http://www.mpegla.com).
- Contains Macromedia® Flash® Flash Lite™ technology by Adobe Systems Incorporated.
- Copyright© 1995-2005 Adobe Systems Incorporated. All rights reserved.

- Macromedia, Flash, Macromedia Flash, and Macromedia Flash Lite are trademarks or registered trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the United States and other countries.

- JBlend™ is incorporated in this product. JBlend™ is a Java™ execution environment developed by Aplix Corporation for implementing advanced performance and fast operation on small-memory systems.

- Powered by JBlend™ Technology.

JBlend and JBlend logos are registered trademarks of Aplix Corporation in Japan and other countries.



- Powered by JBlend™, ©1997-2006 Aplix Corporation. All rights reserved.

- JBlend and all JBlend-based trademarks and logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of Aplix Corporation in Japan and other countries.


- Java and all Java-based trademarks and logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of Sun Microsystems, Inc. in the United States and other countries.



- "Chaku-Uta®" and "Chaku-Uta Full®" are registered trademarks of Sony Music Entertainment Corp.

- microSD™ is a trademark of SD Association.



- Bluetooth is a trademark of the Bluetooth SIG, Inc.  The Bluetooth word mark and logos are owned by the Bluetooth SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by Samsung Electronics is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.
- QR Code is a registered trademark of DENSO WAVE INCORPORATED.
- Powered by SwiftDecoder™ Copyright © 1996 - 2007, Omniplanar, Inc. All Rights Reserved.

Bluetooth®

In the frequency band of the Bluetooth® functions of 920SC, Industrial, scientific or medical equipments such as microwave ovens or in-house radio stations such as the ones used in production lines or by amateur radio stations (Referred to as "other radio stations" hereafter) are used. In order to prevent radio interference with other radio equipments, follow the points listed below in using handset.

1. Before using Bluetooth® functions, confirm there are no "other radio stations" operating near you.
2. In case there is a radio interference with "other radio stations," move to some other place or stop the Bluetooth® functions (Stop emitting the radio waves) immediately.
3. If you have any questions or problems with Bluetooth® emissions, contact SoftBank as listed below:

Contact: SoftBank Customer Center

From a SoftBank handset, dial 157 (toll free) for General Information. See "Customer Service" (☞P.13-29) for landline numbers by service area.

920SC transmits on the 2.4 GHz band, employing frequency-hopping spread spectrum (FHSS) modulation, with resistance to radio frequency interference between 1.5 - 5 meters, depending on usage environment.

SAR Certification

920SC meets the technical standards of Ministry of Internal Affairs and Communications (MIC) regarding radio wave absorption by a human body.

These technical standards are established on a scientific basis to prevent radio waves emitted from wireless devices such as mobile phones that are used close to human head from affecting human health. These standards assure that the SAR (Specific Absorption Rate), an indicator of the amount of average energy absorbed in the side of a human head, must not exceed the permissive value of 2W/kg*. This value includes a substantial safety margin designated to assure the safety of all persons, regardless of age and physical size. The value is equal to the international guideline recommended by International Commission on Non-Ionizing Radiation Protection (ICNIRP) that has a cooperative relationship with the World Health Organization (WHO).

The highest SAR value for 920SC is 0.393 W/kg. This value is obtained in accordance with the MIC testing procedure with the mobile phone transmitting at its highest permitted power level. While there may be differences in the SAR levels depending on phones, they all meet the MIC's permissible value. Because mobile phones are designed to employ the minimum power level required for the communication with the base station, the SAR of the phone during a call is usually below the maximum value.

For further information about SAR, please see the following websites:

MIC: <http://www.tele.soumu.go.jp/ele/index.htm>

ARIB: <http://www.arib-emf.org/initiation/sar.html>

* The guideline is defined by relevant laws and regulations associated with the Radio Law (No. 2 of Article 14 of Ordinance Regulating Radio Equipment).

FCC RF Exposure Information

Your handset is a radio transmitter and receiver.

It is designed and manufactured not to exceed the emission limits for exposure to radio frequency (RF) energy set by the Federal Communications Commission of the U.S. Government.

The guidelines are based on standards that were developed by independent scientific organisations through periodic and thorough evaluation of scientific studies. The standards include a substantial safety margin designed to assure the safety of all persons, regardless of age and health.

The exposure standard for wireless handsets employs a unit of measurement known as the Specific Absorption Rate, or SAR. The SAR limit set by the FCC is 1.6 W/kg.

The tests are performed in positions and locations (e.g., at the ear and worn on the body) as required by the FCC for each model. The highest SAR value for this model handset when tested for use at the ear is 0.289 W/kg and when worn on the body, as described in this user guide, is 0.202 W/kg.

Body-worn Operation; This device was tested for typical body-worn operations with the back of the handset kept 1.5 cm from the body. To maintain compliance with FCC RF exposure requirements, use accessories that maintain a 1.5 cm separation distance between the user's body and

the back of the handset. The use of belt clips, holsters and similar accessories should not contain metallic components in its assembly.

The use of accessories that do not satisfy these requirements may not comply with FCC RF exposure requirements, and should be avoided.

The FCC has granted an Equipment Authorisation for this model handset with all reported SAR levels evaluated as in compliance with the FCC RF emission guidelines. SAR information on this model handset is on file with the FCC and can be found under the Display Grant section of <http://www.fcc.gov/oet/fccid> after searching on FCC ID A3L920SC.

Additional information on Specific Absorption Rates (SAR) can be found on the Cellular Telecommunications & Internet Association (CTIA) website at <http://www.phonefacts.net>.

European RF Exposure Information

Your mobile device is a radio transmitter and receiver. It is designed not to exceed the limits for exposure to radio waves recommended by international guidelines. These guidelines were developed by the independent scientific organization ICNIRP and include safety margins designed to assure the protection of all persons, regardless of age and health.

The guidelines use a unit of measurement known as the Specific Absorption Rate, or SAR. The SAR limit for mobile devices is 2 W/kg and the highest SAR value for this device when tested at the ear was 0.409 W/kg*. As mobile devices offer a range of functions, they can be used in other positions, such as on the body as described in this user guide. In this case, the highest tested SAR value is 0.343 W/kg.

As SAR is measured utilizing the devices highest transmitting power the actual SAR of this device while operating is typically below that indicated above. This is due to automatic changes to the power level of the device to ensure it only uses the minimum level required to reach the network.

The World Health Organization has stated that present scientific information does not indicate the need for any special precautions for the use of mobile devices. They note that if you want to reduce your exposure then you can do so by limiting the length of calls or using a hands-free device to keep the mobile phone away from the head and body.

- * The tests are carried out in accordance with international guidelines for testing.

SAMSUNG
ELECTRONICS

Declaration of Conformity (R&TTE)

We, **Samsung Electronics**

declare under our sole responsibility that the product

GSM Mobile Phone : 920SC

to which this declaration relates, is in conformity with the following standards and/or other normative documents,

SAFETY	EN 60950-1 : 2001+A11:2004
	EN 301 489-01 V1.5.1 (11-2004)
	EN 301 489-07 V1.2.1 (08-2002)
EMC	EN 301 489-17 V1.2.1 (08-2002)
	EN 301 489-24 V1.2.1 (11-2002)
SAR	EN 50360 : 2001
	EN 62209-1 : 2006
	EN 301 511 V9-0.2 (03-2003)
RADIO	EN 300 328 V1.6.1 (11-2004)
	EN 301 908-1 V3.2.1 (05-2007)
	EN 301 908-2 V3.2.1 (05-2007)

We hereby declare that [all essential radio test suites have been carried out and that] the above named product is in conformity to all the essential requirements of Directive 1999/5/EC.

The conformity assessment procedure referred to in Article 10 and detailed in Annex[IV] of Directive 1999/5/EC has been followed with the involvement of the following Notified Body(ies):

**BABT, Balfour House, Churchfield Road,
Walton-on-Thames, Surrey, KT12 2TD, UK***
Identification mark: **0168**

The technical documentation kept at : **CE0168**

Samsung Electronics QA Lab.

which will be made available upon request.
(Representative in the EU)

Samsung Electronics Euro QA Lab,
Blackbushe Business Park, Saxony Way,
Yateley, Hampshire, GU46 6GG, UK*

2007.11.26

(place and date of issue)

Yong-Sang Park / S. Manager

(name and signature of authorised person)

* It is not the address of Samsung Service Centre. For the address or the phone number of Samsung Service Centre, see the warranty card or contact the retailer where you purchased your phone.

Getting Started

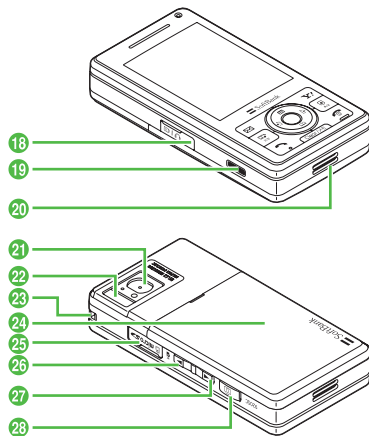
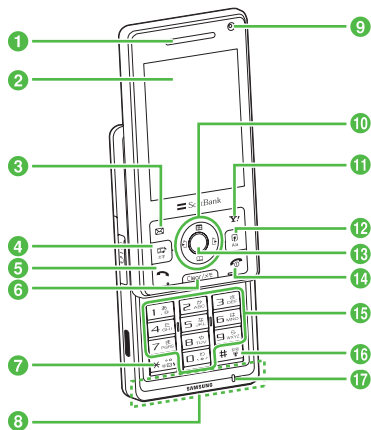










Parts & Functions	1-2
Handset	1-2
Display Indicators	1-4
Charging Battery	1-5
AC Charger	1-5
In-Car Charger (Optional)	1-6
Power On/Off	1-7
Handling Precautions	1-8
Key Lock	1-8
Minding Mobile Manners	1-9
Manner Related Functions	1-9
Offline Mode	1-9
Manner Key	1-9
Mode Settings	1-10
Changing Mode Settings	1-10
Security Codes	1-15
Phone Password	1-15
Center Access Code	1-15
Network Password	1-16
Emergency Numbers	1-16






Standby Window	1-17
Standby Window Display Settings	1-17
Standby Window Modes	1-18
Shortcut Mode	1-18
News Mode	1-19
Communication Mode	1-20
Advanced Settings	
Standby Window Settings	1-21




Parts & Functions

Handset



- 1 Earpiece/Speaker
- 2 Display
- 3  Left Softkey/Mail Key
Open Messaging menu or execute Left Softkey command/function.
- 4  Media Player/Character Key
Activate Media Player or toggle text entry modes.
- 5  Start Key
Make and receive Voice Calls.
- 6  Clear/Back Key
Delete entered text or return to the previous operation step.
- 7  * Key
Enter pictograms or press for 1+ seconds to open My status.
- 8 Internal Antenna
- 9 Internal Camera
Capture your own image or make Video Calls.
- 10  Multi Selector
Select menu items, move cursor, scroll window.
- 11  Right Softkey/Yahoo! Keitai Key
Open Messaging menu or execute Right Softkey command/function.
- 12  Switch Bar Key
Open Switch Bar (P.2-3).

- 13  Center Key
Open Main Menu or execute Center Softkey command/function.
Flashes for Missed Call or Incoming Mail.
- 14  Power/End Key
Turn power on/off or end operations.
- 15  -  Keypad
Enter numbers or characters and select menu items.
- 16  #/Manner Key
Enter symbols or press for 1+ seconds to activate or cancel Manner mode.
- 17 Microphone
- 18 Charger/External Device Port
Connect Charger, Stereo Earphone Microphone, etc. here.
- 19 Infrared Port
Use for infrared data transmissions.
- 20 Speaker
- 21 External Camera
Capture images or send video during a Video Call.
- 22 Mobile Light
Use as a strobe when capturing images in low light.
- 23 Strap Eyelet
- 24 Battery Cover
Open to insert or remove Battery or USIM Card.

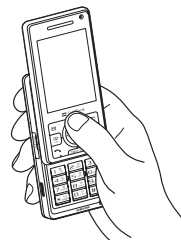
- 25 Memory Card Slot
Insert Memory Card here.
- 26  Side Key
Raise ringer or Media Player volume. Open S! Circle Talk members list or enlarge Video Call image.
- 27  Side Key
Lower ringer or Media Player volume. Reduce Video Call image.
- 28  Camera Key
Press for 2+ seconds to activate Camera; press to capture image or record video.



• Internal Antenna

920SC transmits and receives signals via Internal Antenna. There is no external antenna. Do not cover or place stickers, etc. over the area containing Internal Antenna. Voice quality may vary by where/how handset is used.

Opening & Closing 920SC

Slide Display up and down as shown here.

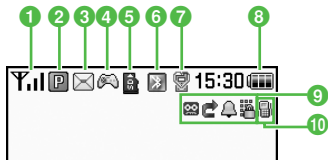


- When 920SC is opened or closed, Display Backlight responds as set in *Backlight time*; response varies by function in use.
- When 920SC is closed, press   to illuminate Backlight. When all keys are locked, Backlight illuminates and Unlock Keys message appears.

Note

- **Open or close 920SC completely; other use may cause damage, malfunction or injuries.**
- **Gently slide Display to open or close 920SC. Excessive force may cause damage or lead to malfunctions.**

Display Indicators




- 1 Signal Strength (more bars indicate stronger signal)
 Out-of-Range (*Language* set to Japanese)
Out Out-of-Range (*Language* set to English or 한국어)
 Offline Mode
- 2 3G Network Connected
 3G Network Connected (Ready)
 3G Network Connected (In Use)
 Packet Communication Unavailable
 SSL Connected
 GSM Network Connected
 GSM Network Connected (Ready)
 GSM Network Connected (In Use)
 Voice Call in Progress
 Video Call in Progress
 Receiving S! Circle Talk
 My status Online
- 3 New Message
 Downloading Content Key

- 4 S! Appli Active
 S! Appli Paused
 Receiving S! Appli Request
 Music Playback
 Music Paused
- 5 Memory Card Inserted
 Loading Memory Card Data
 Software Update Required
 PC Site Browser Connected
 Unread S! Quick News
- 6 (Blue) Bluetooth® Activated
 (Flashing in Blue & Red) Bluetooth® Transmission
 Bluetooth® Packet Data in Transmission
 Call in Progress with Bluetooth® Activated
 (Blue) USB Connected
 USB Connection
 (Gray) Infrared Data in Transmission
 (Red) Infrared Data Transmission Activated
 Data Synchronized
- 7 Manner Mode
 Drive Mode
 Meeting Mode
 Outdoor Mode
- 8 Battery Strong
 Battery Moderate
 Battery Low
 (Flashing) Battery Weak (Charge Now)
- 9 Voice Mail/Call Forwarding (*No reply*) Activated

- Answering Machine Activated
- S! Mail Memory Full
- SMS Memory Full
- Alarm Set
- Unheard Answering Machine Message
- Unheard Voice Mail
- All Keys Locked
- Password Locked
- Secret Mode Set
- S! Friend's Status Request
- Unread S! Friend's Status Notification
- Roaming Activated
- 10 Other than *Off* for *Voice call in Volume*, and other than *Off* for *Voice call in Vibration* Set
 Other than *Off* for *Voice call in Volume*, and *Off* for *Voice call in Vibration* Set
Off for *Voice call in Volume*, and other than *Off* for *Voice call in Vibration* Set
Off for *Voice call in Volume*, and *Off* for *Voice call in Vibration* Set

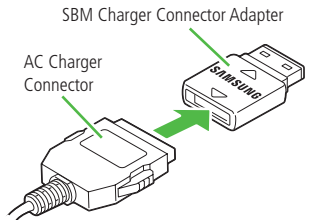
• When (Red) appears, only Packet Communications and Outgoing S! Mail are available; Calls, Incoming S! Mail, and SMS Service are all disabled.

Charging Battery

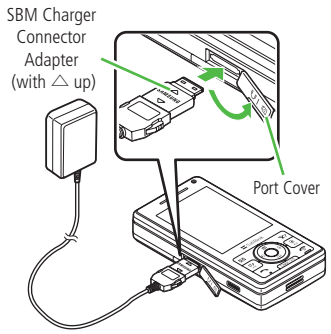
- If handset is on while Charger is connected, battery indicator shows charge level, charging as follows:  flashes when battery is fully charged. If handset is off, *Charging...* appears while charging and when battery is charged, *Battery full* appears.
- An empty battery requires 170 minutes (approx.) to charge with power off. Charging time may vary by ambient temperature.

AC Charger

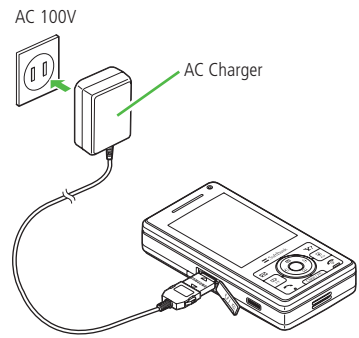
1 Attach SBM Charger Connector Adapter to AC Charger



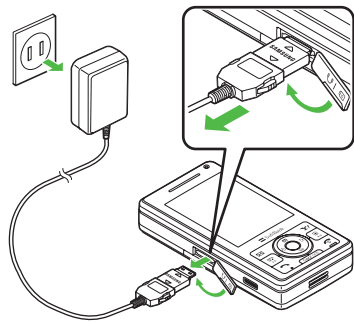
2 Open Port Cover and insert SBM Charger Connector Adapter into External Device Port



3 Plug AC Charger into an AC 100 V outlet



- 4** When battery is charged, disconnect handset, close Port Cover, and unplug AC Charger



USB Charging

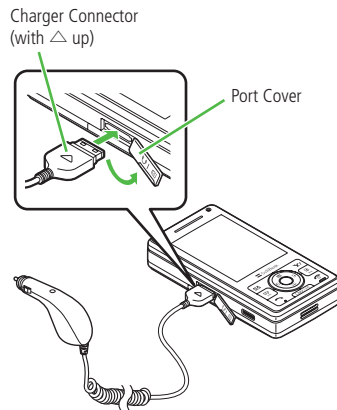
Connect 920SC to PC via USB Cable to charge battery. Battery will be charged when handset is connected. Connect handset to a PC via supplied USB Cable to charge battery.

- 1** Open Port Cover and insert USB Cable Connector into External Device Port
- 2** Insert USB Plug into a PC USB port
- 3** When battery is charged, disconnect handset, close Port Cover, and remove USB Plug

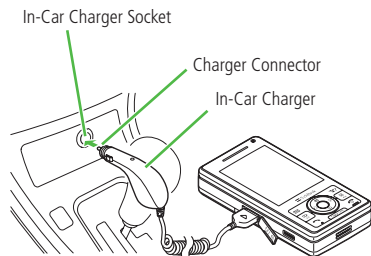
- USB Charging takes longer; charging time varies by PC. A weak battery may not charge via USB.

In-Car Charger (Optional)

- 1** Open Port Cover and insert Connector into External Device Port

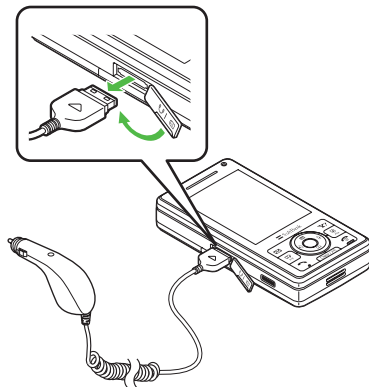


2 Plug charger connector into In-Car Charger socket



3 Start the car's engine

4 When battery is charged, disconnect handset and then unplug In-Car Charger




- See In-Car Charger manual (Japanese) for details. For safety, use In-Car Holder with In-Car Charger.

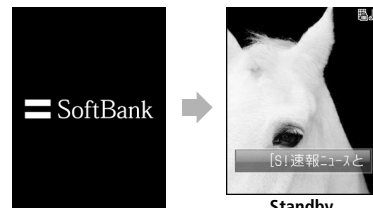
Note



- Do not charge battery inside a closed automobile in direct sunlight.
- Use In-Car Charger in cars with a negative earth only (DC 12/24V).






Power On/Off

Power On

- 1 Open 920SC
- 2  (1+ seconds)



- To confirm handset phone number, press  → . Your phone number appears in Account details. Edit or use contents (P.2-23).
- When handset is left open without operations, Display automatically shuts down to conserve power (P.12-15).


- The first time , , , , or  is pressed or a function requiring a network connection is activated, *Retrieve NW info* confirmation appears. Follow onscreen instructions and choose *Yes*.
 - *Retrieve NW info* confirmation appears after replacing USIM Card or executing *All reset*.
 - Retrieving Network Info sets time and date. Network Services (Messaging, Yahoo! Keitai, S! Friend's Status, and S! Circle Talk) are available.
 - Retrieve Network Info manually (P.12-26).
 - This guide describes operations with time and date set unless noted otherwise.

Power Off

1 (2+ seconds)

- SoftBank logo appears and 920SC powers off.

Note

- When powering off, be sure to press  for 2+ seconds.

Handling Precautions

Note these precautions when handling 920SC.





- Avoid carrying open handset to prevent damage.
- Lock keys before carrying 920SC in a pocket.
- When carrying AC Charger, retract plug blades. Do not pull/twist power cord; doing so may damage the cord.

Key Lock

Activate or cancel Key Lock in Standby with 920SC open.

1 (1+ seconds)



- When keys are locked,  appears in Standby. When 920SC is closed and any key is pressed, Unlock Keys message appears.
- Open 920SC to enable keys; close to reactivate Key Lock.
- When 920SC is opened in Standby, press  for 1+ seconds to cancel Key Lock. When closed, press  for 1+ seconds to unlock keys temporarily.
- When 920SC is closed, press  for 2+ seconds. Unlock Keys message appears. Choose *Yes* to activate Camera.

Minding Mobile Manners

Please take care not to disturb others when using your handset.


- Turn your handset off in theaters, museums, and other places where silence is the norm.
- Keep your handset off aboard airplanes, inside hospitals, or in other places where handset use is prohibited.
- Refrain from using your handset in quiet places such as restaurants, hotel lobbies, or elevators.
- Observe announcements or posted instructions regarding handset use aboard trains, etc.
- Refrain from handset use that interrupts the flow of pedestrian or vehicle traffic.

Manner Related Functions

9205C offers two manner-related modes.


- Manner mode
Mute handset sounds and activate Vibration for all alerts, tones, and alarms. Use Manner Key to activate or cancel Manner mode.
- Offline mode
Temporarily suspends all handset transmissions. Other functions may be used. Without activating Manner mode or Offline mode, activate Vibration or mute handset tones from *Sounds & Alerts*.

Offline Mode



- 1 Press  → *Settings* → *Call settings* → *Offline*




- 2 *On or Off*


- If handset powers off in Offline mode, Offline mode activation confirmation appears the next time 9205C powers on. Press  (No) for Normal mode.

Manner Key

Use Manner Key to toggle Manner mode. In Standby, press  for 1+ seconds to activate or cancel Manner mode. Using  to cancel Manner mode returns 9205C to whatever mode was previously in use.

- 1  (1+ seconds)

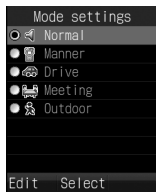


- When Manner mode is active,  appears.
- Even when Manner mode is active, shutter click sounds for Camera.

Mode Settings

9205C features five modes, including Manner.






- 1  → *Settings* → *Mode settings*



- 2 *Normal, Manner, Drive, Meeting, or Outdoor*

Modes

Select mode by usage; edit Normal mode or Manner mode settings as required (➔P.1-10).

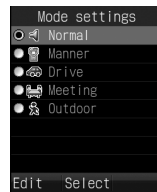
Mode	Description
 Normal Mode*	All Sounds & Alerts settings apply
 Manner Mode	Mutes 9205C system sounds
 Drive Mode	Mutes ringer; plays Driving Message and activates Answer Phone for calls
 Meeting Mode	Mutes Ringtones & Keypad tones
 Outdoor Mode	Maximizes tone volume


* Normal mode indicator does not appear in Standby.

Changing Mode Settings




Change incoming transmission response by mode.

- 1  → *Settings* → *Mode settings*





- 2 Highlight mode →  (Edit)
- 3 Set items



■ To set ringtones

Volume → Select item to set → Use  to adjust volume →  (Play) →  (Select)



■ To set System sounds or Keypad tones

Volume → *Phone sounds* → Use  to adjust volume →  (Select)

■ To set ringtone for Voice Call, Video Call, or S! Circle Talk

Ringtone → *Voice call, Video call, or S! Circle Talk* → Select a file location →  (Play) →  (Select)



■ To set other ringtones

Ringtone → *Message, S! Friend's Status, Missed call notification, S! Quick News, or Delivery report* → *Assign tone* → Select a file location → Highlight a file →  (Play) →  (Select)

■ To set message ringtone duration

Ringtone → *Message, S! Friend's Status, Missed call notification, S! Quick News, or Delivery report* → *Duration* → Enter a time



■ To set Vibration

Vibration → Select item to set → *Off* or *Pattern 1* to *Pattern 5* →  (Play) →  (Select)


■ To set Keypad tones

Phone sounds → *Keypad tones* → *Beep, Xylophone, or Off*

■ To set System sounds for S! Circle Talk

Phone sounds → *S! Circle Talk* → *Animal, Bird, Fantasy, Game, Joke, Xylophone, or P1* →  (Play) →  (Select)


■ To set System sounds

Phone sounds → *System sounds* → Check item to set →  (Save)

■ To set External light

External light → *Incoming or Notification* → Select an item → *On* or *Off*

- For details on items, see Mode Settings (📖P.1-12) and System Sounds (📖P.1-15).

- If *Ringtone reducer* is *On*, ringtone volume is reduced to Level 1 for the first two seconds, regardless of Ringtone volume set for Voice/Video Call.
- Use /🔊 to adjust ringtone volume while 920SC rings.
- To mute Voice/Video Call or Message tones, set *Volume* and *Vibration* to *Off*. 🚫 appears.
- Open *Sounds & Alerts* to change sounds for Normal mode. Settings cannot be changed for other modes.
- Open *Manner mode settings* to change Manner settings.

Mode Settings

Available items vary by mode. Defaults are as listed below.

Item \ Mode	Normal	Manner	Drive	Meeting	Outdoor
Volume					
Voice call	Level 3	N/A	N/A	Off	Level 5
Video call	Level 3	N/A	N/A	Off	Level 5
Message	Level 3	N/A	N/A	Off	Level 5
S! Friend's Status	Level 3	N/A	N/A	Off	Level 5
S! Circle Talk	Level 3	N/A	N/A	Off	Level 5
Missed call notification	Level 3	N/A	N/A	Off	Level 5
S! Quick News	Off	N/A	N/A	Off	Off
Delivery report	Level 3	N/A	N/A	Off	Level 5
Phone sounds	Level 3	N/A	N/A	Off	Level 5
Ringtone					
Assign tone					
Voice call	Red tango.mmf	N/A	N/A	Red tango.mmf	Red tango.mmf
Video call	Revelation.mmf	N/A	N/A	Revelation.mmf	Revelation.mmf
Message	Chiming tone.mp4	N/A	N/A	Chiming tone.mp4	Chiming tone.mp4
S! Friend's Status	Chiming tone.mp4	N/A	N/A	Chiming tone.mp4	Chiming tone.mp4
S! Circle Talk	Chiming tone.mp4	N/A	N/A	Chiming tone.mp4	Chiming tone.mp4
Missed call notification	Chiming tone.mp4	N/A	N/A	Chiming tone.mp4	Chiming tone.mp4
S! Quick News	Chiming tone.mp4	N/A	N/A	Chiming tone.mp4	Chiming tone.mp4
Delivery report	Chiming tone.mp4	N/A	N/A	Chiming tone.mp4	Chiming tone.mp4

Item	Mode	Normal	Manner	Drive	Meeting	Outdoor
Ringtone						
Duration						
Message		5 seconds	N/A	N/A	5 seconds	5 seconds
S! Friend's Status		5 seconds	N/A	N/A	5 seconds	5 seconds
Missed call notification		5 seconds	N/A	N/A	5 seconds	5 seconds
S! Quick News		5 seconds	N/A	N/A	5 seconds	5 seconds
Delivery report		5 seconds	N/A	N/A	5 seconds	5 seconds
Vibration						
Voice call		Off	Pattern 1	N/A	Off	Off
Video call		Off	Pattern 1	N/A	Off	Off
Message		Off	Pattern 1	N/A	Off	Off
S! Friend's Status		Off	Pattern 1	N/A	Off	Off
S! Circle Talk		Off	Pattern 1	N/A	Off	Off
Missed call notification		Off	Pattern 1	N/A	Off	Off
S! Quick News		Off	Off	N/A	Off	Off
Delivery report		Off	Pattern 1	N/A	Off	Off
Phone sounds						
Keypad tones		Xylophone	N/A	N/A	Xylophone	Xylophone
S! Circle Talk		Xylophone	N/A	N/A	Xylophone	Xylophone
System sounds		Several tones on	Alerts on call	N/A	Alerts on call	Several tones on

Item	Mode	Normal	Manner	Drive	Meeting	Outdoor
External light						
Incoming						
Voice call		On	On	On	On	On
Video call		On	On	On	On	On
Message		On	On	On	On	On
S! Friend's Status		On	On	On	On	On
S! Circle Talk		On	On	On	On	On
Missed call notification		On	On	On	On	On
Notification						
Missed call		On	On	On	On	On
Message		On	On	On	On	On
Answering Machine		On	On	On	On	On
S! Friend's Status		On	On	On	On	On
Missed call notification		On	On	On	On	On
Answering Machine		Off	On	N/A	Off	Off

System Sounds

Available items vary by mode. Volume level set in *System sounds* applies to all Phone sounds.

Item	Description
All	Check/uncheck all items.
Popup box alerts	Sounds for confirmations/warnings.
Minute minder	Sounds about once a minute during calls.
Call connect tone	Sounds before called phone rings to notify the call is going to be connected.
Call end tone	Sounds when a call ends.
Power on	Sounds when the power is turned on.
Power off	Sounds when power is turned off.
Slide up/down	Sounds when 920SC is slid up/down.
Alerts on call	Sounds for alarms/incoming transmissions during a call.

Advanced

Settings

- Adjust volume (☎ P.12-13)
- Set Ringtone for Voice Call/Video Call/S! Circle Talk (☎ P.12-13)
- Set ringtone other than Voice Call (☎ P.12-13)
- Set ringtone duration other than Voice Call (☎ P.12-13)
- Set Vibration (☎ P.12-13, P.12-14)
- Set Keypad tones (☎ P.12-13)
- Set system sounds for S! Circle Talk (☎ P.12-13)
- Set system sounds (☎ P.12-13, P.12-14)
- Illuminate External Light for incoming transmissions (☎ P.12-13, P.12-14)
- Illuminate External Light for missed calls (☎ P.12-13, P.12-14)
- Set Answering Machine (☎ P.12-14)
- Activate or cancel Offline mode (☎ P.12-24)
- Activate or cancel automatic ringer reduction (☎ P.12-24)
- Change mode (☎ P.12-25)

Security Codes

Phone Password, Center Access Code and Network Password are required are required to use 920SC.

Phone Password

The 4-digit number (9999 by default) is required to operate/change some handset functions.

- Entered Phone Password digits are represented with *.
- If incorrect, an error message appears. Try again
- Phone Password can be changed on 920SC (☎ P.10-2).

Center Access Code

4-digit number specified at subscription; required to change service subscriptions or to operate handset from landlines.

Network Password

4-digit number specified at subscription, required to restrict handset services. Entering incorrect Network Password 3 consecutive times locks Call Barring settings. To resolve, Network Password and Center Access Code must be changed. For details, contact Customer Service (☎P.13-29).

- Network Password can be changed on 920SC (☎P.3-21).

Note

- **Write down Phone Password, Center Access Code, and Network Password. If you lose a code, contact Customer Service (☎P.13-29).**
- **Do not reveal Phone Password, Center Access Code, or Network Password to others. SoftBank is not liable for damage caused by misuse of these codes by others.**

Emergency Numbers

Call 110 (Police), 119 (Fire & Ambulance) or 118 (Maritime Safety Agency). These numbers can be dialed even when certain Call Barring settings are active. See details below.

920SC Status	Emergency Numbers
Offline mode activated (☎P.1-9)	None
Call Cost limit exceeded (☎P.12-22)	110, 119, 118
Phone lock activated (☎P.10-4)	None
Password lock activated (☎P.10-5)	110, 119, 118
Required PIN not entered (☎P.10-2)	None
USIM Card not be authenticated (☎P.10-4)	None
Outgoing Call Barring activated (☎P.3-19)	110, 119, 118

Emergency Location Report

When calls are placed to Police or other emergency agencies from 920SC, handset location information is automatically sent to the corresponding agency. 920SC transmits location based on base station positioning information.

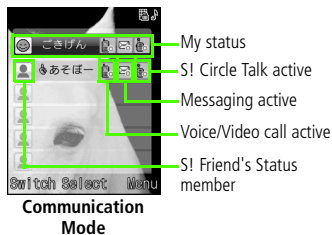
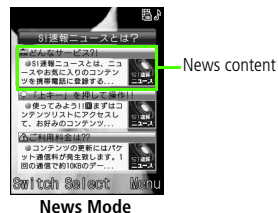
- Location accuracy may vary by geography or signal conditions. Always verify your location with address or nearby landmark.
- Base station positioning accuracy ranges from several hundred meters to 10 kilometers. This information may differ from actual location due to distance of the closest base station location.
- This function is only available if the agency receiving an emergency call has implemented infrastructure for receiving location information.
- If you hide Caller ID by dialing 184 before calling an emergency number, your location information is not sent. However, authorities may access this information when necessary.
- No subscription/communication fee required.

Note

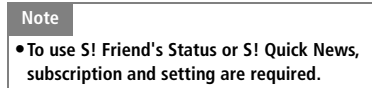
- **Emergency calls may not be possible outside Japan due to the available wireless network, signal conditions or handset settings.**

Standby Window

View Shortcut icons (▶P.1-18), S! Friend's Status members list (▶P.9-2) or news received via S! Quick News (▶P.5-9). Access the following three view modes:



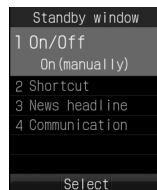
* Available when *Shortcut*, *Member*, *News* is set.



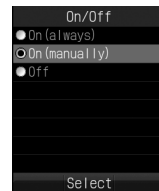
Standby Window Display Settings

Change Standby Window Display settings.

1 → *Settings* → *Standby window*



2 *On/Off*



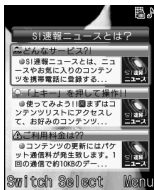
3 *Select a setting*

- To show Standby Window
On (always)
- To toggle Standby Window manually
On (manually)
 - Press to show/hide Standby Window.
- To hide Standby Window
Off

Standby Window Modes

Select Shortcut, News or Communication mode.

- 1  for Standby Window →  (Switch)





- Press  (Switch) to toggle modes.

Shortcut Mode

Setting Shortcut Mode

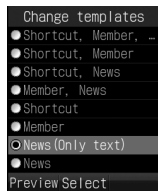
Select items to show from templates.

In Shortcut mode, show News, Function/Yahoo! Keitai bookmark shortcut, or S! Friend's Status.



- 1  for Standby Window →  (Switch) for Shortcut mode



- 2  → Change templates






3 Select an item

- For all
Shortcut, Member, News
 - For Shortcut and S! Friend's Status
Shortcut, Member
 - For Shortcut and News
Shortcut, News
 - For S! Friend's Status and News
Member, News
 - For a single item
Shortcut, Member, News (Only text), or News
- To change template after previewing, press  (Preview) then  (Select).



Using Shortcut Mode

Access Functions via Shortcuts or Mobile Web pages via Bookmarks; view received news or S! Friend's Status.


- 1  for Standby Window →  (Switch) for Shortcut mode → Highlight Shortcut or S! Friend's Status →  (Select)

Adding & Overwriting Shortcut

Adding Shortcuts to preinstalled Shortcut positions overwrites the preinstalled Shortcut.

- 1  for Standby Window →
 (Switch) for Shortcut
 mode → Highlight position




- 2  → Set shortcut



3 Select a setting

■ To set function

Add application → Highlight function →  (Save)

■ To add Bookmark



Add bookmark → Select entry → Select an icon

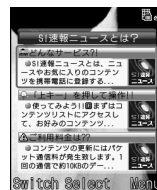
- Save Bookmark entries beforehand.


News Mode

Adding News Content

Add news content to show on the list.



- 1  for Standby Window →
 (Switch) for News mode
 → Highlight insert position

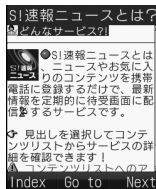


- 2  → Add content →
 Follow onscreen instructions

Using News Mode

In News mode, view news contents.



- 1  for Standby Window →
 (Switch) for News mode
 → Highlight news



Communication Mode


Adding S! Friend's Status Member

Add from S! Friend's Status members list or
Phonebook.

- 1  for Standby Window →
 (Switch) for

Communication mode →
Highlight position



- 2  → Add member



3 Add member

■ To add from Member List

From S! Friend's Status → Select member



■ To add from Phonebook


From Phonebook → Search Phonebook and select entry

(P.2-20) → Select a phone number


Using Communication Mode

Check S! Friend's Status.

- 1  for Standby Window →
 (Switch) for

Communication mode → Use
 to highlight S! Friend's
 Status



- 2  → Show details

Advanced

Advanced Settings (☞ P.1-21)

- Changing S! Friend's Status Member Icon
- Adjusting Standby Window Display Settings
- Updating News Content Manually
- Removing News Content
- Updating News Content Automatically
- Setting My Status

Settings

- Show or hide Standby Window (☞ P.12-11)
- Set/cancel Shortcut mode (☞ P.12-11)
- Add functions to Shortcut (☞ P.12-11)
- Add Yahoo! Keitai bookmark to Shortcut (☞ P.12-11)
- Cancel Shortcut mode (☞ P.12-11)
- Add S! Friend's Status member to the list in Shortcut mode (☞ P.12-11)
- Cancel S! Friend's Status member in Shortcut mode (☞ P.12-11)
- Add contents in Shortcut mode (☞ P.12-11)
- Remove content from Shortcut mode (☞ P.12-11)
- Add S! Loop topic in Shortcut mode (☞ P.12-11)
- Remove S! Loop topic from Shortcut mode (☞ P.12-11)
- Change template for Shortcut mode (☞ P.12-11)
- Change marquee speed for news (☞ P.12-11)
- Change display type for news (☞ P.12-11)
- Refresh newflash (☞ P.12-12)
- Refresh general contents in Shortcut mode (☞ P.12-12)
- Select S! Loop auto refresh setting (☞ P.12-12)
- Set/cancel News mode (☞ P.12-12)
- Add News mode contents (☞ P.12-12)
- Remove News mode contents (☞ P.12-12)
- Refresh newflash in News mode (☞ P.12-12)
- Refresh general contents in News mode (☞ P.12-12)
- Refresh S! Loop in News mode (☞ P.12-12)
- Set/cancel Communication mode (☞ P.12-12)
- Add S! Friend's Status members from list (☞ P.12-12)
- Add S! Friend's Status members from Phonebook (☞ P.12-12)
- Remove S! Friend's Status members (☞ P.12-12)

Advanced Settings

Standby Window Settings

Removing Shortcut

☞ for Standby Window → ☞ (Switch) for Shortcut mode → Highlight item → ☞ → *Set shortcut* → *Remove application* or *Remove bookmark* → *Yes*

Adding S! Friend's Status Member

☞ for Standby Window → ☞ (Switch) for Shortcut mode → Highlight position → ☞ → *Add member*

■ To add from S! Friend's Status

From S! Friend's Status → Select member

■ To add from Phonebook

From Phonebook → Search Phonebook and select entry (☞ P.2-20) → Select phone number


Removing S! Friend's Status Member

☞ for Standby Window → ☞ (Switch) for Shortcut mode → Highlight member icon → ☞ → *Remove member* → *Yes*


Adding S! Quick News Content

☞ for Standby Window → ☞ (Switch) for Shortcut mode → Highlight news → ☞ → *Add S! Quick News* → *Add content* → Follow onscreen instructions

Removing S! Quick News Content

☑ for Standby Window →  (Switch) for Shortcut mode → Highlight news →  → *Add S! Quick News* → *Remove content*


■ To delete an entry

Highlight entry →  (Delete) → *Yes*



■ To delete multiple entries

 → *Delete* → *Multiple* → Check entries →  (Delete) → *Yes*



■ To delete all entries

 → *Delete* → *All* → Enter Phone Password → ● (OK) → *Yes*


Adding S! Loop

☑ for Standby Window →  (Switch) for Shortcut mode → Highlight news →  → *Add S! Quick News* → *Add S! Loop* → Follow onscreen instructions

Removing S! Loop

☑ for Standby Window →  (Switch) for Shortcut mode → Highlight news →  → *Add S! Quick News* → *Remove S! Loop*


■ To delete an entry

Highlight entry →  (Delete) → *Yes*



■ To delete multiple entries

 → *Delete* → *Multiple* → Check entries →  (Delete) → *Yes*


■ To delete all entries

 → *Delete* → *All* → Enter Phone Password → ● (OK) → *Yes*

Changing S! Friend's Status Member Icon

☑ for Standby Window →  (Switch) for Shortcut mode/Communication mode → Highlight member icon →  → *Change icon* → Select an icon


Adjusting Standby Window Display Settings

☑ for Standby Window →  → *Standby window settings* → Select item



• Set the following items. Items are the same as *Standby window in Settings* (☛P.12-11).

- *On/Off*
- *Shortcut*
- *News headline*
- *Communication*


Updating News Content Manually

☑ for Standby Window →  (Switch) for News mode → Highlight news →  → *Manual update* → *Update selected* or *Update all*

Removing News Content

☑ for Standby Window →  (Switch) for News mode →  → *Remove content*


■ To delete an entry

Highlight entry →  (Delete) → *Yes*



■ To delete multiple entries

 → *Delete* → *Multiple* → Check entries →  (Delete) → *Yes*

■ To delete all entries

 → *Delete* → *All* → Enter Phone Password → ● (OK) → *Yes*

Updating News Content Automatically

☑ for Standby Window →  (Switch) for News mode → Highlight news →  → *Auto refresh*


■ To set update interval of Newsflash

Flash news → ● (OK) → *1 hour, 2 hours, 4 hours, 8 hours, or Off*


■ To set automatic update for general content

General → ● (OK) → *On or Off*




Calling or Messaging or Using S! Circle Talk

☑ for Standby Window →  (Switch) for Communication mode → Highlight S! Friend's Status member

■ To make a Call


Use ☑ to select  → *Voice call* or *Video call*

■ To send message



Use ☑ to select  → *S! Mail* or *SMS* (☛P.4-3 Sending S! Mail , P.4-8 Sending SMS Messages )

■ To use S! Circle Talk

Use ☑ to select  → ● (Call) (☛P.9-6)

• S! Circle Talk is not available when the answer status for S! Friend's Status member shows .

Setting My Status

☑ for Standby Window →  (Switch) for Communication mode →  → *My status setting* → *Show* or *Hide*

Basic Operations



Selecting Functions	2-2
Selecting Functions from Main Menu	2-2
Using Shortcuts in Standby	2-3
Selecting Functions with Switch Bar	2-3
Searching Keyword with Multi Search	2-4
Common Operations	2-6
Menu Options	2-6
Selecting/Canceling Multiple Items	2-6
Standby Display Options	2-6
Wallpaper	2-6
Slide Show	2-6
S! Familiar Usability (Japanese)	2-7
Downloading S! Familiar Usability	2-7
Setting S! Familiar Usability	2-8
Canceling S! Familiar Usability	2-8
Text Entry	2-9
Text Entry Window	2-9
Changing Entry Mode	2-9
Text Entry Method	2-10
Hiragana/Kanji	2-10
Katakana, Alphanumerics and Numbers	2-11
Symbols	2-12
Pictograms and Emotions	2-12
Line Breaks	2-13
Hangul	2-13
Deleting & Editing Text	2-14
User's Dictionary	2-14
Saving to User's Dictionary	2-15

Phonebook	2-16
Phonebook Entry Items	2-16
Phonebook Entry Tabs	2-17
Creating New Entries	2-18
Saving from Call Log Records	2-19
Using Phonebook	2-20
Searching Phonebook	2-20
Calling from Phonebook	2-21
Deleting Phonebook Entries	2-22
Account Details	2-23
Data Folder	2-23
Default Folders	2-23
Viewing Files	2-25
Viewing Images with Picture Browser	2-26
SVG-T/Flash [®] Viewer	2-27
Managing Files/Folders	2-27
Creating Folders	2-27
Renaming File/Folder	2-28
Moving Files/Folders	2-29
Copying Files/Folders	2-30
Deleting Files/Folders	2-30
Face Link	2-32
Saving Face Link Data	2-32
Using Face Link	2-33
Memory Card	2-35
Precautions	2-35
Inserting & Removing	2-35
Viewing Memory Status	2-37

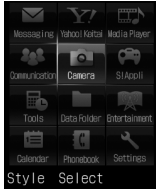
Advanced Settings

Basic Operations	2-37
Slide Show	2-38
Text Entry	2-38
User's Dictionary	2-39
Phonebook	2-40
Account Details	2-43
Viewing Files	2-44
File/Folder Management	2-44
Face Link	2-46
Memory Status	2-47

Selecting Functions

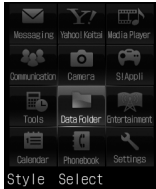
Selecting Functions from Main Menu

1 In Standby,



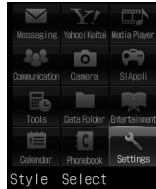
Main Menu

2 Highlight an item →

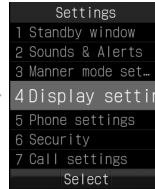



3 Repeat Step 2 to select target function

Example: To select *Wallpaper*



Highlight *Settings*
→  (Select)





Highlight *Display settings*
→  (Select)



With *Wallpaper* highlighted,
 (Select)



Wallpaper setting window appears

- Press  to exit menu. 920SC returns to Standby. If multiple functions are active, active window appears.
- Press  to cancel menu. Handset returns to Standby or previous window. In some menus, a confirmation appears.
- When *Popup menu* (P.12-16) is *On*, sub menu pops up after operations 2. Different sub menus appear for each menu.
- When numbered items appear in menu or list window, use Keypad to select an item.

Using Shortcuts in Standby

Key	Corresponding Menu/Function
	Open Messaging menu
 (1+ seconds)	Open Create Message window
	Open Yahoo! Keitai Main Menu
 (1+ seconds)	Open Yahoo! Keitai menu
	Open Media Player window
	Activate Switch Bar
	Standby Window
	Phonebook list
 (1+ seconds)	Open Phonebook Entry window
	Call log (Received)
/	Call log (Dialed)
	Recordings list
 (1+ seconds)	Toggle Answering Machine On/Off
	My Status Details
 (1+ seconds)	My Status Details
	Toggle Manner mode On/Off
 (1+ seconds)	Toggle Manner mode On/Off
	S! Circle Talk member list

Key	Corresponding Menu/Function
 (2+ seconds)	Activate Camera

Selecting Functions with Switch Bar

Select Multi Search, Call, Messaging, Yahoo! Keitai or Media Player. Use multiple functions at the same time (e.g. listen to music while messaging or talk to a friend or colleague while browsing Internet sites).

1 In Standby or active function,



2 Use to highlight an item

→ (Select)

- To exit a function, show it and press .
- To exit all, highlight and press (Yes).

- When exiting all, confirmation may appear for some functions; choose *Yes* or *No*.
- Activate other functions while creating a message. After exiting all, Create Message window appears.

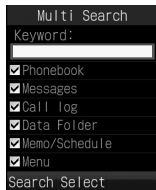
Searching Keyword with Multi Search

Search 920SC or Memory Card files/functions:
Phonebook, Messages, Call Log, Data Folder,
Memo/Schedule or Menu.

1 In Standby or active function,



2 Use to highlight *Multi Search* → (Select)



3 Check functions → Select Keyword field



4 Enter keyword

■ To enter keyword

Enter keyword → Enter keyword

■ To select from recent history

Recent keyword → Select keyword

■ To search frequent keyword



Frequent keyword → Select keyword

5 (Search)



Search Result


6 View 920SC search result

- Use  to switch tabs and view result.
- To search new keyword, press  and select *New Search*.

Searching with Multi Search

Function/Search with	Search Criteria
Phonebook	
Name	Search with first letter of first/last name
Mail address	Search with a letter of separated section by entering "@" or "."
Phone number	Search with the beginning/end of phone number
Messages	
Sender/recipient	Search with the beginning of first/last name or mail address
Subject	Search with the first word of the subject (N/A for Hangul)
Call log	
Phone number	Search with the beginning/end of phone number
Name	Search with the first letter of first/last name
Data Folder	
File name, extension	Search with letter/extension within file name

Function/Search with	Search Criteria
Memo/Schedule	
Notepad/Tasks/Schedule	Search with the first word within details (N/A for Hangul)
Menu	
Function name	Search with the first letter of function name
Memory Card	
File name	Search with letters included in file name

- Search results appear by function tab: Phonebook, Messages, Call Log, Data Folder, Memo/Schedule and Menu. Select a tab to see it or use function.
- Some keywords are not searchable.
- If Memory Card is inserted after 920SC search, press  to search Memory Card.
- If Memory Card is inserted and item is not found on 920SC, a search Memory Card confirmation appears. Choose **Yes** to search Memory Card.
- Secret entries cannot be searched.



Advanced

 **Advanced Settings**  P.2-37



- Searching from Multi Search Result
- Creating Message from Multi Search Result
- Using Functions from Multi Search Result
- Viewing Multi Search Result Details

Common Operations

Menu Options

When *Menu* appears as Right Softkey label, press  to open Menu. To execute an item, highlight it and press  (Select).

Selecting/Canceling Multiple Items


Press  (Mark all) or  (Unmark all) to check/uncheck all items to delete or move.

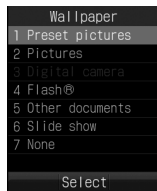
- Available operations vary by function.
- Enter Phone Password to delete multiple items.

Standby Display Options

Wallpaper


Set still image, animation or Slide show in Data Folder as Wallpaper. Alternatively, hide still image.

-  → **Settings** → **Display settings** → **Wallpaper**




-  **Set Wallpaper**

■ To set an image in Data Folder

Select a folder → Select a file →  (Set)

■ To set Slide show

Slide show → (P.2-6 Slide Show )

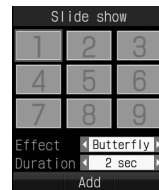
■ To set none

None

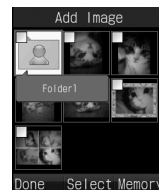
Slide Show


Set *Slide show* to display up to nine images in sequence as Wallpaper.

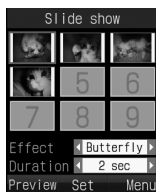
-  → **Camera** → **Slide show**



-  **(Add)**




- 3 Select a file location → Check images to use →  (Done)




- 4 Edit Slide show



■ To preview


 (Preview) → *Yes* (Fit to screen) or *No* (Original proportion)

■ To set effect

Highlight Effect field → Use  to switch settings

■ To change playback time for a still image

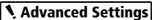
Use  to highlight Duration field → Use  to switch settings

- 5  (Set) → *Yes* (Fit to screen) or *No* (Original proportion)

• To adjust slide size

To fit image to Display, choose *Yes* in Step 4. To display as original proportion, choose *No*.

Advanced

 **Advanced Settings** (P.2-38)

 **Settings**

- Change Wallpaper (P.12-15)

S! Familiar Usability (Japanese)

Download and install previous handset models' user interfaces for use on 920SC.

- Familiar operation mode can be used with 920SC.

Note

- S! Familiar Usability does not convert all handset operations and menus.

Downloading S! Familiar Usability

Download applications from websites.

- 1  →  (Style) → *S! Familiar Usability*



- 2 *Download S! Familiar Usability*



- Follow onscreen instructions.

Setting S! Familiar Usability


Download application beforehand.

- 1  →  (Style) → S! Familiar Usability



- 2 Highlight contents to use →  (Apply) →  (OK)


Canceling S! Familiar Usability


- 1  → Settings → Display settings → S! Familiar Usability



- 2 Highlight contents



- 3 Press  (Release) → Yes

- Alternatively, while setting S! Familiar Usability, press  to cancel the setting temporarily.

Note

- Font size setting does not affect S! Familiar Usability menus (P.12-15). English and Hangul are not available (P.12-17).

Text Entry

Enter Kanji, Hiragana, Katakana (single-/double-byte), alphanumerics (single-/double-byte), symbols (single-/double-byte), pictograms, emoticons or Hangul.

Text Entry Window

Current Entry mode

- 漢: Kanji or Hiragana
- カ: Katakana (double-byte)
- カ: Katakana (single-byte)
- A: Alphanumeric (double-byte)
- Ab: Alphanumeric (single-byte)
- 1: Number (double-byte)
- 12: Number (single-byte)
- ☒: Symbols (double-byte)
- #☒: Symbols (single-byte)
- ☒: Pictograms
- ☒: Emoticons
- ☒: Hangul

Enter Text field

No. of characters entered (byte)/No. of characters available (byte)

Text entry field

Suggestions*
Japanese Kana conversion alternatives

* Suggestions do not appear in Katakana, alphanumeric, and number input modes. If Prediction entry function is canceled, suggestions appear when characters are converted with ☒ (Convert) or ☒ (EngNum) in Kanji/Katakana input mode.

- When Voice Call or Video Call arrives while entering text, simply answer the call. When the call ends, text entry window returns. When Alarm is activated, end Alarm to return to text entry window.
- For Date field in Day and Time or Time field in Alarm which can only enter numbers, text entry window does not appear. Enter numbers directly in Entry field.

Changing Entry Mode

Text entry modes may be limited by status.

1 In text entry window, ☒

漢かな	6. 1 2
2. カナ	7. 12
3. ｶ	8. 1 @ #
4. A b	9. !@#
5. Ab	0. Pictog-
*. Emoti-	#. Hangul

2 Select entry mode to switch

- In text entry window, press ☒ to switch to Symbols, ☒ to toggle Pictograms and Emoticons.

Advanced

☒ Settings

- Activate or cancel S! Familiar Input (Japanese) (☒ P.12-17)

Text Entry Method

Hiragana/Kanji

Use predicted alternatives appear in Suggestions to enter characters. Entered hiragana can be converted without using predicted alternatives. When katakana or pictograms appear in Suggestions, these also can be inserted. For example, enter "鈴木" here.

1 In text entry window,



2 漢かな

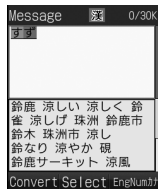


3 (3 times)



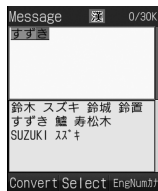
• "す" is entered.

4 → (3 times) →



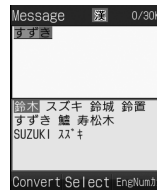
• "すず" is entered.

5 (2 times)















• "すき" is entered.

6



7 Highlight "鈴木" from Suggestions → (Select)

- To add "°" or "°", after entering Hiragana, press .
- To enter small Hiragana such as "つ", after entering Hiragana, press .
- Press  to cancel wrong input and try again.
- When the target entry is passed, press  to return to the previous one.
- To entry same character continuously, press  to move the cursor to the right.
- To set as Hiragana, press  (Select).
- When no Suggestion appears, press  (Convert) → use  to change the range for conversion as required → use  to move cursor to Suggestions → highlight the target conversion alternatives →  (Select) → repeat the steps for other characters.

- When conversion fails, try another reading. When multiple Kanji characters do not convert together, try to convert them separately.
- While Suggestions appear, press  (Convert) for conversion alternatives. While suggestions appear, press  (Predict) to display Suggestions.

Katakana, Alphanumerics and Numbers








1 In text entry window,



2 Select entry mode



3 Enter text

- To add "°" or "°", after entering Hiragana, press .
- Press  to switch upper and lower cases after entering Katakana or alphanumerics.
- Press  to cancel wrong input and try again.
- When the target entry is passed, press  to return to the previous one.
- To entry same character continuously, press  to move the cursor to the right.
- In Kanji/Kana entry mode, enter characters and press  to switch to katakana/alphanumerics/numbers entry mode. For example, enter "<も" and press  (EngNumカナ), then "クモ" (katakana), "C" (alphabet), or "2227777" (numbers) appears as Suggestions.

Symbols

1 In text entry window,



- Press # or until the target symbol appears.

2 Highlight target character in Suggestions → (Select)

- To enter symbols continuously, press (Continue) instead of (Select).
- Once entered double-byte symbols remain as history and appear in Suggestions at first. Pressing # switches Suggestions in order of double-byte symbol logs → double-byte symbols → single-byte symbols. When the entry mode is single-byte katakana, single-byte alphanumerics, single-byte numbers or Hangul, Suggestions appear in order of double-byte logs → single-byte symbols → double-byte symbols.

- In Kanji/Kana entry mode, enter characters and press (Convert) to convert to symbols. For example, enter "てん" and press (Convert), symbols ". ." or ". ." appear among Suggestions.

Pictograms and Emotions

1 In text entry window, *



2 Highlight target character in Suggestions → (Select)

- To enter pictograms or emotions continuously, press (Continue) instead of (Select).
- Once entered pictograms remain as history and appear in Suggestions at first. Pressing * switches Suggestions between pictogram logs → emoticons.
- In Kanji/Kana entry mode, enter "はーと", "でんわ" and press (Convert) to switch to pictograms. Similarly, "わーい" or "えーん" can be converted to emoticons.

Line Breaks

Line break entry operation is same for all entry modes.

1 In text entry window,



2 Select line break symbol and press (Select)

- Alternatively, press .

- In some entry windows, line break cannot be inserted.



































Hangul

1 In text entry window, → *Hangul*



2 Enter characters

- Press number keys to enter assigned character units that appear; combine several consonants and vowels.


Consonant Example (Key assignment)	
ㄱ	 (once)
ㅋ	 (twice)
ㆁ	 (3 times)
Vowel Example (Key assignment)	
ㅏ	  (ㅣ),  (·)
ㅑ	  (·),  (ㅣ)
ㅓ	  (·),  (ㅡ)
ㅕ	   
ㅗ	   
ㅛ	   
ㅜ	   
ㅠ	  (·),  (ㅡ),  (ㅣ),  (·),  (ㅣ)

- Hangul appears in received S! Mail, however Hangul cannot be inserted into a reply or forwarded.

Deleting & Editing Text

- 1 Use  to move cursor to character to delete, and 




- When a space is highlighted, the character before cursor is deleted.
- To delete all characters after the cursor, press  for 1+ seconds. If there is no character after the cursor, all characters are deleted.

Advanced

Advanced Settings (P.2-38)


- Deleting Text Template
- Specify Range to Copy/Cut
- Pasting Copied or Cut Text
- Undoing Text Entry
- Jump to Top/End
- Quoting Saved Text Template
- Entering E-mail Address & URL to Phonebook Quickly

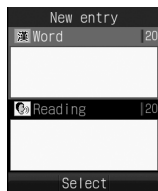
Settings

- Reset entry history to default ( P.12-18)

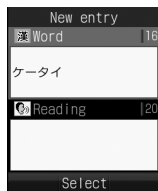
User's Dictionary

Save frequently used words/phrases of up to 20 characters; entries appear in Suggestions when Reading is entered.

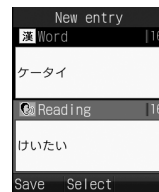
- 1  → **Settings** → **Phone settings** → **User's dictionary** → **New entry**



- 2 **Select Word field** → Enter word or sentence



- 3 **Select Reading field** → Enter reading





- 4  **(Save)**


Saving to User's Dictionary



1 In text entry window,  → *Add to dictionary*

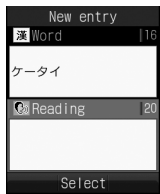


2 Use  to move cursor to the first letter of adding character, and  (Start)



- Press  (UserDic) to display User's Dictionary menu and view added entries.


3 Use  to select the range →  (End)



4 Select Reading field → Enter text



5  (Save)

- If selecting the range which includes a line break, character strings before the line break are saved.
- Press  and select *Edit entry* in Step 2 to view currently saved word list.

Advanced

 **Advanced Settings** (☞ P.2-39)

● Setting & Canceling Prediction Entry Function

 **Settings**

● Save entries to User's Dictionary (☞ P.12-17)

● Edit User's Dictionary entries (☞ P.12-17)

● Delete User's Dictionary entries (☞ P.12-18)

● Reset entry history to default (☞ P.12-18)

Phonebook

Phonebook Entry Items

Create up to 1,000 entries. The number of items that can be saved varies by USIM Card. Insert USIM Card into compatible SoftBank handsets to use USIM Card Phonebook entries.

Each Phonebook entry contains items listed below.

Item/Description	Location
Last name	
Double/single-byte (Saved as "Name" in USIM Card Phonebook)	920SC: Yes (up to 50 byte) USIM Card: Yes ²
First name	
Double/single-byte (Saved as "Name" in USIM Card Phonebook)	920SC: Yes (up to 50-byte) USIM Card: Yes ²
Reading last name	
Single-byte (Saved as "Name" in USIM Card Phonebook)	920SC: Yes (up to 50-byte) USIM Card: Yes ²

Item/Description	Location
Reading first name	
Single-byte (Saved as "Name" in USIM Card Phonebook)	920SC: Yes (up to 50-byte) USIM Card: Yes ²
Add phone number	
Saved with area code	920SC: Yes (5 entries/up to 32-byte) USIM Card: Yes ^{1 2}
Phone icon	
Select one of seven icons	920SC: Yes USIM Card: No (1 icon)
Add E-mail address	
Single-byte alphanumerics	920SC: Yes (5 entries/up to 128-byte) USIM Card: Yes ² (1 entry)
E-mail address icon	
Select one of four icons	920SC: Yes USIM Card: No (1 icon)

Item/Description	Location
Picture	
Still image appears for incoming calls	920SC: Yes
Select a Data Folder image or capture with Camera	USIM Card: No
Ringtone settings	
Voice Call/Video Call/ Messages/S! Friend's Status/S! Circle Talk Select from Data Folder	920SC: Yes USIM Card: No
Vibration settings	
Set vibration for all incoming transmissions	920SC: Yes USIM Card: No
Group	
Select from 20 groups	920SC: Yes USIM Card: Yes ¹
Secret mode	
On/Off	920SC: Yes USIM Card: No

Item/Description	Location
Birthday	
Date of birth	920SC: Yes
	USIM Card: No
Blood type	
Select one of four types	920SC: Yes
	USIM Card: No
Hobby	
Enter up to 100 bytes	920SC: Yes
	USIM Card: No
Company	
Enter up to 64 bytes	920SC: Yes
	USIM Card: No
Job title	
Up to 64-byte	920SC: Yes
	USIM Card: No
Add address	
Post code (40 bytes), Country (64 bytes), Province, City, Street and Additional information (128 bytes)	920SC: Yes (2 entries)
	USIM Card: No

Item/Description	Location
Add homepage	
Enter up to 1,024 bytes	920SC: Yes (2 entries)
	USIM Card: No
Homepage icon	
Select one of three icons	920SC: Yes
	USIM Card: No
Memo	
Up to 512-byte	920SC: Yes
	USIM Card: No

1 Number of savable items varies by USIM Card.

2 Number of savable characters varies by USIM Card.



- When using Phonebook entries for the first time after replacing USIM Card, a confirmation appears; choose **Yes** to copy USIM Card entries to 920SC.

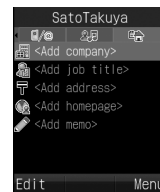
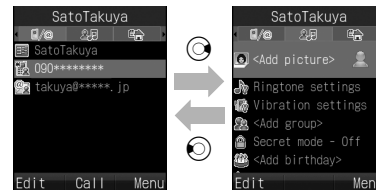
Note

- **Protect important information Phonebook entries may be lost/alterd if battery is removed or left uncharged for an extended period; accidents/malfunctions may also affect entries. Back-up entries and store separately. SoftBank is not liable for damage from lost information.**

Phonebook Entry Tabs

Phonebook entry information is divided into three tabs. Toggle Tabs to view desired information.

- 1  → Search Phonebook and select entry (☞P.2-20) → Use  to switch tabs



Creating New Entries

Default data location for Phonebook is *Phone*. Set to USIM Card as required (➔P.12-10).



Entry Details

Example: Creating a new entry and saving Name, Reading, Phone Number and E-mail Address.

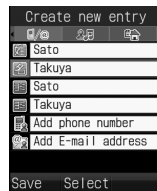
1 → (New)



2 Select Last name field → Enter last name



3 Select First name field → Enter first name



4 Select Reading last name field → Edit as required



5 Select Reading first name field → Edit as required



6 Select Add phone number field → Enter number → Select an icon



7 Select Add E-mail address field → Enter address → Select an icon



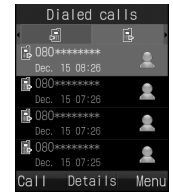
8 [Save icon] (Save)

- **Valid Phone Field Characters**
Enter 0 through 9, #, *, -, P (Pause), and + (International Code). Press **[*+]** to toggle *, - and P. Press **[D+]** for 1+ seconds to enter +.
- If a Memory Card file is selected for Incoming Image or Ringtone, copy file to 920SC confirmation appears. For a copy protected file, move confirmation appears. Choose *Yes* to complete setting.
- When using Samsung PC Studio to synchronize Phonebook entries with a PC, Secret entries are not synchronized to PC. If an entry is changed to a Secret entry, it can no longer be synchronized and is deleted from PC. For Samsung PC Studio information, see the user guide on the CD-ROM.

Saving from Call Log Records

Save numbers from Call Log records to new or existing Phonebook entries.

1 [Call Log icon] (Received calls) or [Call Log icon] (Dialed calls)



2 Highlight an entry → [Y?] → Add to Phonebook



3 Select saving method

■ To save as a new entry

New

■ To update existing entry

Update → Search and select an entry (☞P.2-20)

4 To enter each item, follow Steps 2 to 8 in "Saving to Phonebook" (☞P.2-18).

Advanced

☞ Advanced Settings (☞P.2-40)

- Creating Message from Phonebook
- Adding Phonebook Entry to Speed Dial
- Adding S! Friend's Status Member from Phonebook
- Viewing S! Friend's Status
- New Group (USIM Card)
- Adding Member to Group
- Removing Member from Group
- Showing or Hiding Caller ID
- Sending Phonebook as vFile
- Creating and Saving vFiles
- Copying Entries between Phone & USIM
- Copying Items
- Setting Default Phone Number or Mail Address
- Printing Phonebook Details via Bluetooth®
- Viewing USIM Card Service Number
- Canceling Phonebook Secret Mode Temporarily

- Checking Memory Status
- Enter and Save Phone Number
- Renaming Group
- ☞ Settings
- Select Phonebook Save Location (☞P.12-10)
- Change Phonebook preference (Phone/USIM) (☞P.12-10)
- Change Search Method (☞P.12-10)
- Backup Phonebook entries (☞P.12-10)
- Change Phonebook font size (☞P.12-10)
- Change font size for Phonebook menu (☞P.12-15)
- Activate or cancel Simple Search (☞P.12-18)

Using Phonebook

Searching Phonebook

For example, search with "A-ka-sa-ta-na" here.

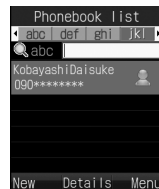
1



Phonebook List


- To change search method, in Phonebook list, press **[Vr]** → *Settings* → select *Search method*. The changed settings are saved.


2 Use to navigate to the target entry





- Alternatively, enter name in abc field (could be first few letters) to search.

3 Use to view the target entry

- To display details, press  (Details/Select).

• When *Secret mode* is set to *Hide*, the entries with *Secret mode - On* do not appear. When searching, press  in Phonebook search window and select *Unlock temporarily* to set secret mode setting to display temporarily.





Calling from Phonebook


- 1  → Highlight the target entry in the list →  (Details) → Highlight the target phone number












Entry Details

2 Make a call


- To make a Voice Call
 -  (Call) → *Voice call*
- To make a Video Call
 -  (Call) → *Video call*
- To initiate S! Circle Talk
 -  (Call) → *S! Circle Talk* → (P.9-7 Initiating S! Circle Talk 3)
- To make an international call
 -  (Call) → *International call* (P.3-22 Making International Calls from Japan)

• Alternatively, highlight the target entry in the list and press , select *Call*, then select *Voice call*, *Video call*, *S! Circle Talk* or *International call*. When entry contains multiple numbers, the phone number set with *Set default number* is dialed if set; otherwise, first number listed is dialed. If *Set default number* is set to *Not assigned*, Call window appears; select a number.

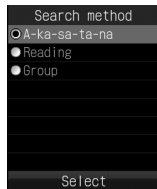
• **Calling from Simple search or search result**
When *Simple search* (P.12-18) is set to *On*, pressing number searches entry starting with *Reading* corresponding to each number and display the name and the phone number. Highlight phone number and press , or  (Select) and then press  (Call) for Voice Call and  for Video Call.

• **Calling from phone number search or search result**
Enter 4-digit number to search entry which contains the entered number at the first or last part of it and open name and phone number for the entry. When *Simple search* is *On* and an entry is searched, press  to switch search results between Phone number search and Simple search. Highlight phone number and press , or  (Select) and then press  (Call) for Voice Call and  for Video Call.



Changing Search Method

In Standby, press  to show the specified search window.

- 1  →  → *Settings* → *Search method*




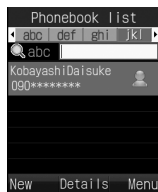
- 2 *A-ka-sa-ta-na*, *Reading*, or *Group*

- When selecting *A-ka-sa-ta-na*, press  in Standby to display a list. When selecting other settings, the selected search window appears.
- Phonebook entries with *Secret mode - On* do not appear. When searching, press  in Phonebook search window and select *Unlock temporarily* to set secret mode setting to display temporarily.



Deleting Phonebook Entries

Deleting an Entry

- 1  → Highlight an entry to delete in the list



- 2  → *Delete* → *Selected* → *Yes*

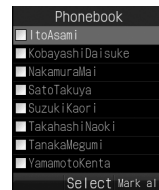
- To delete from details, after Step 1, select  (Details) →  → *Delete* → *Yes*.

Deleting Multiple Entries

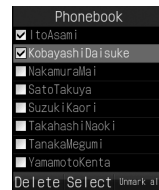
- 1 




- 2  → *Delete* → *Multiple*



- 3 Check entries




- 4 Press  (*Delete*) → *Yes*

Deleting All Entries

Delete all Phonebook entries saved in 920SC or USIM Card at once.

1 





2  → **Delete** → **All**

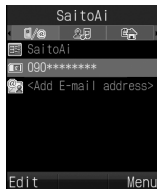


3 **Enter Phone Password** → 
(OK) → *Yes*



Account Details






View handset phone number in USIM Card. Add your name, mail address, street address, and other information.

1  → 



Advanced

 **Advanced Settings**  P.2-43

-  Sending Account Details as vFile
-  Resetting Account Details
-  Creating vFile and Save in Data Folder
-  Copying Item in Account Details
-  Printing with Bluetooth® Compatible Printer

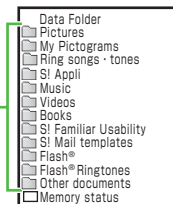
Data Folder

Organize handset files by file type here.

Default Folders

Data Folder contains 12 default folders. Files created with 920SC functions or acquired via Bluetooth®, Internet or Mail are saved to appropriate folder by the file type/format. Create additional folders within default folders.

Default Folders




Folder/Description	File Type ¹
Pictures	
Image files captured with 920SC Camera	JPEG, BMP, GIF, WBMP, PNG, Animation GIF
Digital camera	
Still images captured with 920SC Camera (Insert Memory Card)	JPEG
My Pictograms	
Downloaded pictograms	GIF, GPK
Ring songs · tones	
Voice Recorder files, downloaded music, and other sound files	SMAF/MIDI/SP-MIDI, MPEG4 Audio, AMR, SMF, Mobile XMF
S! Appli	
S! Appli	JAVA
Music	
Downloaded Chaku-Uta [®]	MPEG4 Audio (mp4, m4a, aac, 3gp), smc
Videos	
920SC video files	MPEG4 (mp4, 3gp), H.263, H.264
Books	
Downloaded e-books, comics and photobooks	CCF

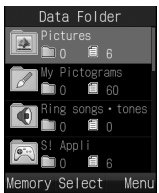
Folder/Description	File Type ¹
S! Familiar Usability	
Downloaded user interfaces from other handset models	UIE
S! Mail templates	
Templates created with S! Mail	HMT
Flash [®]	
Flash [®] files	SWF
Flash [®] Ringtones	
Ringtone assignable downloaded Flash [®] files	SWF
Other documents	
Document or graphic files requiring File Viewer for use on 920SC vFiles ² , etc.	SVG, SVGZ, vCard, vCalendar, vBookmark, PDF, XLS, DOC, PPT, TXT, HTML, Unsupported file

- Files are saved by type. Files cannot be moved to or saved in folders that do not support them.
- Use vFiles to send or transfer handset files via S! Mail, etc. 920SC supports vCard (.vcf) for Phonebook entries, vCalendar (.vcs) for Task/Schedule, and vBookmark (.vbm) for Bookmarks.

- Save up to 999 files/folders in each default folder.
- In a folder, use *Memory status* to confirm memory. Alternatively, confirm memory in *Settings* (P.2-37).
- In Data Folder, press (Memory) to open Memory Card Data Folder; appears. Press (Phone) to return to 920SC Data Folder.
- appears in some folders as Downloaded Site Keitai. Select the link to access site via Yahoo!


Viewing Files













1  → *Data Folder*



2 Select a folder



3 Highlight a file →  (View, Play, Select, or Start)

- File List Indicators
 -  : Nontransferable
 -  : Nontransferable and unusable
 -  : Protected
 -  : Copy Protected File (Transferable, Content Key Valid)
 -  : Copy Protected File (Transferable, Content Key Expired)
 -  : Copy Protected File (Transferable, Content Key Valid)
 -  : Copy Protected File (Transferable, Content Key Expired)
 -  : Set as Wallpaper (P.2-46)
 -  : Set as Ringtone (P.2-46)
- When a different USIM Card is installed, S! Appli does not run. Nontransferable/copy protected files other than preinstalled ones cannot be used.
- **Activating Camera or Voice Recorder from Data Folder**
 Highlight *Pictures* or image captured with 920SC, press  and select *Take photo* to activate Camera in Camera mode. Similarly, highlight *Videos* or video captured with 920SC, press  and select *Record Video* to activate Camera in Video mode. Highlight *Ring songs · tones* or sound file recorded with 920SC, press  and select *Record sound* to activate Voice recorder.

Note

- Files over 3 MB or larger than 1600 x 1600 pixels cannot be edited or zoomed. Files over 1.3 MB cannot be set as Incoming image or Alternative picture. Edit or zoom JPEG files smaller than 2560 x 2560.
- During playback, video file thumbnails do not appear in a list view for *Videos* folder etc.

Viewing Images with Picture Browser

View images in Normal or Full Screen View.
Landscape images rotate for Full Screen View.



Normal View

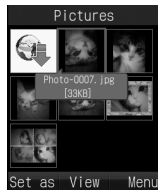


Full Screen View

1 → *Data Folder*





2 *Pictures*



3 Highlight file in the list →

(View)



- Press  (FULL) to view in Full Screen View.
Press  to return to Normal View.

4 Use to select sort mode

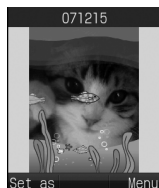


5 Use to move image

- Sort images by Timeline, Person, Folder, Composition, or Color.
- Some images may not be displayable.
- Select an image from *Pictures*; Picture Browser activates automatically.
- Use *Person* to sort Face Link images.

SVG-T/Flash® Viewer


View graphics/animation in Normal or Full Screen View. Use Menu and Shortcuts to navigate Display.



Normal View





Full Screen View

1  → **Data Folder**



2 Select a folder → Select a file

- View SVG, SVGZ, and SWF files in Data Folder.
- Some files may not be displayable.
- Selecting a compatible file from Data Folder automatically activates SVG-T/Flash® Viewer.
- To set an image to Wallpaper, press  (Set as) in Normal View, or press  in Full Screen View and select *Set as* and select *Wallpaper*.

Advanced


 **Advanced Settings**  P.2-44

- Viewing Slide Show
- Accessing Link in File
- Confirming File/Folder Details
- Toggling Memory Card and Phone Data Folder

Managing Files/Folders

Creating Folders

Create sub-folder in Default folders. Set *Set secret* to sub-folder, to hide the created folder.

1  → **Data Folder**



2 Select default folder to create a sub-folder




- 3  → *Manage* → *Create folder*

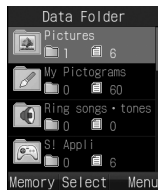


- 4 Enter name

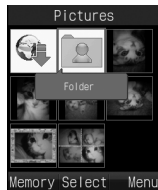
- New folder cannot be created in a created folder.
- If *Secret data folder* is active, secret folders appear.

Renaming File/Folder

- 1  → *Data Folder*



- 2 Select default folder →
Highlight file or sub-folder to
rename



- 3  → *Manage* → *Rename or Rename folder*



- 4 Enter a new name

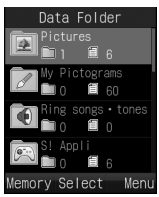
- To rename SI Mail template, Select *Rename* and enter name.

- Protected files cannot be renamed.

Moving Files/Folders

When Memory Card is inserted, move files or folders between 920SC (Phone) and Memory Card.

1 → Data Folder




2 Select default folder → Highlight a file or sub-folder



3 → Move




4 Move files/folders




- To move a file/folder
Selected
- To move multiple files/folders
Multiple → Check files or sub-folders to move →  (Move)
- To move all files/sub-folders in the same folder
All

5 Select a destination folder → *Move here*

- When Memory Card is inserted, select *Phone* or *Memory card*, then select a folder.

- Protected files cannot be moved.
- If target file/folder with the same name exists, text entry window appears; edit file/folder name.
- To move a file set for Wallpaper or Ringtone to Memory Card, a confirmation appears. Choose *Yes* to release the setting and move the file. When moving multiple or all files, choose *No* to move only files without set functions. Press  to cancel moving.

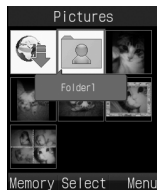
Note


- Downloaded files may not appear/play properly if moved to another device or when a different USIM Card is inserted in 920SC.
- Nontransferable and unusable files (), protected files (), or nontransferable and Copy protected files () cannot be moved to Memory Card.

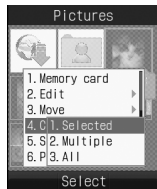
Copying Files/Folders

Copy a file or folder and paste in the same or another folder. When Memory Card is inserted, copy folders between 920SC and Memory Card.

- 1  → **Data Folder** → Select a folder



- 2 Highlight file or folder to copy →  → Copy or Copy folder




- 3 Copy files/folders

- To copy a file/folder

Selected

- To copy multiple files/folders

Multiple → Check files/folders to copy →  (Copy)

- To move all files/folders in the same folder

All

- 4 Select a destination folder → Paste here

- When Memory Card is inserted, select *Phone* or *Memory card*, then select a folder.

- When pasting files/folders in the same location as the original, numbers such as "_001" is automatically added to pasted file/folder names.
- When target file/folder with the same name exists, edit the name of the file/folder. Text entry window appears to enter new name.

Note


- Nontransferable files cannot be copied.

Deleting Files/Folders

Deleting Files

- 1  → **Data Folder** → Select a folder



- 2 Highlight a file in the list →  → Delete




3 Delete files/folders

■ To delete a file


Selected → *Yes*

■ To delete multiple files

Multiple → Check files to delete →

 → *Yes*

■ To move all files in the same folder

All → Enter Phone Password → 

(OK) → *Yes*

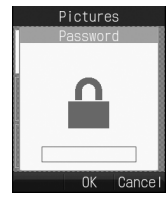
- When deleting a file that is set to a function or protected, a confirmation appears. Choose *Yes* to cancel the setting and delete the file. When deleting multiple files, choose *No* to delete only files that are not set to functions and unprotected files.
- When deleting files with Content Key, a confirmation appears. Choose *Yes* to delete both file and Content Key.

Deleting Created Sub-folders

1 → *Data Folder*



2 Select default folder → Select created sub-folder → → *Delete folder*



3 Enter Phone Password → (OK) → *Yes*

- Enter Phone Password only when the file is saved in sub-folder.

- When deleting files that are set to a function or protected, of folders containing copy protected files a confirmation appears. Choose *Yes* to cancel setting and delete the file. Choose *No* to delete only files that are not set to functions and unprotected files; folders are unchanged.
- When a file in the folder has Content Key, a confirmation appears. Choose *Yes* to delete both the file and Content Key.

Advanced

 **Advanced Settings**  P.2-44

- Sending Files
- Printing Still Images via USB or Bluetooth®
- Selecting Folder List
- Sorting Files
- Canceling Secret Setting Temporarily
- Activating Camera Mode
- Activating Video Mode
- Recording Sound
- Setting & Canceling File Lock
- Setting Secret in Sub-folder

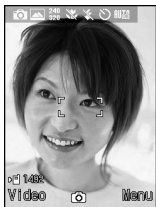
Face Link

Saving Face Link Data

Link Phonebook information to portrait still image, to make a call or send messages from image.

Capturing and Setting Still Images

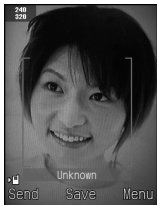
1 (2+ seconds)



2 → Use to highlight



3 On → ()



- Available only when Face Link is *On*.
- If captured face is recognized, frame appears.
- If Face Link has been saved, name appears. If not, *Unknown* appears.
- If captured face is not recognized, frame does not appear. The image is saved and capture window reappears.

4 → *Face Link*

■ To add from Phonebook

Phonebook → Search Phonebook and select entry (P.2-20)

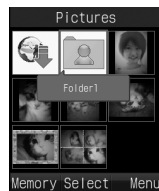
■ To enter directly

Direct input → Enter name

5 (Save)

Adding Data to Saved Image

1 → *Data Folder* → *Pictures*



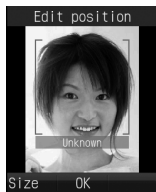
2 Select a file





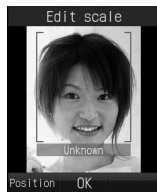
- 3  → *Face link setting* →
 → *Edit face link*





- 4 Use  to adjust frame position



- 5  (Size) → Use  to adjust frame size



- 6  (OK) →  (FaceLink)

- 7 Add data



■ To add from Phonebook

Phonebook → Search Phonebook and select entry (P.2-20)

■ To enter directly

Direct input → Enter name

- 8  (OK)


- To view saved Face Link, select file and press , then , and select *Contact Info.*; saved entry detail appears.

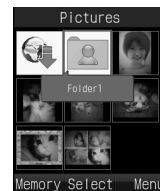
- Memory Card files cannot be set as Face Link.



Using Face Link

Make a call or send message from Face Link image.

Make Calls & Send Messages from Saved Image

- 1  → *Data Folder* →
Pictures



- 2 Select a file →  →
 (Call)



3 Make a call or send a message

■ To make a Voice Call

Voice call

■ To make a Video Call

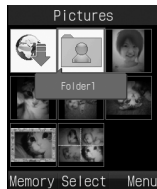
Video call

■ To send a message

Message → (☞P.4-3 Sending S! Mail 5)

Sending Saved Face Link

1 → *Data Folder* → *Pictures*



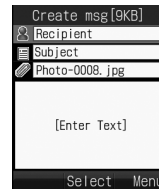
2 Select a file



3



4 → *Send* → *Via message* → **Confirmation appears, Yes or No**



- Choose *Yes* to attach image and Phonebook entry, choose *No* to attach only image.

5 **Send** (☞P.4-3 Sending S! Mail 2)

Advanced

 **Advanced Settings**  P.2-46

Memory Card

920SC is compatible with microSD™ Memory Card. Purchase microSD™ Memory Card to use Memory Card-related handset functions.

- SoftBank recommends 64, 128, 256, 512 MB, 1 GB, or 2 GB cards.

Note

- **Protect important information**
Data saved in Memory Card may be lost or damaged by accident or malfunction. Back-up entries and store separately. SoftBank is not liable for damage from lost or altered information.
- **microSD™ Memory Cards do not have Write Protection Switch.** There is a risk of accidental erasure or overwriting of files.

Precautions

Note the following precautions.

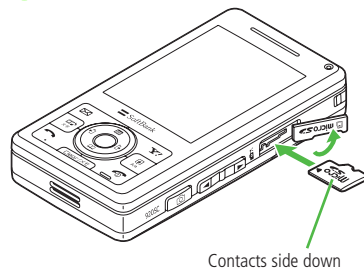
- Use only recommended Memory Card. Other Memory Cards may not perform properly.
- Do not place labels or stickers on Memory Card. These items may affect card performance or result in lost information.
- Never disassemble or modify a Memory Card.
- Do not expose Memory Card to strong impacts, pressure or liquids.
- Do not touch Memory Card terminals or expose them to metal objects.
- Keep a Memory Card away from dust, high humidity, or excessive heat.
- Do not use in the presence of corrosive gases.
- Avoid heat sources and do not dispose of in fire.
- A Memory Card is a consumable item. Card performance deteriorates with usage.

Inserting & Removing

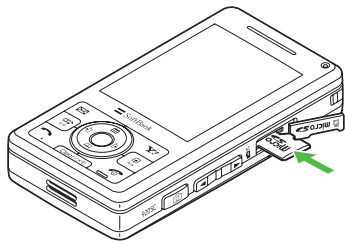
Turn handset power off before inserting or removing a Memory Card.

Inserting

1 Open cover



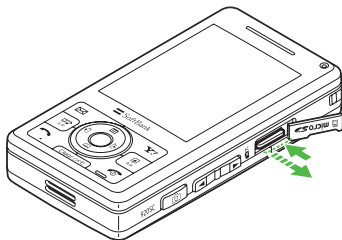
- 2 With contacts down, insert Memory Card until it clicks



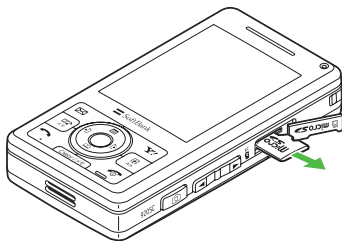
- 3 Close cover

Removing

- 1 Open cover, gently push down on card until it clicks



- 2 Let card pop out, then remove it



- 3 Close cover

- If Memory Card Data Folder is open when Memory Card is removed, Phone Data Folder appears.

Note

- Do not apply excessive force when inserting/removing Memory Card; may damage Memory Card or handset.
- Take care not to lose removed Memory Card.
- Avoid touching/damaging Memory Card contacts when inserting/removing it.
- Never remove Memory Card or battery while files are being accessed; may damage handset/card or result in damaged/lost files.

Advanced

Settings

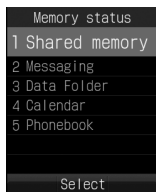
- Check Memory Card details (☞ P.12-26)
- Format Memory Card (☞ P.12-26)
- Rename Memory Card (☞ P.12-26)
- Set Default Memory to Phone or Memory Card (☞ P.12-27)

Viewing Memory Status

View the following information.

- Available shared memory
- Status of SMS and S! Mail mailboxes
- Status of memory in Data Folder
- Status of Calendar items registered
- Status of Phonebooks (Handset and USIM Card)

1  → **Settings** → **Memory settings** → **Memory status**



2 **View each item**

■ To view Shared memory

Shared memory

■ To view mail box status

Messaging → *S! Mail (By count)*,
S! Mail (By size), or *SMS*

■ To view Data Folder status

Data Folder → *Phone memory* or
Memory card

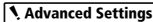
■ To view Calendar status

Calendar

■ To view Phonebook

Phonebook

Advanced

 **Advanced Settings** (☞ P.2-47)

 **Settings**


● Clear Phone Memory (☞ P.12-27)

● View Memory status (☞ P.12-27)


Advanced Settings

Basic Operations

Searching from Multi Search Result

In Multi Search result window,  → *Search in results* → Enter keyword → View search result

Voice or Video Call & S! Circle Talk from Multi Search Result

Highlight Phonebook entry or Call log in Multi Search result →  → *Call*

■ To make a Voice/Video Call

Voice call or *Video call*


■ To initiate S! Circle Talk

S! Circle Talk → (☞ P.9-7 Initiating S! Circle Talk **3**)


■ To make international call

International call → (☞ P.3-22)


Creating Message from Multi Search Result

Highlight Phonebook entry or Call log in Multi Search result →  → *Create message* → *S! Mail* or *SMS* (☞ P.4-3 Sending S! Mail **5**, P.4-8 Sending SMS Messages **5**)



Using Functions from Multi Search Result


Highlight function items in Multi Search result →  → *Go to Phonebook*, *Go to Messages*, *Go to Call Log*, *Go to Data folder*, *Go to Schedule*, *Go to Tasks*, or *Go to Notepad*

Viewing Multi Search Result Details




Highlight *Messages* or *Data Folder* data in Multi Search result →  → *Details*


Setting Main Menu

 →  (Style) → *Preset main menu* → *Glow in the dark*, *Golden thread*, or *Snap photo*

- To set image in *Snap photo* without editing, press  (Save).
- Change menu appearance except Yahoo! Keitai menu.
- If Main menu is set, image set for Standby is released.


Setting Image in Data Folder for Main Menu

 →  (Style) → *Preset main menu* → *Snap photo* → Select menu to change → Select file location → Select a file →  (Save)




- Change Wallpaper and Menu.
- To undo the setting, highlight the image, press  (Remove), and then choose *Yes* in Confirmation window.

Slide Show




Editing Slide Show

 → *Camera* → *Slide show*

■ To replace still image



 → *Replace* → Check still image → 
(Done) →  (Set) → *Yes* or *No*

■ To change image order




Highlight still image →  → *Change order*
→ Use  to change order →  (Save) →

 (Set) → *Yes* or *No*

■ To delete still image

Highlight still image →  → *Delete* → *Yes*
→  (Set) → *Yes* or *No*



■ To add still image

Highlight location with no still image set →
 (Add) → Check still image →  (Done)
→  (Set) → *Yes* or *No*


- Choose *Yes* to fit page to Display, or choose *No* to display as original proportion.

Text Entry


Entering date/time

In text entry window, select Kanji/Kana entry mode and enter Hiragana →  (EngNum力才) → Highlight conversion alternative →  (Select)


Toggling Double-byte and Single-byte Symbols

In text entry window, while conversion alternative for double/single byte symbols, 


Adding Text to Templates

 → *Templates* → *Text templates*

■ To add the first entry



 (Add new) → Enter text

■ To add second or later entries


 → *Add new* → Enter text

- Save up to 70 characters per template.


Editing Text Template

 → *Templates* → *Text templates* → Highlight template →  (Edit) → Edit text

Deleting Text Template

 → *Templates* → *Text templates*



■ To delete an entry

Highlight template →  → *Delete* → *Selected* → *Yes*






■ To delete multiple entries

 → *Delete* → *Multiple* → Check templates to delete →  (Delete) → *Yes*

■ To delete all templates

 → *Delete* → *All* → Enter Phone password →  (OK) → *Yes*

Specify Range to Copy/Cut



In text entry window,  → *Copy* or *Cut* → Use  to move cursor to the first character of the range to cut/copy and press  (Start) → Use  to specify the range →  (End)

- To copy or cut all text in text entry window, press

 (All).

- Copied or cut text remains even after powered off.

Pasting Copied or Cut Text


In text entry window, use  to move cursor to the position to paste →  → *Paste*

Undoing Text Entry


In text entry window,  → *Undo*

- In Kanji/Kana entry mode, undo operations immediately after performing such as Cut, Paste, or Delete. Undoing conversion is also available.



Jump to Top/End

In text entry window,  → *Cursor position* → *Jump to top* or *Jump to end*


Quoting Saved Text Template

In S! Mail creation window,  → *Text templates* → Select a template


Quoting Phonebook or E-mail Address in Phonebook

In S! Mail creation window,  → *Advanced* → *Phonebook* → Search Phonebook and select entry () → Select an item


Entering E-mail Address & URL to Phonebook Quickly

 → *Phonebook* → *Create new entry*

■ To enter E-mail address


Select E-mail address field →  → *Quick Address List*

■ To enter URL

Select homepage field →  → *Quick Address List*

User's Dictionary


Deleting Entries from User's Dictionary


 → *Settings* → *Phone settings* → *User's dictionary* → *Edit entry*

■ To delete an entry


Highlight entry →  → *Delete*

■ To delete all entries

 → *Delete all* → Enter Phone Password →

 (OK) → *Yes*

Setting & Canceling Prediction Entry Function

In Dictionary window,  → *Prediction On* or *Prediction Off*

Phonebook

Adding Information to Phonebook Entry

→ (New)

■ To save Group

Use to switch to → Select Group field → Select Group → (Save)

■ To set Secret mode

Use to switch to → Select Secret mode field → *On* or *Off* → (Save)

■ To save Birthday

Use to switch to → Select Birthday field → Enter Birthday → (Save)

■ To save Blood type

Use to switch to → Select Blood type field → Select Blood type → (Save)

■ To save Hobby

Use to switch to → Select Hobby field → Enter Hobby → (Save)

■ To save Company

Use to switch to → Select Company field → Enter Company → (Save)

■ To save Job title

Use to switch to → Select Job title field → Enter Job title → (Save)

■ To save Address

Use to switch to → Select Address field → Select Zip code field → Enter Zip code → Select Country field → Enter Country name → Select Province field → Enter Province name → Select City field → Enter City name → Select Street field → Enter Street name → Select Additional information field → Enter Additional information → (OK) → Select an icon → (Save)

■ To save URL

Use to switch to → Select Homepage field → Enter URL → Select an icon → (Save)

■ To save Memo

Use to switch to → Select Memo field → Enter Memo → (Save)

- Items other than Group are unavailable in USIM Card Phonebook.

Setting Incoming Image to Phonebook Entry

→ (New) → Use to switch to → Select Picture field

■ To set from saved still image

Pictures → Select a file → (Save)

- With Memory Card inserted, select a file from *Pictures* or *Digital camera* folder.

■ To set by capturing still image

Take photo → Capture still image → (Save)

■ To cancel set incoming image

Off → (Save)

- When a file saved in Memory Card is set to incoming image or ringtone, a message appears asking whether to copy the file to 9205C before setting. When setting copy protected file, a confirmation appears asking whether to move file to 9205C before setting. Choose *Yes* to complete setting.

Setting Ringtone to Phonebook Entry

→ (New) → Use to switch to → Select Ringtone settings field

■ To set Ringtone for Voice Call/Video Call/S! Circle Talk

Voice call, Video call, or S! Circle Talk → Select a file location → Highlight a file → (Play) → (Select) → (Done) → (Save)

■ To set Ringtone for Message/S! Friend's Status

Messages, or S! Friend's Status → *Assign tone* → Select a file location → Highlight a file → (Play) → (Select) → (OK) → (Done) → (Save)

■ To set Ringtone duration for Message/S! Friend's Status

Messages, or S! Friend's Status → *Duration* → Enter duration → (OK) → (Done) → (Save)

- When a file saved in Memory Card is set to incoming image or ringtone, a message appears asking whether to copy the file to 920SC before setting. When setting copy protected file, a confirmation appears asking whether to move file to 920SC before setting. Choose **Yes** to complete setting.

Setting Vibration to Phonebook Entry

- (New) → Use to switch to → Select Vibration settings field → *Voice call, Video call, Messages, S! Friend's Status, or S! Circle Talk* → *Off* or *Pattern 1* to *Pattern 5* → (Play) → (Select) → (Done) → (Save)

Adding International Code and Country Number to Phone Number in Phonebook

- Search Phonebook and select entry (ⓂP.2-20) → Highlight phone number → → *Call* → *International call* (ⓂP.3-22 Making International Calls from Japan)

Creating Message from Phonebook

- Highlight Phonebook entry to send message → → *Create message* → *S! Mail* or *SMS* → (ⓂP.4-3 Sending S! Mail ⑤, P.4-8 Sending SMS Messages ⑤)

Adding Phonebook Entry to Speed Dial

- Search Phonebook and select entry (ⓂP.2-20) → → *Add to Speed dial* → Select a field to add the entry

Adding S! Friend's Status Member from Phonebook

- Highlight Phonebook entry → → *Add to S! Friend's Status*

Viewing S! Friend's Status

- Highlight Phonebook entry → → *View S! Friend's Status*

New Group (USIM Card)

- → *New group* → Select Group name field → Enter group name → (Save)
- Change search method to *Group* (ⓂP.2-22) and view USIM Phonebook, to create new group (ⓂP.2-42).

Adding Member to Group

- Select group to add member → → *Add member* → Check member → (Add)
- Set search method to *Group* to add (ⓂP.2-22).

Removing Member from Group

- Select group to remove member → → *Remove member* → Check member → (Remove)
- Set search method to *Group* to remove (ⓂP.2-22).
 - Removed member is not deleted from Phonebook.

Showing or Hiding Caller ID

- Highlight Phonebook entry to call → → *Hide/Show my ID*

■ To follow Show my number setting

None →

■ To show phone number

Show my ID →

■ To hide phone number

Hide my ID →

Sending Phonebook as vFile

- Search Phonebook and select entry (ⓂP.2-20) → Highlight phone number or E-mail address → → *Send*

■ To send via message

Via message → (ⓂP.4-3 Sending S! Mail ②)

■ To send via Bluetooth®

Via bluetooth → (ⓂP.11-7 Sending ②)

■ To send via infrared

Via infrared (ⓂP.11-3)

Creating and Saving vFiles

- Search Phonebook and select entry (ⓂP.2-20) → → *Save to Data Folder* → *Phone* or *Memory card* → *Yes*
- Alternatively, save to Memory Card if inserted.

Copying Entries between Phone & USIM

- Highlight entry → → *Copy to USIM* or *Copy to phone*

■ To delete an entry

Selected → *Yes*

- To copy entry details, press (Details) → Menu.

■ To copy multiple entries

Multiple → Check entries → (Copy) → *Yes*

■ To copy all Phone or USIM Card entries

All → *Yes*

Copying Items

→ Search Phonebook and select entry (ⓂP.2-20)

→ Highlight item → → *Copy item*

- Paste copied item in text entry window.

Setting Default Phone Number or Mail Address

→ Search Phonebook and select entry (ⓂP.2-20)

→ → *Set default number* → *Voice call,*

Video call, or *Messages* → Select phone number or mail address → (Save)

- To leave default phone number or mail address undefined, highlight item and press (Reset).

Printing Phonebook Details via Bluetooth®

→ Search Phonebook and select entry (ⓂP.2-20)

→ → *Print via bluetooth* → (ⓂP.6-14

Printing via Bluetooth®)

Viewing USIM Card Service Number

→ → *Service number*

Toggling Phonebook View between USIM & Phone

→ → *Settings* → *Change view* →

Phone or *USIM*

- Change remains even if handset is powered off.

Changing Phonebook Search Method

→ → *Settings* → *Search method*

■ To search by reading

Reading → Enter first part of reading in text field

→ View target Phonebook entry from search result

■ To search by group

Group → Select a group → Use to view target Phonebook entry from search result

- Alternatively, after selecting a group, enter first part of reading in text field.

Canceling Phonebook Secret Mode Temporarily

→ → *Unlock temporarily* → Enter

Phone Password → (OK)

- If *Secret mode* is set to *Hide*, Secret entries appear for current session only.

Checking Memory Status

→ → *Memory status*

- To delete viewed memory, press (Delete) (ⓂP.2-47 Deleting Registered/Saved Data).

Editing Phonebook

→ Search Phonebook and select entry (ⓂP.2-20)

→ (Edit) → (ⓂP.2-18 Creating New Entries)

- To edit Phonebook entry with *Secret mode - On*, set *Secret mode to Show*.

Enter and Save Phone Number

Enter phone number → → *Add to Phonebook*

■ To save new entry

New → Enter each item → (Save)

■ To update entry

Update → Search Phonebook and select entry (ⓂP.2-20) → Enter each item → (Save)

- Alternatively, during a call, press and select *Add to Phonebook*.
- Items other than Last name, Reading, E-mail address, and Group cannot be entered in entries for USIM Card.

Renaming Group

→ *Phonebook* → *Group settings* → →

View from phone group or *View from USIM group*

→ Select group to edit → Select Group name field →

Enter group name → (Save)

Changing Group Settings

→ *Phonebook* → *Group settings* → Select group

■ To set Incoming image

Select Group image field → Select a file location

→ Select a file → (Save)

■ To set Ringtone for Voice Call/Video Call/S! Circle Talk

Select Ringtone settings field → *Voice call, Video call,*

or *S! Circle Talk* → Select a file location →

Highlight a file → (Play) → (Select) →

(Done) → (Save)

■ To set Ringtone for Message/S! Friend's Status

Select Ringtone settings field → *Messages* or *S! Friend's Status* → *Assign tone* → Select a file location → Highlight a file → (Play) → (Select) → (OK) → (Done) → (Save)

■ To set Ringtone duration for Message/S! Friend's Status

Select Ringtone settings field → *Messages* or *S! Friend's Status* → *Duration* → Enter duration → (OK) → (Done) → (Save)

■ To set Vibration

Select Vibration settings field → *Voice call*, *Video call*, *Messages*, *S! Friend's Status*, or *S!*

Circle Talk → *Off* or *Pattern 1* to *Pattern 5* → (Play) → (Select) → (Done) → (Save)

- To release set image or vibration and save the entry, highlight Image/Vibration field → (Reset) → (Save)
- To release set Ringtone and save the entry, select Ringtone field → highlight item to reset → (Reset) → (Done) → (Save). To release all Ringtone, highlight Ringtone settings field → (Reset) → (Save).
- Set only for Phone group.
- Images and ringtones set for individual Phonebook entries take priority over those setting.

Account Details

Editing Account Details

→ → (Edit) → Enter each item in the same way as Phonebook entry (➤P.2-18 Creating New Entries) → (Save)

Sending Account Details as vFile

→ → → *Send Account details*

■ To send via message

Via message → (➤P.4-3 Sending S! Mail)

■ To send via Bluetooth®

Via bluetooth → (➤P.11-7 Sending)

■ To send via infrared

Via infrared (➤P.11-3)

Resetting Account Details

→ → (Reset) → *Reset account details* → *Yes*

- All Account details other than phone number saved in USIM Card are reset.

Creating vfile and Save in Data Folder

→ → → *Save to Data Folder* → *Phone* or *Memory card* → *Yes*

- The save location can be set to *Memory card* if inserted.

Copying Item in Account Details

→ → Highlight item → → *Copy item*

- Paste copied item in text entry window.

Printing with Bluetooth® Compatible Printer

→ → (Print) → *Print via bluetooth* → (➤P.6-14 Printing via Bluetooth®)

Sending Message to E-mail Address in Account Details

→ → Highlight E-mail address → (Send) → (➤P.4-3 Sending S! Mail)

Accessing URL in Account Details

→ → Use to switch to → Highlight URL → (Conn.)

Viewing Files

Enlarging and Viewing Image

- → *Data Folder* → *Pictures* → Highlight a file → ● (View) → ● (FULL) → ● (Zoom)
- Use or to enlarge or reduce image, or use to scroll.

Viewing Slide Show

- → *Data Folder* → *Pictures* → Highlight a file → ● (View) → → *Slide show*
- To pause/resume Slide show, press ● (Pause/Restart).
- To stop Slide show, press (Stop).

Changing Picture View of Group

- → *Data Folder* → *Pictures* → Highlight a file → ● (View) → Use to select sorting order → Use or to move images by groups

Guide in Full Screen View

- → *Data Folder* → *Pictures* → Highlight a file → ● (View) → ● (FULL) →
- The guide disappears when about 3 seconds elapsed after image is displayed.

Viewing Graphics/Animation in SVG, SVGZ, & SWF

- → *Data Folder* → Select a folder → Select a file →

■ To toggle Full Screen/Normal view

Full Screen view or *Normal view*

■ To zoom in/out

Zoom → Press () or () → Use

to scroll → Use ● to return to the previous display

■ To pause/resume Flash® image

Pause or *Resume*

■ To change image quality

Quality → *High*, *Medium*, or *Low*

■ To rotate screen by 90 degrees

Rotate → 90°R or 90°L

Accessing Link in File

- → *Data Folder* → *Books* → Select a file → → *Browser access*

- Access linked site included in electronic comic/photo book files.

Confirming File/Folder Details

- → *Data Folder* → Select a file/folder → Highlight a file/folder → → *Details*

Toggling Memory Card and Phone Data Folder

- → *Data Folder* → Select a folder → Highlight a file → → *Memory card* or *Phone*
- Available when Memory Card is inserted.

File/Folder Management

Creating Flash® Image from Still Image

- → *Data Folder* → Select a folder → Select a file → → *Edit* → *Dynamic effect* → (P.6-13) Create Flash® (2)

Combining Image with Still Image

- → *Data Folder* → Select a folder → Select a file → → *Edit* → *mPostcard* → (P.6-13) Compositing Still Images (3)

Sending Files

- → *Data Folder* → Select a folder → Select a file → → *Send*

■ To send via message

Via message → (P.4-3) Sending S! Mail (2)

■ To send via Bluetooth®

Via bluetooth → (P.11-7) Sending (2)

■ To send via infrared

Via infrared (P.11-3)

Printing Still Images via USB or Bluetooth®

- → *Data Folder* → Select a folder → Highlight a file → → *Print via*


■ USB

USB → (P.6-15) Printing via USB (2)


■ Bluetooth®

Bluetooth → (P.6-14) Printing via Bluetooth® (5)

Selecting Folder List

● → *Data Folder* → Select a folder → Highlight a file →  → *View by* → *List* or *Thumbnail*

Sorting Files

● → *Data Folder* → Select a folder → Highlight a file →  → *Sort by* → Select an item

• Sort by following order.

- Descending order of date (*Date*)
- File type (*Type*)
- File name (*Name*)
- Ascending order of file size (*Size*)
- Title (*Title*)
- Content Key status (*Activation status*)

• Folders appear at the top of list.


• When selecting *Type*, files are sorted in alphabetical order by file extension.

• When selecting *Name*, files are sorted in order of numerics → alphabets → Japanese syllabary.


• Files sorted by *Title* are *Ring songs · tones, Music, Videos, Books, S! Familiar Usability*, and *S! Mail templates*.

• When selected *Activation status*, files appear as follows: Unrestricted → Nontransferable → Copyright Protected (Content Key valid) → Copyright Protected (Content Key expired) → Invalid Nontransferable.

Adding Files to Playlist


● → *Data Folder* → Select a folder → Highlight a file →  → *Manage* → *Add to playlist*

Showing & Hiding File/Folder Information


● → *Data Folder* → Select a folder → Highlight a file →  → *Manage* → *Show file info* or *Hide file info*

• In List window for Folder with thumbnail view, set to display folder/file name when highlighted.


Deleting Content Key

● → *Data Folder* → Select a folder → Highlight a file →  → *Manage* → *Content key info*


■ To delete an entry

Highlight content key to delete →  → *Delete* → *Selected* → *Yes*

■ To delete all entries

 → *Delete* → *All* → Enter Phone password → ● (OK) → *Yes*


Managing Content Key in Data Folder

● → *Data Folder* → Select a folder → Highlight a file →  → *Manage* → *Content key info*


■ To view Content Key details

Highlight Content Key → ● (Details)


■ To play a file

Highlight a file →  → *Play*


Canceling Secret Setting Temporarily

● → *Data Folder* → Select a folder → Highlight a file →  → *Unlock temporarily* → Enter Phone Password → ● (OK)


Activating Camera Mode

● → *Data Folder* → *Pictures* → In File list window,  → *Take photo*


Activating Video Mode

● → *Data Folder* → *Videos* → In File list window,  → *Record video*

Recording Sound


● → *Data Folder* → *Ring songs · tones* → In File list window,  → *Record sound*

Setting & Canceling File Lock

● → *Data Folder* → Select a folder → Highlight a file →  → *Lock* or *Unlock*


• Set file lock to restrict renaming, moving, or deleting.

Setting Secret in Sub-folder


● → *Data Folder* → Highlight created sub-folder →  → *Set secret* or *Unset secret* → Enter Phone password → ● (OK)

• Set *Secret data folder* to *Hide* to hide created sub-folders by *Set secret*. To cancel setting, set *Secret data folder* to *Show*.

Purchasing or Acquiring Content Key

● → *Data Folder* → Select a folder → Highlight a file →  → *Manage* → *Download Content key*

Setting Images to Wallpaper etc.

● → *Data Folder* → Select a folder → Highlight a file →  (Set as)

■ To set image to Wallpaper

Wallpaper → Preview the image → ● (Set)

■ To set image to Incoming image


Caller ID → Search Phonebook and select entry (⌚P.2-20) → ● (Set)

■ To set image to Alternative picture


Still picture → ● (OK)

- When a file saved in Memory Card is set, a message appears asking whether to copy the file to 920SC before setting. When setting copy protected file, a confirmation appears asking whether to move file to 920SC before setting. Choose *Yes* to complete setting.

Setting Flash[®] File as Wallpaper

● → *Data Folder* → *Flash[®]* → Highlight a file →  (Set as) → *Wallpaper* → Preview the image → ● (Set)

Setting Sound File to Ringtone in Normal Mode

● → *Data Folder* → Select a folder → Highlight a file →  (Set as)

■ To set to Ringtone for each function


Voice ringtone, Video ringtone, Message ringtone, S! Friend's Status ringtone, S! Circle Talk ringtone, Missed call notification ringtone, S! Quick News ringtone, or Delivery report ringtone

■ To set to Ringtone for Phonebook

Caller ringtone → Search Phonebook and select entry (⌚P.2-20)

- When a file saved in Memory Card is set, a message appears asking whether to copy the file to 920SC before setting. When setting copy protected file, a confirmation appears asking whether to move file to 920SC before setting. Choose *Yes* to complete setting.
- Only Copyright protected MPEG4 AAC, AAC+, or Enhanced AAC+ files can be set.

Setting Video File to Ringtone in Normal Mode

● → *Data Folder* → Select a folder → Highlight a file →  (Set as)

■ To set to Ringtone for each function

Voice ringtone or Video ringtone

■ To set to Ringtone for Phonebook

Caller ringtone → Select Phonebook entry to set (⌚P.2-20)

- Only Copyright protected MPEG4 (mp4, 3gp) AAC, AAC+, or Enhanced AAC+ files can be set.


Registering vFile to Other Functions

● → *Data Folder* → *Other documents* → Select vFile → ● (Resister)

- Register a vCard or vCalendar files saved in Data Folder to Phonebook or Calendar.

Face Link

Making a Call & Sending Message from Face Linked Standby Image

In Standby with Face Link set,  (2+ seconds) → ● (Call)

■ To make a Call



Voice call or Video call

■ To send a message

Message → (⌚P.4-3 Sending S! Mail ⑤)

- Only available from images with Face Link set (⌚P.2-6).


Setting Face Linked Image to Caller ID Image

● → *Data Folder* → Select a folder → Select a file →  →  (Set as) → *Caller ID* → Search Phonebook and select entry (⌚P.2-20) → ● (Set)

- The image is cut by Face Link frame and set to Caller ID image.

Memory Status



Deleting Registered/Saved Data

● → *Settings* → *Memory settings* → *Memory status* → Select function → Highlight item → 
(Delete) → *Yes* → View item list

■ To delete an entry/multiple entries

Check item →  (Delete) → ● (OK) → *Yes*

■ To delete all entries

 (Mark all) →  (Delete) → Enter Phone

Password → ● (OK) → *Yes*

- Delete data in Mailbox, Data Folder, Calendar, or Phonebook.
- When the data contain contents that are locked or set for another function, a message appears asking whether to delete the file. If you choose *Yes*, the deletion is performed. If you choose *No*, only files without functions or locks set are deleted.

Calling



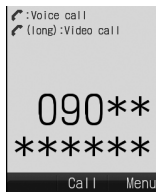
Making a Call	3-2
Receiving a Call	3-3
Answering Machine	3-4
Activating & Canceling	3-4
Playing Recordings	3-4
Deleting Recordings	3-4
Video Call	3-5
Getting Started	3-5
Viewing Video Call Window	3-5
Making a Video Call	3-5
Receiving a Video Call	3-6
Speed Dial	3-7
Saving as Phone Numbers	3-7
Using Speed Dial	3-8
Call Time & Cost	3-8
Checking Call Time & Cost	3-8
Call Log Records	3-9
Viewing Call Log Records	3-9
Calling Call Log Records	3-9
Deleting Call Log Records	3-10
Global Roaming Service	3-11
Changing Network Mode	3-11
Setting Network	3-12
Making a Call Overseas	3-13
Optional Services	3-13
Voice Mail	3-14
Setting Voice Mail	3-14
Canceling Voice Mail	3-14
Listening to Voice Mail Message	3-15
Activating Incoming Call Notification	3-15
Call Forwarding	3-16
Activating Call Forwarding	3-16
Canceling Call Forwarding	3-16

Call Waiting	3-17
Activating & Canceling Call Waiting	3-17
Receiving a Second Call	3-17
Conference Call	3-18
Making New Call during a Call	3-18
Switching Party	3-19
Talking with All Parties	3-19
Call Barring	3-19
Restricting Outgoing/Incoming Calls	3-20
Canceling All Barring	3-20
Checking Call Barring Status	3-21
Changing Network Password	3-21
Caller ID	3-22
Showing & Hiding Caller ID	3-22
Advanced Settings	
Call	3-22
Video Call	3-24
Call Logs	3-26
Conference Call	3-27

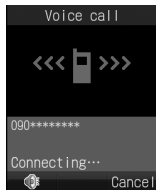
Making a Call

See "Using Phonebook" (➔P.2-20) to make a call from Phonebook, or see "Making a Video Call" (➔P.3-5) to make a Video Call.









1 Enter a phone number including area code



2 Confirm entered phone number → or (Call)






3 To end the call,

- To correct entered digit, use  to move cursor to the digit to be deleted, and press . Press  for 1+ seconds to delete all.
- To enter "P (Pause)", press  twice. To enter "+(International code)", press  for 1+ seconds.
- When the line is busy, press  to end the call and try again later. If *Auto Redial* (➔P.12-24) is On, number is automatically redialed. Press  (Cancel) or  to cancel redialing.
- If Stereo Earphone Microphone is connected, set *Earphone call activate* to On, to call specified phone number by pressing the switch of Stereo Earphone Microphone for 1+ seconds. Press again for 1+ seconds to end the call.

Advanced

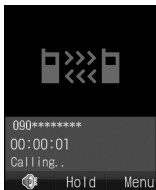
Advanced Settings P.3-22

- Initiating S! Circle Talk by Entering Phone Number
- Saving Entered Phone Number to Phonebook
- Creating New Message Addressed to Entered Number
- Switching Phone Number Entry Window to Phonebook Window
- Switching Phone Number Entry Window to Call Log Window
- Making International Calls from Japan
- Calling with Your Phone Number Shown
- Talking in Small Voice
- Switching Headset/Phone

- Setting Mute
- Making New Call during a Call
- Searching Phonebook during a Call
- Saving the Other Party's Phone Number to Phonebook
- Viewing Call Log during a Call
- Creating New Message Addressed to the Other Party's Phone Number
- Sending Push Tones
- Recording Hearing Voice
- Creating Text Memo during a Call
- Ending Call by Menu Operation
-  **Settings**
- Show or hide your own number when placing calls ( P.12-24)
- Set 920SC to automatically redial busy numbers ( P.12-24)

Receiving a Call

1 Voice Call window appears,



2 To end the call,



- If *Any key answer* is *On*, press any key except , , , , , and to accept call.
- To place caller on hold, press . To connect the call, press (Accept).
- To adjust ringer volume, press or .
- If Stereo Earphone Microphone is connected, press Stereo Earphone Microphone switch for 1+ seconds to accept Video Calls. Press again for 1+ seconds to end the call.

• Ringtone

Specify ringtones by Phonebook entry or Category (➔P.2-40, P.2-42). If not set, active Mode Setting applies (➔P.1-10).

If Secret mode is set to *Hide* when a call from a Secret entry is received, active Mode Setting applies.

• Incoming Call Window

If a caller sends Caller ID, phone number appears. If saved in Phonebook, name also appears. If caller hides Caller ID, *Withheld* appears.

If incoming image has been saved in Phonebook or for the group, the image also appears (➔P.2-40, P.2-42).

If Secret mode is set to *Hide* when a call from a Secret entry is received, only number appears.

• Missed Call Window

Missed Call window appears for unanswered calls. Press (View) to view Received calls (➔P.3-9).

• When you cannot answer a call

Use Call Forwarding or Voice Mail to handle calls. While handset rings/vibrates, press (Forward) to forward call to Voice Mail or forwarding number (➔P.3-14, P.3-16). Alternatively, press (Record) to record caller message on 9205C (➔P.3-4).

Advanced

Advanced Settings P.3-22


Settings

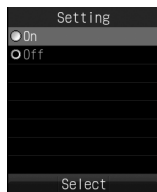
- Set Any key answer (P.12-18)
- Activate or cancel 9205C open-to-answer calls function (P.12-18)
- Set whether to end call by closing 9205C (P.12-18)
- Accept or reject calls from specified phone numbers (P.12-24)
- Create or edit Black List (P.12-24)
- Accept or reject calls from unknown numbers (P.12-24)
- Accept or reject calls when number is withheld (P.12-24)
- Accept or reject calls from payphones (P.12-24)
- Accept or reject calls when number is unavailable (P.12-24)

Answering Machine



Handset records up to three 15-second caller messages.

Activating & Canceling


- 1  → *Settings* → *Call settings* → *Answering machine* → *Setting*




- 2 *On* or *Off*

- When *On*,  appears in Standby.
- Alternatively, in Standby, press  for 1+ seconds to activate/cancel Answering Machine.


Note



- Answering Machine is not available if 9205C is off, out-of-range, or in Offline mode. Use Voice Mail (separate subscription required) to handle missed incoming calls.
- If 9205C shared memory () is below 600 KB, Answering Machine cannot be used.

Playing Recordings


- 1  → *Settings* → *Call settings* → *Answering machine* → *Recordings*



- 2 **Highlight a voice file** →  (Play)

- When a message is recorded,  appears in Standby.
- Alternatively, in Standby, press  to play recorded message.


Deleting Recordings

- 1  → *Settings* → *Call settings* → *Answering machine* → *Recordings*





- 2 **Delete recording**

■ To delete an entry

Highlight content →  (Delete) → *Yes*

■ To delete all entries

 (Delete all) → Enter Phone Password →  (OK) → *Yes*

Video Call

Getting Started

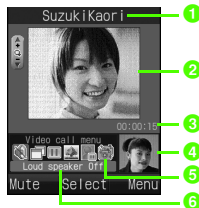
Exchange voice/video with compatible 3G handsets.

- It may be difficult to use Speaker Phone (➔P.3-24) with earpiece volume raised. Lower volume or use Stereo Earphone Microphone.
- Ambient noise may hamper voice quality. Use Stereo Earphone Microphone.
- Using Speaker Phone in public may disturb others; please mind your mobile manners.

Note

- **Video Calls to incompatible handsets may be disconnected; charges apply.**

Viewing Video Call Window

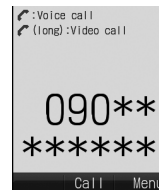


- 1 The other party's name or phone number
- 2 Large Image (Normally, Incoming Image)
- 3 Call duration
- 4 Small Display (Normally, Outgoing Image)
- 5 Video Call menu icons
 - 🔊 / 🔇: Toggle Loudspeaker off/on
 - 🖼️: Toggle Incoming Image size
 - ⏸️ / ▶️: Toggle My Image paused/play
 - 👤 / 👤: Toggle My Image/Alternative Picture
 - 👤 / 👤: Toggle Incoming Image paused/play
 - 📷: Toggle Internal Camera/External Camera
- 6 Description of the icon at cursor position

Making a Video Call

Call via Phonebook entries/Call Log records or dial directly.

- 1 Enter a phone number including area code




- 2 (1+ seconds)



3 To end the call,

• When Video Call cannot be connected






When confirmation appears, press  (Retry) → *Voice call* or *Create message*; or Select *View contact details* to open Phonebook; *Add to Phonebook* to save number to Phone or USIM Card.





Advanced

Advanced Settings P.3-24

- Using Option Menu
- Showing or Hiding Caller ID
- Switching Headset/Handset Earpiece
- Putting a Video Call On Hold
- Searching Phonebook during a Video Call
- Saving the Other Party's Phone Number to Phonebook
- Sending Message Addressed to Phone Number
- Sending Push Tones
- Creating and Saving Text Memo in Video Call
- Viewing Phonebook Entry Details

Settings

- Set Alternative Picture to appear in place of My Image ( P.12-23)
- Adjust outgoing video quality ( P.12-23)
- Set Hold setting ( P.12-23)
- Activate or cancel Speaker Phone during Video Call ( P.12-23)
- Set Backlight ( P.12-23)

- Set handset response when Video Call cannot be connected ( P.12-23)
- Show or hide your own image for Video Calls ( P.12-23)
- Show or hide your own number when placing calls ( P.12-24)
- Set 920SC to automatically redial busy numbers ( P.12-24)










Receiving a Video Call






1 Video Call window appears, or (Answer)



- Send My Image confirmation appears. Choose *Yes* or *No*.












2 To end the call,

- If *Any key answer* is *On*, press any key to receive the call, except , , , , .
- Press  or  to adjust ringer volume while 920SC rings.
- If Stereo Earphone Microphone is connected, press Stereo Earphone Microphone switch for 1+ seconds to answer the Video Call. Press again to end Call.
- To disconnect a Video Call without answering, press  (Forward) or  (Reject).

- After pressing  or  (Answer) in step 1, My Image appears, but is not sent. Confirmation appears, choose *Yes* to send My Image, or *No* to send Alternative Picture. When Video Call connects, My Image or Alternative Picture appears in small display.
- To adjust volume, press  during a Video Call.
- To enlarge or reduce outgoing image, press  or .
- When outgoing image is canceled, Alternative picture is sent to the other party.

Advanced

Settings

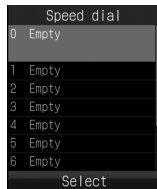
- Set Alternative Picture to appear in place of My Image ( P.12-23)
- Adjust incoming video quality ( P.12-23)
- Activate or cancel voice muting for Video Call ( P.12-23)
- Answer Voice Call from specified party automatically ( P.12-23)
- Create Auto Answer List ( P.12-23)
- Accept or reject calls from specified phone numbers ( P.12-24)
- Create or edit Black List ( P.12-24)
- Accept or reject calls from unknown numbers ( P.12-24)
- Accept or reject calls when number is withheld ( P.12-24)
- Accept or reject calls from payphones ( P.12-24)
- Accept or reject calls when number is unavailable ( P.12-24)

Speed Dial

Saving as Phone Numbers

Save up to ten frequently used phone numbers.




- 1  → *Phonebook* → *Speed dial*



- 2 Select number to save

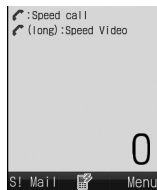





- 3 Search Phonebook and select entry (P.2-20) → Select number




- To change saved phone number, highlight entry →  (Change) → *Yes* → Search Phonebook and select entry (P.2-20) → Select number.
- To delete saved phone number, highlight entry →  → Select *Delete*.
- To delete all, press  → Select *Clear all*.
- Secret entry phone numbers cannot be saved as Speed Dial.
- Setting a Speed Dial number to Secret cancels Speed Dial setting automatically.

Using Speed Dial

- 1 Select from  to 



- 2  () or 

- After Step 1, press  for 1+ seconds for Video Call, press  (S! Mai) to compose a message.
- Enter Entry No. with *Simple search On*, for names and phone numbers. The display disappears in about 5 seconds. When  appears, make a call with Speed Dial.

Call Time & Cost

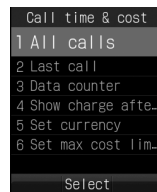
Call settings menu includes items below.

Set	Settings
All calls	Confirm approximate total call time / cost or reset it.
Last call	Confirm approximate call time/cost of the previous call.
Data counter	Confirm approximate incoming / outgoing data volume or reset it.
Show charge after call	Set whether to show call time/cost after ending a call.
Set currency	Set or change currency.
Set max cost limit	Set the limit for call cost.


- *Show charge after call* may not be available depending on service status. *Set max cost limit* is not available when *Show charge after call* is disabled.

Checking Call Time & Cost

- 1  → *Settings* → *Call settings* → *Call time & cost*










- 2 Select item

- To reset item, highlight it and press  (Reset).

Advanced

Settings

- Check Call Time/Cost ( P.12-21)
- Check last Call Time/Cost ( P.12-22)
- Check Data Counter ( P.12-22)
- Show or hide Call Time/Cost after calls ( P.12-22)
- Change Call Cost Currency ( P.12-22)
- Set Call Cost Limit ( P.12-22)
- Cancel Call Cost Limit ( P.12-22)

Call Log Records

Select Received Calls or Dialed Calls. Confirm call type, number and call time & cost, or dial records directly. Call Log holds up to 500 Received Call and Dialed Call records each.














Viewing Call Log Records

1 (Received calls) or (Dialed calls)



2 Highlight record → (Details)

• Call Log Record Icons

-  : Dialed Voice Call
-  : Dialed Video Call
-  : Dialed S! Circle Talk
-  : Received Voice Call
-  : Received Video Call
-  : Received S! Circle Talk
-  : Missed Voice Call
-  : Missed Video Call
-  : Missed S! Circle Talk
-  : Rejected Voice Call
-  : Rejected Video Call
-  : Voice Mail Notification
-  : Received Call Notification

• If *Secret mode* is set to *Hide*, names do not appear in Call Log for Secret Phonebook entries.


Calling Call Log Records

1 (Received calls) or (Dialed calls)




2 Make a call


■ To make a call

Highlight record →  (Call) → *Voice call*

■ To make a Video Call

Highlight record →  (Call) → *Video call*

■ To make S! Circle Talk

Highlight record →  (Call) → *Call S! Circle Talk*

Deleting Call Log Records

Deleting a Single Record

- 1 (Received calls) or (Dialed calls)



- 2 Highlight record → → *Delete* → *Selected* → *Yes*

- To confirm and delete records one by one, after
 - 1, highlight record → (Details) → Confirm and press → *Delete* → *Yes*

Deleting Multiple Records

- 1 (Received calls) or (Dialed calls)



- 2 → *Delete* → *Multiple*



- 3 Check records



- 4 Press (Delete) → *Yes*

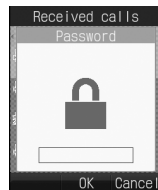
Deleting All Records

Delete all records in each Call Log at once.

- 1 (Received calls) or (Dialed calls)



- 2 → *Delete* → *All*



- 3 Enter Phone Password → (OK) → *Yes*

Advanced

Advanced Settings (P.3-26)


- Making Video Calls from Call Log
- Calling S! Circle Talk from Call Log
- Rejoining S! Circle Talk
- Sending Message in Call Log
- Saving Call Log Numbers to Phonebook
- Saving Call Log Numbers to Black List
- Viewing Phonebook Entry Details via Call Log
- Adding International Code and Country Number to Phone Number in Call Log
- Showing Caller ID when Calling from Call Log

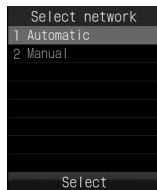
Global Roaming Service

Apply for Global Roaming Service beforehand. For information on overseas usage or to apply for service, see SoftBank Mobile Website: http://mb.softbank.jp/mb/en/global_service/

Changing Network Mode

By default setting, network mode is to be activated automatically. Manual setting is also available.

- 1  → **Settings** → **Call settings** → **Optional services** → **International call** → **Select network**



2 Select network mode

- To activate automatically

Automatic

- To activate manually

Manual → 3G/GSM, 3G, or GSM

• Network Mode Setting

Automatic:

Automatically switches the mode according to network condition.

3G:

Use within 3G / UMTS service areas in and outside Japan.

GSM:


Use within GSM service areas outside Japan.

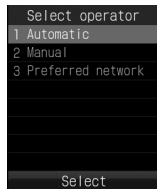
- Usually set *Automatic*.

Setting Network

Selecting Network to Access

Change network (service provider) for the area you use handset. Setting in *Manual* is also available.

- 1  → *Settings* → *Call settings* → *Optional services* → *International call* → *Select operator*




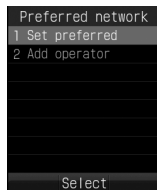
- 2 **Select network mode**

- **To set automatically**
Automatic
- **To specify operator**
Manual → Select item

Setting Preferred Network


Edit network list preferentially selected when *Automatic* is set.

- 1  → *Settings* → *Call settings* → *Optional services* → *International call* → *Select operator* → *Preferred network*



- 2 **Edit Preferred network list**

■ To select and add from list

Set preferred → Select a network to insert → Highlight a network to insert from Network list →  (Insert)

■ To add network


Add operator → Enter Country number → Enter Network code → *GSM* or *3G*

- When added in Step 2, network is added above selected entry. When added from *Add operator*, it is added at the last of the list.

• Items to set in *Add operator* is as follows.

- Country number*: Up to three digits
- Network code*: Up to three digits
- Select operator*: Select from GSM/3G

Making a Call Overseas

1 Enter a phone number including area code → 

2 Make a call

■ To make a call to Japan



To Japan

■ To make a call to a country other than Japan

Other country → Select country to call

■ To make a call to landline or handset in the country you stay

Keep number

- To make a call by directly entering Country number, press  for 1+ seconds to enter "+". Enter Country number, phone number excluding the first "0", and press  to dial. To make a call to Italy, include the first "0" if any.
- If "+ Country number" is included in the beginning of phone number, Step 2 is not required.

Optional Services

Available optional services are as follows.

Service	Description
Voice Mail	Divert all or all unanswered calls to Voice Mail Center; access caller messages via handset from within the service area or via a touchtone phone anywhere. • Set <i>Missed call notification</i> to notify missed calls by SMS when handset is off or out-of-range. (P.3-15)
Call Forwarding	When you know you will be unable to answer calls, automatically divert calls to a specified number.
Call Waiting *	Put the line on hold to answer another line or alternate between lines. Or you can toggle lines among multiple lines simultaneously.

Service	Description
Conference Call *	Open another line while one is engaged; toggle lines or talk on up to six parties simultaneously.
Call Barring	Restrict incoming or outgoing calls by condition.
Caller ID	Show or hide your own number when making calls.

* A separate subscription is required to use this service.

Note

- When *Out* appears, services are unavailable. For details on operations from landline phones or services, contact Customer Service (P.13-29).

Voice Mail


According to the following conditions, handset forwards incoming voice Call to Voice Mail Center.

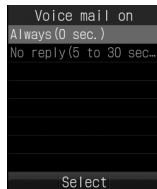
Forwarding Condition	Description
Always	Handset does not ring/vibrate for incoming calls; calls are diverted automatically. Missed Call does not appear.
No reply	Unanswered calls are diverted after the specified ring time, or when the line is busy or handset is out-of-range.

Note

- Voice Mail and Call Forwarding cannot be activated at the same time.
- Activating Voice Mail cancels Call Forwarding previously activated.

Setting Voice Mail

- 1  → *Settings* → *Call settings* → *Optional services* → *Voice mail/Call forwarding* → *Voice mail on*




- 2 **Select an item**

- **To transfer immediately**


Always (0 sec.)

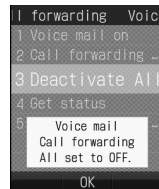
- **To set duration before transfer**

No reply (5 to 30 sec.) → *5 seconds, 10 seconds, 15 seconds, 20 seconds, 25 seconds, or 30 seconds*

- When *No reply (5 to 30 sec.)* is set, answer an incoming call in the duration, not to forward the call. Or press  (Forward) to forward immediately.

C canceling Voice Mail


- 1  → *Settings* → *Call settings* → *Optional services* → *Voice mail/Call forwarding* → *Deactivate All* → *Yes*

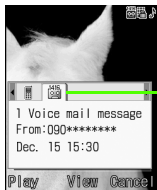


Note

- Call Forwarding service previously activated is also canceled.

Listening to Voice Mail Message

When a caller saves a Voice Mail message, a notification appears in Standby and  appears at the top of Display.

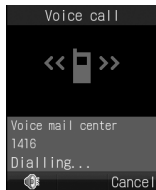





Notification

When Notification Appears

Connect to Voice Mail Center as described below and follow voice guidance.

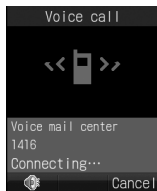
1 (Play)



- To confirm the details of the message, press  (View) while notification is displayed.
- Press  (Cancel) to clear the notification without playing the message.
- Voice Mail indicator  disappears when messages are accessed via 920SC.

When Notification does not Appear

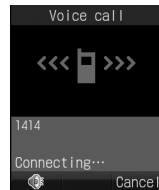
1 Enter "1416" →




Activating Incoming Call Notification

SMS is delivered for unanswered calls because handset is outside service area or off. Alternatively, SMS is delivered when a caller saves a message at Voice Mail Center while the line is engaged.

1 Enter "1414" →









- To call from landline phone in Japan, enter "090-665-1414" and press .

2 Follow guidance

- SMS notification is saved as Received call.
- No charge is required for Incoming Call Notification.

Advanced

Settings

- Forward all calls to Voice Mail (920SC does not ring) ( P.12-20)
- Forward unanswered calls to Voice Mail (specify ring time) ( P.12-20)
- Cancel Voice Mail/Call Forwarding ( P.12-20)
- Confirm current Voice Mail/Call Forwarding settings ( P.12-20)
- Listen to Voice Mail message ( P.12-20)
- Set Missed Call Notification ( P.12-21)

Call Forwarding


Set forwarding condition and number, by call type (Voice Call or Video Call), beforehand, to divert incoming calls to a specified number.

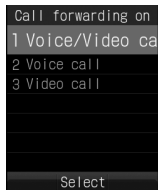
Note

- Call Forwarding and Voice Mail cannot be used at the same time.
- Activating Call Forwarding cancels Voice Mail previously activated.

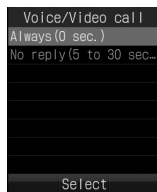
Activating Call Forwarding

Specify a forwarding number beforehand. Specify Forwarding number in, *Voice/Video call*, *Voice call*, or *Video call*.

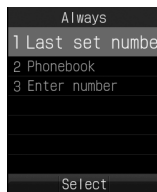
- 1  → **Settings** → **Call settings** → **Optional services** → **Voice mail/Call forwarding** → **Call forwarding on**



- 2 **Voice/Video call, Voice call, or Video call**



- 3 **Always (0 sec.) or No reply (5 to 30 sec.)**



- 4 **Set forwarding number**

- **To set previously forwarded number**


Last set number → Select previously forwarded number

- **To set from Phonebook**

Phonebook → Search Phonebook and select entry (➤P.2-20)


- **To set by entering phone number**

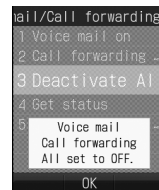
Enter number → Enter phone number

- When *No reply (5 to 30 sec.)* is set, answer an incoming call in the duration, not to forward the call. Or press  (Forward) to forward immediately.

Canceling Call Forwarding

Cancel all Diverts services regardless of the condition.

- 1  → **Settings** → **Call settings** → **Optional services** → **Voice mail/Call forwarding** → **Deactivate All** → **Yes**



Note

- Voice Mail service previously activated is also canceled.

Advanced


Settings

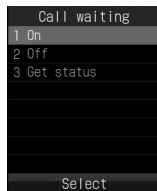
- Activate and set Forwarding (☞ P.12-20)
- Cancel Voice Mail/Call Forwarding (☞ P.12-20)
- Confirm current Voice Mail/Call Forwarding settings (☞ P.12-20)

Call Waiting

A separate subscription is required to use this service. This function is only applicable to Voice Calls.

Activating & Canceling Call Waiting

- 1  → *Settings* → *Call settings* → *Optional services* → *Call waiting*



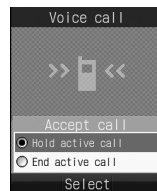
- 2 *On or Off*

- To check current status, select *Get status* in Step 2.

Receiving a Second Call

When there is another incoming call during a call, a specific interrupt sound and display notifies. Place the current call on hold and answer the second call.

- 1 When you hear the interrupt sound, press  (Accept)



- 2 *Hold active call*



- To disconnect the current call to answer the new incoming call, select *End Active call*.

- 3 To switch party to talk,
highlight party →
● (Multi talk) → *Switch*



- 4 End a call

■ To end selected call

Highlight party → ● (Multi talk)
→ *End this call*

■ To end all calls

● (Multi talk) → *End all calls*

- When one party ends a call with another on hold, press ● (Answer) to talk with the held party again.
- When Call Forwarding or Voice Mail is set and the second call is not answered, it is forwarded to a forwarding destination or Voice Mail Center. When the forwarding condition is set to *Always*, the Call Waiting service is unavailable.

Advanced

Settings

- Activate or cancel Call Waiting (☞ P.12-20)
- Confirm current Call Waiting settings (☞ P.12-20)

Conference Call

A separate subscription is required to use this service. Talk with a maximum of 6 parties simultaneously.

Making New Call during a Call

When a new call is connected, first party is placed on hold.

- 1 Enter phone number during a call

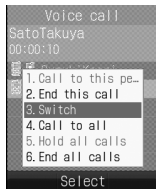


- To select from Phonebook, $\sqrt{\text{y}}$ → *Phonebook* → search Phonebook and select entry (☞ P.2-20).

- 2 ● (Call) → Call with the party

Switching Party

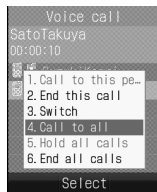
- 1 While connected with multiple parties, highlight party → ● (Multi talk) → *Switch*



- When the connected party ends the call during Conference Call, a party on hold remains on-hold state. To talk with the party on hold, press ● (Answer) and cancel on-hold.

Talking with All Parties

- 1 While connected with multiple parties, ● (Multi talk) → *Call to all*



- To talk with one party again, highlight party, press ● (Multi talk), and select *Call to this person*
- To end all calls, press ● (Multi talk) and select *End all calls*.
- When one party ends the call during Conference Call, continue talking with remaining parties.

Advanced

Advanced Settings P.3-27

Call Barring

Bar outgoing/incoming Voice, Video Calls or SMS by the conditions listed below.

Item	Description
Outgoing Calls	
Bar all outgoing calls	Deactivates sending calls and SMS sending, except emergency calls.
Bar all international calls	Deactivates making calls and SMS sending outside the country you stay.
Bar international calls	Deactivates making international calls and SMS sending except within the country you stay and to Japan.
Incoming Calls	
Bar all incoming calls	Deactivates reception of all calls and SMS receiving.
Bar all roaming calls	Deactivates reception of all calls and SMS receiving outside Japan.

- Setting Call Barring requires Network Password (the 4-digit number dedicated to Call Barring service specified at the subscription). Network Password can be changed (● P.3-21).


- A message appears indicating that outgoing Call Barring is active. The message may appear after a while depending on service area.

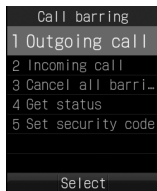
Note

- If incorrect Network Password is entered 3 consecutive times, Call Barring service is disabled. In this case, change Network Password and Center Access code. For details, contact Customer Service (☎P.13-29).

Restricting Outgoing/Incoming Calls

Set Call Barring for outgoing calls and/or incoming calls for each type of call (Voice, Video Calls, SMS)/transmission.

- 1  → **Settings** → **Call settings** → **Optional services** → **Call barring**



- 2 **Select a restriction type**

■ For outgoing calls

Outgoing call → *Bar all outgoing calls*, *Bar all international calls*, or *Bar international calls*


■ For incoming calls

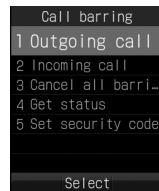
Incoming call → *Bar all incoming calls* or *Bar all roaming calls*

- 3 **On or Off**

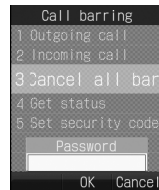
Canceling All Barring


Cancel all barring for outgoing or incoming calls.

- 1  → **Settings** → **Call settings** → **Optional services** → **Call barring**




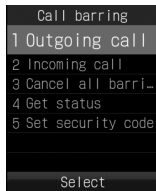
- 2 **Cancel all barring**



- 3 **Enter Network Password** →  (OK) → **Yes**


Checking Call Barring Status

- 1  → *Settings* → *Call settings* → *Optional services* → *Call barring*



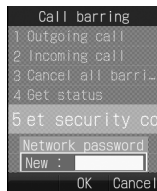
- 2 *Get status* → *All outgoing calls, All international calls, International calls, All incoming calls, or All roaming calls*


Changing Network Password

- 1  → *Settings* → *Call settings* → *Optional services* → *Call barring* → *Set security code*



- 2 *Enter current Network Password in Old field* →  (OK)








- 3 *Enter new Network Password in New field* →  (OK)



- 4 *Enter new Network Password again in Cnf field* →  (OK)

Advanced


Settings

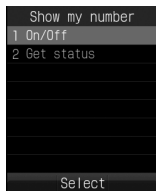
-  Set Outgoing Call Barring (☞ P.12-20)
-  Activate or cancel Incoming Call Barring (☞ P.12-20)
-  Cancel all Call Barring (☞ P.12-21)
-  Confirm current Call Barring settings (☞ P.12-21)
-  Change Network Password (☞ P.12-21)

Caller ID

Show or hide your own phone number when calling from handset.

Showing & Hiding Caller ID

- 1  → *Settings* → *Call settings* → *Show my number*



- 2 *On/Off* → *On or Off*

- After Step 1, select *Get status* to confirm the current setting.
- Regardless of *Show my number* setting, you can show/hide your phone number every time when you make a call (P.3-22).

Advanced



Settings

- Show or hide your own number when placing calls (P.12-24)


Advanced Settings

Call


Initiating S! Circle Talk by Entering Phone Number

Enter a phone number including area code →  → *S! Circle Talk* → Highlight member →  (Call)

Saving Entered Phone Number to Phonebook

Enter a phone number including area code →  → *Add to Phonebook* → (P.2-42)


Creating New Message Addressed to Entered Number

Enter a phone number including area code →  → *Create message* → *S! Mail or SMS* → (P.4-3) *Sending S! Mail* 5, P.4-8 *Sending SMS Messages* 5



Switching Phone Number Entry Window to Phonebook Window

On phone number entry window,  → *Phonebook*

Switching Phone Number Entry Window to Call Log Window


On phone number entry window,  → *Call log*

Making International Calls from Japan


Enter a phone number including area code →  → *International call* → Select a country / Select *Enter Code* and enter Country number → Select where you call from → Confirm phone number → 

- A separate subscription is required for international calls. For details, contact Customer Service (P.13-29).
- Calls to SoftBank handset abroad is available only by the phone number, regardless of the country where the receiver stays.


Calling with Your Phone Number Shown

Enter a phone number including area code →  → *Hide/Show my ID*


To follow Show my number setting









None → 

To show phone number

Show my ID → 




To hide phone number

Hide my ID → 



- Alternatively, enter    → Enter phone number → , to make a call with your phone number shown.
- Alternatively, enter    → Enter phone number → , to make a call with your phone number hidden.

Rejecting and Disconnecting Incoming Call

While handset is ringing,  (Reject)


- The rejected call is recorded in Call Log.
- Alternatively, if *Side key* is set to *Reject*, press  or  for 1+ seconds to reject an incoming call.
- When Call Forwarding or Voice Mail is not used, press  (Forward) while handset is ringing, to reject the incoming call. Message indicating "busy" appears on caller's handset before call is disconnected. If caller's handset is incompatible, call is simply disconnected.


Adjusting Earpiece Volume

During a call,  or 

- Adjust Earpiece or Earphone volume. Setting remains even after powered off.


Putting a Call on Hold

During a call, 

- When a call is put on hold, the party on hold hears a hold tone and neither party can hear the other's voice. A subscription to Call Waiting or Conference Call is required to use this function. If you do not subscribe to either service, this function is disabled.
- Press  (Answer) to reconnect the call.

Switching to Speaker Phone

During a call,  (📢) → Yes


- To cancel Speaker Phone, during a call, press  (📢).

Talking in Small Voice

During a call,  → *Whisper on* or *Whisper off*



- With *Whisper on*, the volume of sent sounds is raised on the other party's side.

Switching Headset/Phone



During a call,  → *Switch to headset* or *Switch to phone*



- Appears when Bluetooth®-compatible headset is in use.

Setting Mute



During a call,  → *Mute* → Check or uncheck *Voice* →  (OK)

Making New Call during a Call


During a call,  → *New call* → Enter phone number →  (Call)

- To search Phonebook, after pressing  → *New call*, press  (Search).
- This function is available when Conference Call is in use.

Searching Phonebook during a Call

During a call,  → *Phonebook* → (P.2-20 Searching Phonebook )


Saving the Other Party's Phone Number to Phonebook

During a call,  → *Add to Phonebook*

■ To save new entry

New → Enter each item →  (Save)




■ To update entry

Update → Search Phonebook and select entry (P.2-20) → Select phone number →  (Save)



Viewing Call Log during a Call


During a call,  → *Call log*

Creating New Message Addressed to the Other Party's Phone Number

During a call,  → *Create message* → *S! Mail* or *SMS* → (P.4-3 Sending S! Mail , P.4-8 Sending SMS Messages )

Sending Push Tones

During a call,  → *Send DTMF* → Enter digits →  (Send)

- To search Phonebook, press *Send DTMF* and then  (Search).

Recording Hearing Voice

During a call, → *Record* → (Record) → (Stop)

- Record voice of up to 2 minutes during a call.
- To pause recording, press (Pause). Press (Record) to resume recording; press (Save) to save recording up to paused point.
- Recorded sound file is saved to *Ring songs · tones* in Data Folder.
- If Call Waiting is subscribed, recording stops by another incoming call, and incoming call window appears.
- Recording stops automatically after the call is ended, and voice file is saved.

Creating Text Memo during a Call

During a call, → *Memo* → Enter text memo

Ending Call by Menu Operation

During a call, → *End call*

Video Call

Using Option Menu

Enter a phone number including area code → → *Video call*

Showing or Hiding Caller ID

Enter a phone number including area code → → *Hide/Show my ID*

■ To follow Show my number setting

None → (1+ seconds)

■ To show phone number

Show my ID → (1+ seconds)

■ To hide phone number

Hide my ID → (1+ seconds)

- Alternatively, enter → Enter phone number → (1+ seconds), to make a call with your phone number shown.
- Alternatively, enter → Enter phone number → (1+ seconds), to make a call with your phone number hidden.

Switching Speaker/Phone

During Video Call, highlight or → (Select)

- A confirmation appears to set *Loudspeaker on?*

Choose *Yes* to switch to Speaker phone call.

Changing Image Size during Video Call

During Video Call, highlight → (Select)

- Switch incoming image small and My image large, or incoming image large and My image small.

Toggling My Image Pause/Play

During Video Call, highlight or → (Select)

Toggling Alternative Picture/My Image

During Video Call, use or to highlight an item → (Select)

Toggling Incoming Image Pause/Play

During Video Call, highlight or → (Select)

Toggling Internal/External Camera

During Video Call, highlight → (Select)

Setting Mute

During Video Call, (Mute) → Check or uncheck *Voice* or *Camera* → (Done)

Switching Headset/Handset Earpiece

During Video Call, → *Switch to handset* or *Switch to phone*

- Appears when Bluetooth®-compatible headset is in use.

Putting a Video Call On Hold

During Video Call, → *Hold*

- Alternative picture is sent during on hold and neither party can hear the other's voice.
- To reconnect the call, press (Answer) or press and select *Retrieve*.

Adjusting Outgoing Image Brightness

During Video Call, → *Display settings* → *Brightness* → Use to adjust Brightness

Adjusting Outgoing Image Color

During Video Call, → *Display settings* → *Effects* → *None*, *Black & White*, or *Sepia*

Setting Alternative Picture Instead of My Image

During Video Call, → *Settings* → *Alternative picture*

■ To restore default image

Preset picture → (OK)

■ To select image from Data Folder

Pictures → Select image → (OK)

- With Memory Card inserted, files can be selected from *Pictures* and *Digital camera* folders after *Pictures* selected.

Adjusting Incoming Video Quality

During Video Call, → *Settings* → *Incoming video quality* → *Motion prioritized*, *Standard*, or *Quality prioritized*

Adjusting Outgoing Video Quality

During Video Call, → *Settings* → *Outgoing video quality* → *Motion prioritized*, *Standard*, or *Quality prioritized*

Setting On Hold Picture

During Video call, → *Settings* → *Hold setting*

■ To restore default image

Preset picture → (OK)

■ To select image from Data Folder

Pictures → Select image → (OK)

- With Memory Card inserted, files can be selected from *Pictures* and *Digital camera* folders after *Pictures* selected.

Muting Handset Microphone

During Video Call, → *Settings* → *Mute my voice* → *On* or *Off*

- Setting is not applied to the current Video Call. Effective from the next Video Call.

Switching Speaker/Phone

During Video Call, → *Settings* → *Loud speaker* → *On* or *Off*

- Setting is not applied to the current Video Call. Effective from the next Video Call.

Adjusting Video Call Backlight Setting

During Video Call, → *Settings* → *Backlight* → *On* or *Off*

- Set backlight during video Call. When *Off*'s set, Display becomes dim.

Adjusting Call Retry Setting

During Video Call, → *Settings* → *Retry with* → *Always ask*, *Voice call*, *Message*, or *None*

Answering Voice Call from Specified Party Automatically

During Video Call, → *Settings* → *Auto answer* → *On/Off* → *On* or *Off*

- When a Video Call arrives from the specified party, a tone sounds and the call is automatically answered.

Creating Auto Answer List

During Video Call, → *Settings* → *Auto answer* → *Auto answer list* → → *Add* → Enter Phone Password → (OK)

■ To enter phone number directly

Direct input → Enter phone number

■ To select from Phonebook

Phonebook → Search Phonebook and select entry (P.2-20)

■ To select from call log

Call log → (Received calls) or (Dialed calls) → Select log

- When a Video Call arrives from the specified party, a tone sounds and the call is automatically answered.

Deleting Entry in Auto Answer List

During Video Call, → *Settings* → *Auto answer* → *Auto answer list*

■ To delete selected entry

Highlight phone number → → *Delete* → *Selected* → *Yes*

■ To delete all entry

→ *Delete* → *All* → *Yes* → Enter Phone Password → (OK)

Showing/Hiding My Image

During Video Call, → *Settings* → *Show my image* → *On* or *Off*

- Setting is not applied to the current Video Call. Effective from the next Video Call.

Searching Phonebook during a Video Call

During Video Call, → *Phonebook* (P.2-20)
Searching Phonebook (2)

Saving the Other Party's Phone Number to Phonebook

During Video Call, → *Add to Phonebook*

■ To save new entry

New → Enter each item → (Save)

■ To update entry

Update → Search Phonebook and select entry (P.2-20) → Enter each item → (Save)

Sending Message Addressed to Phone Number

During Video Call, → *Create message* → *S! Mail* or *SMS* → (P.4-3 Sending S! Mail 5, P.4-8 Sending SMS Messages 5)

Sending Push Tones

During Video Call, → *Send DTMF* → Enter digits → (Send)

- To search Phonebook, select *Send DTMF* and then (Search) to search Phonebook and select entry (P.2-20).

Creating and Saving Text Memo in Video Call

During Video Call, → *Memo* → Enter text memo

Viewing Phonebook Entry Details

During Video Call, → *Details*

Call Logs

Making Voice Calls from Call Log

(Received calls) or (Dialed calls) → Highlight call log → (Call) → *Voice call*

Making Video Calls from Call Log

(Received calls) or (Dialed calls) → Highlight call log → (Call) → *Video call*

Calling S! Circle Talk from Call Log

(Received calls) or (Dialed calls) → Highlight call log → (Call) → *Call S! Circle Talk*

Rejoining S! Circle Talk

(Received calls) or (Dialed calls) → Highlight call logs to rejoin → → *Rejoin S! Circle Talk* (P.9-7)

Sending Message in Call Log

(Received calls) or (Dialed calls) → Highlight call log → (Call) → *Create message* → *S! Mail* or *SMS* → (P.4-3 Sending S! Mail 5, P.4-8 Sending SMS Messages 5)

Saving Call Log Numbers to Phonebook

(Received calls) or (Dialed calls) → Highlight call logs → → *Add to Phonebook* → (P.2-19 Saving from Call Log Records 3)




Saving Call Log Numbers to Black List


(Received calls) or (Dialed calls) → Highlight call log → → *Add to black list* → *Yes*

Viewing Phonebook Entry Details via Call Log




 (Received calls) or  (Dialed calls) → Highlight call log →  → *View phonebook details*

Adding International Code and Country Number to Phone Number in Call Log


 (Received calls) or  (Dialed calls) → Highlight call log to make international call →  →

International call → Select a country or select *Enter Code* and enter Country number → Select country you call from → Confirm phone number → 


Showing Caller ID when Calling from Call Log

 (Received calls) or  (Dialed calls) → Highlight call log to call →  → *Hide/Show my ID*


■ **To follow Show my number setting**

None → 

■ **To show phone number**


Show my ID → 

■ **To hide phone number**


Hide my ID → 

Conference Call

Ending Selected Call

Highlight party to disconnect →  (Multi talk) → *End this call*

Putting All Calls on Hold

 (Multi talk) → *Hold all calls*

Messaging



Messaging Basics	4-2
Custom Mail Address	4-2
Changing Mail Address	4-2
Confirming New Mail Address	4-3
Sending S! Mail	4-3
Attaching Files	4-4
Creating Arrange Mail	4-5
Sending SMS Messages	4-8
Received Messages	4-9
Viewing New Messages	4-9
Retrieving Complete Messages	4-10
Replying to Received Messages	4-10
Forwarding Received Messages	4-11
Managing & Using Messages	4-12
Viewing from Message List	4-12
Using Message Information	4-14
Deleting Messages or Templates	4-15
Managing Folders	4-16
Creating Folders	4-16
Moving Messages	4-16
Sorting Messages	4-17
Advanced Settings	
Sending S! Mail	4-18
Sending SMS	4-21
Received Messages	4-22
Using & Managing Messages	4-23
Folder Management	4-26

Messaging Basics

Use S! Mail and SMS services on 920SC.

S! Mail

Exchange long text messages with SoftBank and other e-mail compatible handsets, PCs and other mobile devices; attach media files for multimedia messaging.

Use Arrange Mail or Feeling Mail to add color and other graphic elements to S! Mail message text.

- Exchange Feeling Mail with compatible handsets.
- A separate subscription is required to use S! Mail and receive E-mail.

SMS

Exchange short text messages with SoftBank handsets; use handset numbers as address.

Entry items and character limits vary as follows.

Item	S! Mail ¹	SMS
Entry Item		
Address	Yes	Yes
Subject	Yes	No
Attachment	Yes	No
Text	Yes	Yes

Item	S! Mail ¹	SMS
Character Limits	Up to 15,000 double-byte/ 30,000 single-byte characters (30 KB) ²	Up to 70 single-/ double-byte characters, or up to 160 single-byte alphanumerics ³

- 1 Send up to 300 KB including address, subject and message text, as well as attachments (same limit applies to replies and forwarded S! Mail messages).
- 2 Entry limit varies by attachment size, etc.
- 3 When *Char-code* is set to *GSM 7 bit* (☞P.12-5).

- If Retry Function is enabled, undeliverable mail (handset off or out-of-range) are saved at Mail Service Center and delivery reattempted regularly.

Note

- Messages created on 920SC may not appear on other party's handset correctly.
- Received Hangul messages are viewable. Hangul messages can only be sent via SMS. When replying to/forwarding received Hangul S! Mail or SMS, Hangul are deleted.
- Hangul may be deleted from sent SMS or appear as spaces on other party's handset.

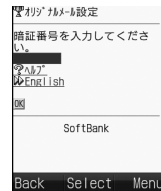
Custom Mail Address

Change the alphanumerics appearing before @ of handset Mail Address (Account Name). Default Account Name consists of random alphanumerics. For details, contact Customer Service (☎P.13-29).

Changing Mail Address

Customizing Mail Address may help reduce spam.


- 1  → *Settings* → *Custom mail address*



- 2 Select *English* and follow onscreen instructions

Confirming New Mail Address

After Mail Address is changed, SoftBank sends a confirmation message.

- 1  → **Received messages** →
Select a folder → **Select message from Information** →
Yes or No




Advanced

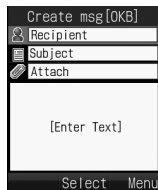
Settings

- Customize or change handset mail address (☞ P.12-2)

Sending S! Mail

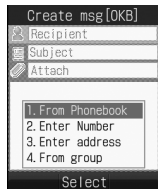
Example: Sending S! Mail to a Phonebook entry.

- 1  → **Create new**

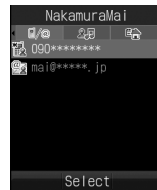


Text Entry Window

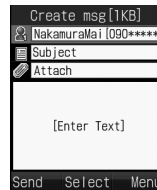
- 2 **Select Recipient field**



- 3 **From Phonebook** → **Select entry** (☞ P.2-20 Searching Phonebook 2)



- 4 **Select number or address**

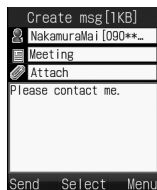


5 Select Subject field → Enter subject









- Alternatively, highlight Subject field and enter Subject text.

6 Select Enter Text field → Enter text



- Alternatively, highlight Enter Text field and enter message text.

7 (Send)

- Alternatively, in Standby, press  for 1+ seconds to open Create Message window.
- Enter SoftBank handset numbers or mail addresses in Recipient field. Add up to 20 recipients.
- If , , or  is pressed with address, subject or text entered, or a file attached, an exit confirmation appears. Choose Yes to exit. Alternatively, if  or  is pressed, select *Save* to save to Drafts before exiting.

Note

- Received S! Mail Hangul is viewable, but is deleted from replies or forward messages.

Attaching Files

Send up to 300 KB including address, subject and text.

Attach up to 20 files per S! Mail message.

- During message creation, message size appears next to *Create msg* in Create Message window.

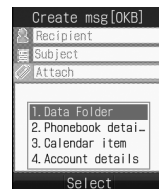
Note

- Some attachments may be lost depending on recipient handset status. For supported file types, contact Customer Service (☎P.13-29).
- When attaching a video, select a file recorded in *For S! Mail* (☎P.6-17). If file is incompatible, a warning message appears.

Attaching Files from Data Folder, etc.

Attach media files directly, or Phonebook/Calendar entries or Account details as vCard or vCalendar.

1 → *Create new* → Select Attach field



2 Attach file

■ Data Folder files

Data Folder → Select folder → Select a file

■ Phonebook entries (vCard)

Phonebook details → Search Phonebook and select an entry (P.2-20) → [Envelope] (Add)

■ Calendar entries (vCalendar)

Calendar item → Use [Calendar] to select *Schedule* or *Task* → Select an entry

■ Account details (vCard)

Account details → [Envelope] (Add)

- To add files, select Attach field → *Add file*.
 - When files are attached, file type indicators and file names appear in Attached file list.
- | | | | |
|--|---------|--|-------------|
| | : Image | | : Sound |
| | : Video | | : vCalendar |
| | : vCard | | : Other |

Note

- When attaching Account details, Hobby cannot be attached.

Creating Arrange Mail

Example:

- Changing font size, background color
- Inserting image, pictograms in Data Folder
- Scrolling characters left and right

1 [Envelope] → *Create new* → Select Enter Text field

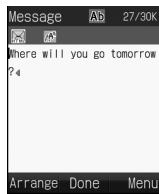


2 [Y!] → *Arrange*



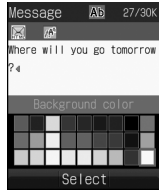
Arrange Mail Entry Window

3 *Font size* → *Large, Normal, or Small* → Enter text

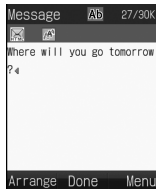
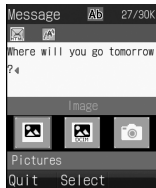
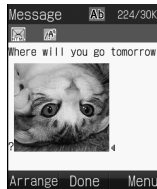



- To continue, press [Arrange] (Arrange).








4 [Envelope] (*Arrange*) → *Background color*



5 Select a background color

6  (Arrange) → *Image*7 *Pictures* → Select a file

- If Memory Card is inserted, select from *DCIM* folder.
- To capture image to insert, select *Camera*.
- If Memory Card is inserted, select *Pictures* and press  (Memory) to select a Memory Card file.

8  (Arrange) → *MYPIC.T*
→ Select a pictogram9  (Arrange) →  (Select Area) →  to move cursor to starting point and  (Start) →  to specify Arrange area →  (End) → *Effect*10 *Scrolling*

11 Right to left or Swing



12 (Quit) → (Done)




- In Arrange Mail entry window, *Undo* → *Yes* to undo most recent change.
- In Arrange Mail entry window, *Cancel* → *Yes* to cancel Arrange Mail and return message text only.

Advanced

Advanced Settings P.4-18

- Changing Address Type to To, Cc, or Bcc
- Deleting Address
- Deleting Attached File
- Sending Feeling Mail
- Resetting Feeling Setting
- Saving S! Mail Being Created to Drafts
- Using Templates to Create S! Mail
- Deleting All Text
- Setting Scroll Unit in S! Mail Creation Window
- Jumping to Top/Bottom of Text
- Viewing 3D Pictograms before Sending
- Setting Message Actions
- Using Arrange Settings
- Changing Font Color or Font Size
- Using Templates
- Using Bar Code Reader
- Moving Cursor to Top or End of Text
- Setting Conversion
- Inserting Information into S! Mail
- Adding Words to Dictionary (Japanese)
- Selecting Pictogram Setting
- Entering Address Quickly

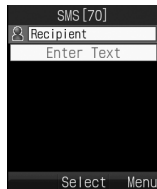
Settings

- Insert or hide Signature ( P.12-2)
- Edit Signature ( P.12-2)
- Show or hide transmission progress bar ( P.12-2)
- Set message sending priority ( P.12-3)
- Set sent message Mail Service Center expiry ( P.12-3)
- Set time to send a message via Mail Service Center ( P.12-3)
- Select reply setting ( P.12-4)
- Set "reply to" address ( P.12-4)

Sending SMS Messages

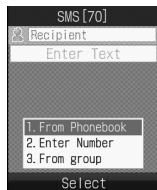
Example: Sending SMS to a Phonebook entry.

1 → Create new SMS



Text Entry Window

2 Select Recipient field



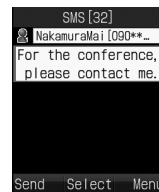
3 From Phonebook → Search Phonebook and select an entry (☞P.2-20 Searching Phonebook 2)



4 Select a phone number



5 Select Enter Text field → Enter text



- Alternatively, with Enter Text field highlighted, enter text.

6 (Send)

- Enter SoftBank handset numbers in Recipient field. Add up to 20 Recipients.
- When entered text exceeds entry limit (☞P.4-2), S! Mail conversion confirmation appears. Choose *Yes* to switch to S! Mail. When Hangul text is included, a confirmation to delete Hangul text appears. Choose *Yes* to delete Hangul text and switch to S! Mail.

Advanced

Advanced Settings (☞ P.4-21)

- Deleting Recipient
- Saving SMS to Drafts
- Converting SMS to S! Mail
- Deleting All Text
- Viewing 3D Pictograms before Sending
- Using Template to Send SMS

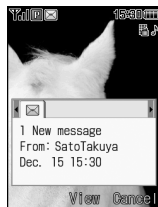
Settings

- Insert or hide Signature (☞ P.12-2)
- Edit Signature (☞ P.12-2)
- Show or hide transmission progress bar (☞ P.12-2)
- Select reply setting (☞ P.12-4)
- Set "reply to" address (☞ P.12-4)
- Set Mail Service Center message expiry time (☞ P.12-5)
- Set Message Center Number (☞ P.12-5)
- Edit Message Center Number (☞ P.12-5)
- Change character code (☞ P.12-5)

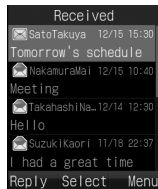
Received Messages

Viewing New Messages

When a message is received, notice appears in Standby. Number of messages, sender and reception dates/times appear.

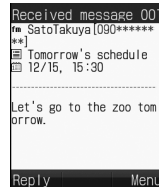


1 (View) → Select a folder



Message List

2 Select a new message



Message Window (S! Mail)

- If 3D Pictograms confirmation appears, select *Always*, *Only unread*, or *Disable*.



● 3D Pictograms

When viewing new/unread messages, message text appears in 3D animation.

If *3D pictograms* (☞ P.12-3) is set to other than *Disable*, 3D animation appears. After animation stops or [Stop] (Stop) is pressed, Message window appears. Use Menu options in Message window.

● Sender Information in Notification Window

Phone number or mail address appears. If sender is saved in Phonebook, name appears. If incoming image is saved or set for Group, image appears. For Secret entries, sender name/image does not appear if Secret mode is set to *Secret mode - On*.

- When a file is attached, a file name and thumbnail appear at the bottom of the message.
- If messages are received out of Standby, number of messages, sender numbers or mail addresses (names if saved in Phonebook), etc. scroll across Display top. Afterward  appears (P.1-4, P.12-2).
- When a Delivery Report arrives,  flashes and disappears. In Standby, a notification appears.

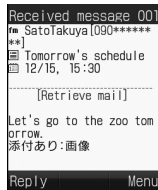
Retrieving Complete Messages

When *Receiving options* (P.12-3) is set to *Manual retrieval, S!* Mail is temporarily stored on Mail Server; part of the received message is sent to 9205C as a reception notification. Retrieve complete messages from Mail Server.

1 → *Received messages*



2 Select a folder → Select a notification






Notification
Details




3 Retrieve mail → Select a complete message

• Message List Indicators

Unread Message Notification

-  : Priority high
-  : Priority standard
-  : Priority low

Read Message Notification

-  : Priority high
-  : Priority standard
-  : Priority low

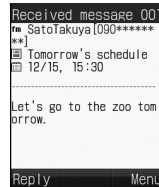
Replying to Received Messages

Reply to the received messages.

1 → *Received messages*



2 Select a folder → Select a message to reply to



3 (Reply) → S! Mail, S! Mail (History), SMS, or SMS (History)



- To remain the received message text, select S! Mail (History) or SMS (History).

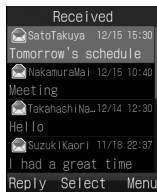
4 Create a message (☉P.4-3 Sending S! Mail 5)

- Re: appears before Reply Subject automatically.

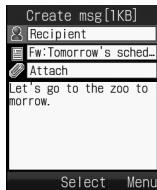
Forwarding Received Messages

Forward the received message to other recipients.

1 → Received messages → Select a folder



2 Highlight a message → → Forward



3 Create a message (☉P.4-3 Sending S! Mail 2)

- Fw: appears before forwarded S! Mail Subject automatically.
- To forward received SMS message, select S! Mail or SMS.

Advanced

Advanced Settings (☞P.4-22)

- Replying to All
- Forwarding Reception Notification or Server Mail
- Displaying 3D Pictograms
- Adding Sender to Phonebook
- Viewing Sender and Recipient
- Copying Message Content
- Deleting Message
- Viewing Message Details
- Setting Attached Picture Appearance
- Setting Font Size
- Setting Character Code
- Setting Scroll Unit
- Moving to Top/Bottom of the Message
- Retrieving Complete Messages
- Stopping Server Mail Retrieval
- Replying to All

Settings

- Change scroll unit (☞ P.12-2)
- Request or cancel Delivery Report (☞ P.12-2)
- Set received message notice content or hide notice (☞ P.12-2)
- Select secret folder message notice setting (☞ P.12-2)
- Adjust 3D Pictogram auto play setting (☞ P.12-3)
- Select 3D Pictogram color settings (☞ P.12-3)
- Select 3D Pictogram display speed (☞ P.12-3)
- Set receiving options for S! Mail (☞ P.12-3)
- Set receiving options for S! Mail while roaming (☞ P.12-4)
- Set Feeling Mail vibration (☞ P.12-4)
- Set whether to sound 920SC when Feeling Mail arrives (☞ P.12-4)
- Set Feeling Mail ringtone (☞ P.12-4)
- Set Feeling Mail ringtone duration (☞ P.12-4)
- Set attached image appearance (☞ P.12-4)
- Set attached image auto playback (☞ P.12-4)
- Set attached sound auto playback (☞ P.12-4)

Managing & Using Messages

Organize messages by type in five default folders.


Folder	Message Type
Received messages	Received messages
Drafts	Message drafts saved before completion
Templates	S! Mail or SMS saved as templates
Sent messages	Messages already sent
Unsent	Messages unsent because of failure or cancellation, or waiting to be sent

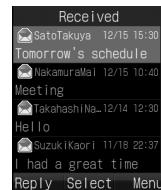
Note

- **When maximum number of messages are saved to Drafts, Unsent, and Sent messages, the oldest SMS message is automatically deleted.**





Viewing from Message List

From list of Received messages, Unsent messages, or Unsent, view the messages.

- 1  → *Received messages, Sent messages, or Unsent* → Select a folder as required

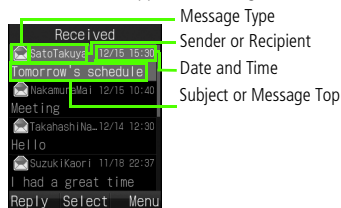


- 2 Select a message

- Folders with *Set secret* activated cannot be viewed when *Secret mode* is set to *Hide*. To view the secret folders, press  → *Unlock temporarily* → Enter Phone Password →  (OK).
- Press  or  in Message window to switch to next/previous message.

Message List

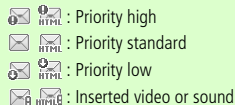
These indicators appear in message lists.



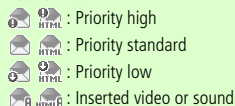
Message List (Received messages)

• Received Message Indicators

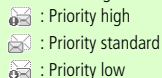
Unread S! Mail



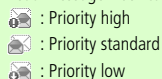
Read S! Mail



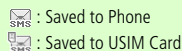
Unread Message Notification



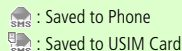
Read Message Notification



Unread SMS



Read SMS

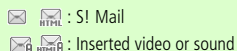


Receiving



• Draft Message Indicators

S! Mail

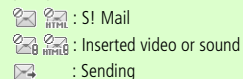


SMS

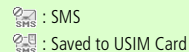


• Unsent Message Indicators

S! Mail



SMS

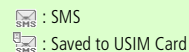


• Sent Message Indicators

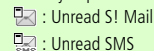
S! Mail



SMS



Delivery Report




- If Secret mode is active, only number or address appears for messages to/from Secret entries.

Using Message Information

In a Message or Notification, highlight sender, recipient, phone number or mail address to save it to Phonebook, place a call, send mail, or open or bookmark a website.


Saving to Phonebook

- 1  → *Received messages* → Select a folder → Select a message → Select phone number, E-mail address, or URL → *Add to phonebook*




- 2 Save a number to Phonebook


■ To save as a new entry

New → Enter each item (➡P.2-18)
→  (Save)



■ To update existing entry

Update → Search Phonebook and select entry (➡P.2-20) → Enter each item (➡P.2-18) →  (Save)

Saving as Bookmark


- 1  → *Received messages* → Select a folder → Select a message → Select URL → *Add to bookmark*

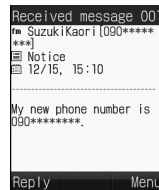


- 2  (Select) → Enter a title →  (Save)

Using Page Links

Use sender's address, or a phone number, address, or URL embedded in message text.

- 1  → *Received messages* → Select a folder → Select a message



- 2 Use linked information

■ To make a Voice Call

Select a phone number → *Voice call*



■ To make a Video Call

Select a phone number → *Video call*

■ To edit a number before call

Select a phone number → *Edit before call*

■ To send a message

Select a phone number or an E-mail address → *Create message* → *S! Mail* or *SMS* (➡P.4-3 Sending S! Mail , P.4-8 Sending SMS Messages )

■ To access the Internet


Select URL → *Go to URL* → *Yes*

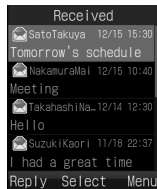
- To select a phone number and send a message, select S! Mail or SMS and create a message.

Deleting Messages or Templates

Deleting Messages


Delete specified messages or all messages in Mailbox.

- 1  → *Received messages, Drafts, Sent messages, or Unsent*
→ **Select a folder as required**





- 2 **Delete message**



■ To delete a message

Highlight message →  → *Delete* → *Selected* → *Yes*

■ To delete multiple messages

 → *Delete* → *Multiple* → Check messages →  (Delete) → *Yes*

■ To delete all messages in the selected mailbox

 → *Delete* → *All* → Enter
Phone Password →  (OK) → *Yes*

Deleting Templates


Delete specified templates or all saved templates.

- 1  → *Templates* → *S! Mail templates or Text templates*



- 2 **Delete template**



■ To delete a template

Highlight S! Mail template or text template →  → *Delete* → *Selected* → *Yes*

■ To delete multiple templates




 → *Delete* → *Multiple* → Check S! Mail templates or text templates →  (Delete) → *Yes*

■ To delete all templates

 → *Delete* → *All* → Enter
Phone Password →  (OK) → *Yes*

Advanced


Advanced Settings P.4-23

- Editing & Sending Sent/Unsent Messages
 - Saving Attached Files to Data Folder
 - Saving Received/Sent S! Mail as Template
 - Adding Address/Number to Phonebook
 - Locking/Unlocking Messages
 - Switching Message List View
 - Sorting Messages
 - Changing Messages to Read/Unread
 - Moving SMS Messages to 9205C/USIM Card
 - Viewing Message or Folder Details
 - Saving S! Mail as Template
 - Sending Saved Template via S! Mail
 - Viewing Saved Template Details
 - Sending Unsent Messages after Editing
 - Viewing Unsent Message Details
 - Forwarding Server Mail
 - Deleting Mail List Messages
- #### **Settings**
- Change message list view ( P.12-2)
 - Change received message view ( P.12-3)
 - Change sent message view ( P.12-3)

Managing Folders

Create folders in Received messages and Sent messages, and set a rule to each folder to automatically sort messages. Set Security to personal folders. *Received messages* and *Sent messages* folders cannot be deleted; the settings cannot be changed.

Creating Folders

- 1  → *Received messages* or *Sent messages*




- 2  → *Add new folder*



- 3 Edit folder name


Moving Messages

- 1  → *Received messages* or *Sent messages*





- 2 Move message


■ To move a message

Select a folder → Highlight a message →  → *Move to folder* → *Selected*

■ To move multiple messages

Select a folder →  → *Move to folder* → *Multiple* → Check messages →  (Move)

■ To move all messages

Select a folder →  → *Move to folder* → *All*

- 3 Select a destination folder

• By default, received messages are saved to *Received* folder, and sent messages are saved to *Sent* folder. To move back to the original folder after moving messages to another folder, select *Received* or *Sent* folder in Step 3.

Sorting Messages

Sort and save the sent/received messages automatically by phone number, mail address, etc. to the specified folders. Also, sort messages by subject in S! Mail or text in SMS. Up to 20 rules can be set per folder.

1 → *Received messages or Sent messages*



2 → *Auto sort*



3 Set sorting rule

■ To select phone number/E-mail address from Phonebook

Select Rule field → *Sender* or *Recipient* → *From phonebook* → Search Phonebook and select an entry (P.2-20) → Select phone number or E-mail address

■ To enter phone number/E-mail address directly

Select Rule field → *Sender* or *Recipient* → *Direct input* → Enter phone number or E-mail address

■ To select phone number/E-mail address from Group in Phonebook

Select Rule field → *Sender* or *Recipient* → *From group* → Select a group

- Groups saved on USIM Card cannot be set as a rule.

■ To select a rule from text

Select Rule field → *Subject* → Enter text to set as a rule

4 (OK)

Advanced

Advanced Settings (P.4-26)

- Changing Folder Name
- Setting Secret to Folder
- Changing Sorting Rules
- Deleting Folders

Settings

- Change received message view (P.12-3)
- Change sent message view (P.12-3)

Advanced Settings

Sending S! Mail

Entering Address from Other Than Phonebook

Select Recipient field in S! Mail creation window

■ To enter address from Call Log records

Select a record

■ To enter phone number directly

Enter Number → Enter phone number

■ To enter E-mail address directly

Enter address → Enter mail address

■ To select phone number from Group in Phonebook


From group → Select group

- When multiple phone numbers or mail addresses are saved in Phonebook, Selection window for address may appear. Select a phone number or an mail address.


Adding Address

Select Recipient field in S! Mail creation window with address already entered → *Add recipients*


■ To enter address from Call Log records

Select a record →  (Done)


■ To select from Phonebook

From Phonebook → Search Phonebook and select entry (☎P.2-20) → Select phone number or E-mail address →  (Done)

■ To enter phone number directly


Enter Number → Enter phone number →  (Done)

■ To enter mail address directly



Enter address → Enter mail address →  (Done)

■ To select phone number from Group in Phonebook

From group → Select group →  (Done)

- When multiple phone numbers or mail addresses are saved in Phonebook, Selection window for address may appear. Select a phone number or an mail address.
- When multiple addresses are saved, the number of addresses appears next to Recipient field  in Create Message window.



Changing Address Type to To, Cc, or Bcc

Select Recipient field in S! Mail creation window → Highlight address →  → *Change to To*, *Change to Cc*, or *Change to Bcc* →  (Done)

Deleting Address

Select Recipient field in S! Mail creation window

■ To delete an address

Highlight address →  → *Remove* → *Selected* →  (Done)

■ To delete all addresses

 → *Remove* → *All* → *Yes* →  (Done)



Viewing Attached File

Select Attach field in S! Mail creation window → Select a file to view



Deleting Attached File

Select Attach field in S! Mail creation window


■ To delete a file

Highlight file →  → *Remove* → *Selected* →  (Done)

■ To delete all files

 → *Remove* → *All* → *Yes* →  (Done)


Sending Feeling Mail

In S! Mail creation window,  → *Feeling Setting* → *Happy/Glad, OK/Good, Sad/Sorry, NG/Bad*, or *Important/Notice* → Select pictogram

Resetting Feeling Setting


In S! Mail creation window,  → *Reset feeling*

Saving S! Mail Being Created to Drafts

In S! Mail creation window,  → *Save to Drafts*


- Only messages with recipient, subject, or text entered, or file attached can be saved.

Using Templates to Create S! Mail


In S! Mail creation window,  → *Launch Template* → Select template

- When using a Template, delete text confirmation appears. Choose *Yes* to delete text and open the Template.


Deleting All Text

In S! Mail creation window, highlight Enter Text field
→  → *Remove Text* → *Yes*


Setting Scroll Unit in S! Mail Creation Window

In S! Mail creation window, highlight Enter Text field
→  → *Scroll unit* → *Single line, Half screen, or Whole screen*


Jumping to Top/Bottom of Text

In S! Mail creation window, highlight Enter Text field →
 → *Scroll jump* → *Jump to top or Jump to bottom*

Viewing 3D Pictograms before Sending

In S! Mail creation window,  → *3D Pictogram*

Setting Message Actions

In S! Mail creation window,  → *Action settings*

■ To set whether to delete automatically after the other party reads the message

Set auto delete → *On* or *Off*

■ To set Reply request

Reply Request → *On/Off* → *On* → Enter Reply request message

- When *On* is set, select *Edit message* from *Reply Request* to edit a message.

■ To restrict message forwarding

Forward NG → *On/Off* → *On* → Enter Forward NG message


- When *On* is set, select *Edit message* from *Forward NG* to edit a message.

■ To restrict message deletion

Delete NG → *On/Off* → *On* → Delete NG message



- When *On* is set, select *Edit message* from *Delete NG* to edit a message.

■ To restrict message access with a question

Quiz → *On/Off* → *Open question* → Select Question field → Enter question → Select Answer field → Enter answer → Select Message (Correct) field → Enter message when answer is correct → Select Message (Incorrect) field → Enter message when answer is incorrect →  (Done)


- To edit question, select *Edit question* from *Quiz*.

■ To restrict message access with a multiple choice question

Quiz → *On/Off* → *Multiple choice question* → Select Question field → Enter question → Highlight Answer field → Use  to select correct number → Select Example1 to 4 field to enter choices → Select Message (Correct) field → Enter message when answer is correct → Select Message (Incorrect) field → Enter message when answer is incorrect →  (Done)


- To edit a question, select *Edit question* from *Quiz*.
- When *Action settings* are set, the recipient's action can be set.

Requesting S! Mail Delivery Report

In S! Mail creation window,  → *Sending options* → *Delivery report* → *On* or *Off*


- Select *On* to receive a Delivery Report when a message is sent from Mail Server to the other party. This option can be set to the message being created.

Setting Reply Settings


In S! Mail creation window,  → *Sending options* → *Reply settings* → *On* or *Off*

- Set the address "*Reply to*" address (P.12-4).


Setting Message Priority

In S! Mail creation window,  → *Sending options* → *Priority* → *Urgent, Normal, or Low*


Setting Mail Server Expiry Time

In S! Mail creation window,  → *Sending options* → *Expiry time* → *Maximum, 1 hour, 3 hours, 6 hours, 12 hours, 1 day, 3 days, or 1 week*

Setting Delivery Time


In S! Mail creation window,  → *Sending options* → *Delivery time* → *Immediately, 1 hour, 3 hours, 6 hours, 12 hours, 1 day, 3 days, or 1 week*

Setting Remote Forward Action

In S! Mail creation window,  → *Sending options* → *Remote Fwd Action* → *Not Delete or Del, After Forward*

- This function is available only when forwarding Server Mail message (P.4-25).

Using Arrange Settings

In S! Mail creation window, select Enter Text field →  → *Arrange*

■ To insert BGM from Data Folder

Insert → *Insert BGM* → *Ring songs · tones or Music* → Select a file

■ To record BGM to insert

Insert → *Insert BGM* → *Record sound* → (P.8-9 Recording Sound 2)







■ To insert Flash®

Insert → *Insert Flash* → Select a file

■ To insert line

Insert → *Insert Line*

Changing Font Color or Font Size

In S! Mail creation window with text entered, Select Enter Text field →  → *Arrange* →  (Select Area) → Use  to move cursor to the first character and  (End) → Use  to select area →  (End)


■ To change Font color

Font color → Select color


■ To change Font size

Font size → Select size


Using Templates

In S! Mail creation window,  → *Text templates* → Select a template

Using Bar Code Reader

In S! Mail creation window, select Enter Text field →  → *Scan* → (P.8-10 Scanning Bar Code and QR Code 2)

Moving Cursor to Top or End of Text

In S! Mail creation window,  → *Cursor position* → *Jump to top* or *Jump to end*

Setting Conversion

In S! Mail creation window,  → *Conversion*

■ To activate/cancel Prediction

Prediction Off or *Prediction On*

■ To activate/cancel Learning

Learning Off or *Learning On*

■ To reset User's dictionary

Reset learning

■ To clear records of pictograms/symbols

Clear history

Inserting Information into S! Mail

In S! Mail creation window,  → *Advanced*

■ To insert signature

Signature

■ To insert phone number from Phonebook

Phonebook → Search Phonebook and select an entry (P.2-20)


■ To insert Account details

Account details


Adding Words to Dictionary (Japanese)

In S! Mail creation window,  → *Add to dictionary* → (P.2-15 Saving to User's Dictionary 2)

Selecting Pictogram Setting

In S! Mail creation window,  → *Pict setting* → *For DoCoMo, For au, For SoftBank, or Common*

Entering Address Quickly

In S! Mail creation window,  → *Quick Address List* → Select an item

Using Template to Send S! Mail

 → *Templates* → *S! Mail templates* → Select S! Mail template →  (Mail) → (P.4-3 Sending S! Mail 2)

Sending SMS

Entering Addresses from Sources

In SMS creation window, select Recipient field

■ To enter address from log

Open log and select a record

■ To enter phone number directly

Enter Number → Enter phone number

■ To select Phonebook Group number in Phonebook

From group → Select group

- When multiple phone numbers or E-mail addresses are saved in Phonebook, Selection window may appear. Select a phone number.
- When E-mail address is set for *Messages* in *Set default number*, the entry cannot be set as recipient.


Adding Recipient

Select Recipient field in SMS creation window with address already entered → *Add recipients*


■ To enter address from log

Select displayed log →  (Done)

■ To select from Phonebook


From Phonebook → Search Phonebook and select entry (☎ P.2-20) → Select phone number →  (Done)

■ To enter phone number directly

Enter Number → Enter phone number →  (Done)

■ To select Phonebook Group number



From group → Select group →  (Done)

- When multiple phone numbers or E-mail addresses are saved in Phonebook, Selection window may appear. Select a phone number.
- When E-mail address is set for *Messages* in *Set default number*, the entry cannot be set.
- If multiple addresses are saved, a number appears next to Recipient field  in Create Message window.



Deleting Recipient

In SMS creation window, select Recipient field


■ To delete a recipient

Highlight address →  → *Remove* → *Selected* →  (Done)

■ To delete all addresses

 → *Remove* → *All* → *Yes* →  (Done)

Saving SMS to Drafts


In SMS Mail creation window,  → *Save to Drafts*

- *Save to Drafts* appears in menu only when either recipient or text is entered.

Converting SMS to S! Mail


In SMS creation window,  → *Change to S! Mail*

Requesting SMS Delivery Report


In SMS creation window,  → *Sending options* → *Delivery report* → *On* or *Off*

- Select *On* to receive a Delivery Report when a message is sent from Mail Server to the other party. This option can be set to the message being created.


Setting Mail Server Expiry Time

In SMS creation window,  → *Sending options* → *Expiry time* → *None*, *1 hour*, *6 hours*, *12 hours*, *1 day*, or *3 days*



Deleting All Text

In SMS creation window, highlight Enter Text field →  → *Remove Text* → *Yes*

Viewing 3D Pictograms before Sending

In SMS creation window, highlight Enter Text field →  → *3D Pictogram*

Using Template to Send SMS





 → *Templates* → *Text templates* → Highlight template →  → *Send*

Received Messages




Retrieving Messages Manually

 → Retrieve new



Replying to All

 → Received messages → Select folder → Select message →  → Reply to all → S! Mail or S! Mail (History) →  P.4-3 Sending S! Mail 



Forwarding Reception Notification or Server Mail

 → Received messages → Select folder → Highlight notification →  → Forward → *Notifi. forward* or *Remote forward* → Create a message →  P.4-3 Sending S! Mail 



Displaying 3D Pictograms

 → Received messages, Sent messages, or Unsent → Select folder as required → Select message →  → 3D Pictogram




Adding Sender to Phonebook

 → Received messages → Select folder → Select message →  → Add to phonebook → Select phone number or E-mail address



■ To save as a new entry

New → Enter each item ( P.2-18 Creating New Entries 



■ To update existing entry

Update → Search Phonebook and select entry ( P.2-20) → Enter each item ( P.2-18 Creating New Entries 

Viewing Sender and Recipient

 → Received messages or Sent messages → Select folder as required → Select message →  → View mail address


Copying Message Content

 → Received messages or Sent messages → Select folder as required → Select message →  → Copy


■ To copy sender or recipient address

Address → Select address to copy



■ To copy subject

Subject ( P.2-39 Specify Range to Copy/Cut)



■ To copy text

Message txt ( P.2-39 Specify Range to Copy/Cut)



Deleting Message

 → Received messages, Sent messages, or Unsent → Select folder as required → Select message →  → Delete → Yes



Viewing Message Details

 → Received messages, Sent messages, or Unsent → Select folder → Select message →  → Details



Setting Attached Picture Appearance

 → Received messages → Select folder → Select message →  → Picture appearance → Normal or Fit to screen



Setting Font Size

 → Received messages, Sent messages, or Unsent → Select folder as required → Select message →  → Font size → Large, Standard, Small, or Tiny



Setting Character Code

 → Received messages → Select folder → Select message →  → Char-code → Auto, Shift-JIS, UTF-8, EUC-JP, ISO-2022-JP, or ISO-8859-1

Setting Scroll Unit

 → Received messages, Sent messages, or Unsent → Select folder as required → Select a message →  → Scroll unit → Single line, Half screen, or Whole screen

Moving to Top/Bottom of the Message

 → Received messages, Sent messages, or Unsent → Select folder as required → Select message →  → Scroll jump → Jump to top or Jump to bottom

Viewing Attachment

→ *Received messages*, *Sent messages*, or *Unsent* → Select folder as required → Select message → Select file → *Open*

- To save a file to Data Folder before viewing, Select a file in Message window and select *Save*.
- To save attachment to vCard or vCalendar before viewing, select a file in Message window and select *Register to Phonebook* or *Register to Calendar*.
- To save vCard or vCalendar to Phonebook or Calendar after viewing, press (Register).
- When a file requiring Content Key is attached, a confirmation appears. To view the file, choose *Yes* and purchase or acquire Content Key.
- When a file which allows to play/view only once is attached, a confirmation appears.

Retrieving Complete Messages

→ *Received messages* → Select folder → Highlight message → → *Retrieve*

Stopping Server Mail Retrieval

→ *Received messages* → Select folder → Highlight message → → *Cancel retrieving*

Replying to All

→ *Received messages* → Select folder → Highlight message → → *Reply to all* → *S! Mail* or *S! Mail (History)* → (⊕P.4-3 Sending S! Mail)

Using & Managing Messages

Editing & Sending Sent/Unsent Messages

→ *Sent messages* or *Unsent* → Select folder as required → Select message → → *Edit & send* → Create message (⊕P.4-3 Sending S! Mail)

Saving Attached Files to Data Folder

→ *Received messages* or *Sent messages* → Select folder as required → Select message → → *Save items*

■ To save a file

Highlight a file to save → (Select)

■ To save multiple files

→ *Save multiple* → Check files to save → (Save)

■ To save all files

→ *Save All*

- When a message to notify the same file name exists, press (OK) → (Select) → Edit file name → (Save).

Saving Received/Sent S! Mail as Template

→ *Received messages* or *Sent messages* → Select folder as required → Select message →

→ *Save as S! Mail template* → Enter file name

- S! Mail with the text arranged can be saved as template (⊕P.4-5).

Adding Address/Number to Phonebook

→ *Received messages* or *Sent messages* → Select folder → Highlight message → → *Add to phonebook* → Select phone number or E-mail address

■ To save as a new entry

New → Enter each item (⊕P.2-18 Creating New Entries)

■ To update existing entry

Update → Search Phonebook and select entry (⊕P.2-20) → Enter each item (⊕P.2-18 Creating New Entries)

Locking/Unlocking Messages

→ *Received messages*, *Drafts*, *Sent messages*, or *Unsent* → Select a folder as required

■ To lock/unlock a message

Highlight a message → → *Lock* or *Unlock* → *Selected*

■ To lock/unlock multiple messages

→ *Lock* or *Unlock* → *Multiple* → Highlight messages → (Lock) or (Unlock)

■ To lock/unlock all messages



→ *Lock* or *Unlock* → *All*

Switching Message List View






→ *Received messages*, *Drafts*, *Sent messages*, or *Unsent* → Select folder as required → → *Message list view* → *2 line, 1 line(subject), or 1 line(sender)*

- Message list view setting changed via Menu becomes invalid when Message list window is closed.



Sorting Messages

-  → Received messages, Drafts, Sent messages, or Unsent → Select a folder as required →  → Sort by → Select an item
- Sort messages by the following items.
 - By time (*Time* ↓ or *Time* ↑)
 - By sender (*Sender*)
 - By recipient (*Recipients*)
 - By read or unread messages (*Read or Unread*)
 - By message type (*Message type*)
 - By subject (*Subject*)
 - By message size (*Size*)
 - By attachment (*Attach*)
 - By priority (*Priority*)
 - By locked/unlocked message (*Lock*)
 - When *Message type* is selected, messages are sorted by the order of S! Mail (including reception notification), SMS saved on USIM Card, and then SMS saved on 920SC.
 - When *Sender* or *Subject* is selected, messages are sorted by the order of single-byte symbol, single-byte number, single-byte alphabet, single-byte Katakana, double-byte symbol, double-byte Hiragana, double-byte Katakana, Kanji, double-byte number, and double-byte alphabet. When *Subject* is selected, messages with *no subject* appear first.





Changing Messages to Read/Unread

-  → Received messages → Select a folder
- **To change a message to Read/Unread**
Highlight a message to switch to Read or Unread →  → Switch to read or Switch to unread → Selected
 - **To change multiple messages to Read/Unread**
Highlight messages to switch to Read or Unread →  → Switch to read or Switch to unread → Multiple → Check messages to switch to Read or Unread →  (Read/Unread)
 - **To change all messages to Read/Unread**
 → Switch to read or Switch to unread → All


Moving SMS Messages to 920SC/USIM Card

-  → Received messages, Sent messages, or Unsent → Select folder as required → Highlight SMS →  → Move to phone or Move to USIM
- Save up to 10 messages to USIM Card. The number of messages that can be saved varies by the types of USIM Card.
 - When moving received SMS messages in a personal folder to USIM Card, a confirmation appears. Choose *Yes* to move to USIM Card.




Viewing Message or Folder Details

- **To view message details**
 → Received messages, Drafts, Sent messages, or Unsent → Select a folder as required →  → Details
- **To view folder details**
 → Received messages or Sent messages → Highlight a folder →  → Details


Saving S! Mail as Template

- In S! Mail creation window →  → Save as template → Enter file name
- Save Arrange Mail messages to Templates (P.4-5).





Sending Draft Message

-  → Drafts → Select a message →  (Send)
- When recipient is not entered,  (Send) does not appear.



Viewing Saved S! Mail Templates

-  → Templates → S! Mail templates → Select S! Mail template



Editing Saved S! Mail Template

-  → Templates → S! Mail templates → Select saved S! Mail template →  (Mail) → Select Enter Text field → Enter text →  (Done) →  → Save as template → Enter file name



Sending Saved Template via S! Mail

 → *Templates* → *S! Mail templates* → Select S! Mail template →  → *Send via message* → (P.4-3 Sending S! Mail 2)



Viewing Saved Template Details

 → *Templates* → *S! Mail templates* → Select S! Mail template →  → *Details*



Viewing Delivery Report

 → *Sent messages* → Select a folder → Select a message with *Delivery* setting →  (Report)



Resending Unsent Messages

 → *Unsent* → Highlight a message to resend →  (Resend)


Sending Unsent Messages after Editing

 → *Unsent* → Highlight a message to edit →  → *Edit* → (P.4-3 Sending S! Mail 2)



Viewing Unsent Message Details


 → *Unsent* → Highlight a message to view →  → *Error details*

Retrieving Mail List

 → *Server mail* → *Retrieve mail list* → *Yes*

Updating Mail List


 → *Server mail* → *Retrieve mail list* →  (Update)


- Alternatively, select *Retrieve mail list*, then press  and select *Retrieve mail list*.

Receiving Mail List Messages

 → *Server mail*

■ To retrieve a selected message

Retrieve mail list → *Yes* → Highlight a message →  (Get)



- Alternatively, highlight a message to retrieve, then press  and select *Get*.

■ To receive all messages


Retrieve all mails

- Alternatively, select *Retrieve mail list* → *Yes* → *Retrieve all*.


Forwarding Server Mail

 → *Server mail* → *Retrieve mail list* → *Yes* → Highlight a message →  → *Remote forward* → Select Recipient field


■ Select recipient from Call Log records

Select a record →  (Send)


■ To select recipient from Phonebook

From Phonebook → Search Phonebook and select entry (P.2-20) → Select phone number or E-mail address →  (Send)


■ To enter phone number directly

Enter Number → Enter phone number →  (Send)

■ To enter E-mail address directly

Enter address → Enter E-mail address →  (Send)

■ To select recipient from Group in Phonebook

From group → Select recipient to enter →  (Send)

- To edit subject or text, select Subject or Enter Text field after entering recipient and edit as required (P.4-3).
- *Fw:* appears before forwarded S! Mail Subject automatically.
- Set whether to delete message from Server after forwarding Server Mail message (P.4-20 Setting Remote Forward Action).

Deleting All Server Mail

→ *Server mail* → *Delete all* → Enter Phone Password → (OK) → *Except new msg. or Delete all*

Deleting Mail List Messages

→ *Server mail* → *Retrieve mail list* → *Yes*

■ To delete a message

Highlight a message → → *Delete* → *Selected* → *Yes*

■ To delete multiple messages

→ *Delete* → *Multiple* → Check messages to delete → (Delete) → *Yes*

■ To delete all messages

→ *Delete* → *All* → Enter Phone password → (OK) → *Yes*

Viewing Server Mail Status

→ *Server mail* → *Server mail memory*

- To update the status, press (Update).

Viewing Memory Status

→ *Memory Status* → *S! Mail (By count), S! Mail (By size), or SMS*

- To delete viewed memory, press (Delete) (P.2-47 Deleting Registered/Saved Data).

Folder Management

Changing Folder Name

→ *Received messages* or *Sent messages* → Highlight a folder → → *Change name* → Enter folder name

Setting Secret to Folder

→ *Received messages* or *Sent messages* → Highlight a folder → → *Set secret* → Enter Phone Password → (OK) → (OK)

- Secret folders are hidden in *Secret mode*. To cancel *Secret mode* temporarily, press → *Unlock temporarily* → Enter Phone Password → (OK).

Changing Sorting Rules

→ *Received messages* or *Sent messages* → Highlight a folder → → *Auto sort* → Highlight Rule field → → *Replace rule* (P.4-17 Sorting Messages)

Deleting Sorting Rules

→ *Received messages* or *Sent messages* → Highlight a folder containing a rule → → *Auto sort*

■ To delete a rule

Highlight Rule field → → *Delete* → *Selected*

■ To delete all rules

→ *Delete* → *All* → *Yes*

Deleting Folders

→ *Received messages* or *Sent messages* → Highlight a folder → → *Delete* → Enter Phone Password → (OK) → *Yes*

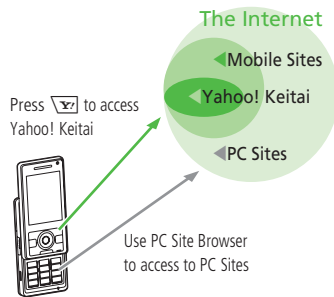
Internet Services



Internet Services	5-2		
SSL & TLS	5-2		
Cache	5-2		
Yahoo! Keitai	5-3		
Yahoo! Keitai Main Menu	5-3		
PC Site Browser	5-4		
PC Site Browser Main Menu	5-4		
Page Operations	5-5		
Scrolling	5-5		
Moving Cursor	5-5		
Previous/Next Page	5-5		
Text Entry & Item Selection	5-6		
Bookmarks	5-6		
Saving as Bookmark	5-6		
Accessing from Bookmark	5-7		
Saved Pages	5-7		
Saving Page	5-7		
Opening Saved Page	5-7		
Streaming	5-8		
Streaming from Page Link	5-8		
Entering URL Directly	5-8		
Accessing from Bookmark	5-8		
Accessing from History	5-8		
		S! Quick News (Japanese)	5-9
		Opening List	5-9
		Viewing Update Information	5-10
		Registering S! Quick News List/S! Loop List	5-11
		Registering Entries Manually	5-12
		Deleting Entries	5-12
		S! Town (Japanese)	5-13
		Using S! Town	5-13
		S! Loop (Japanese)	5-14
		Using S! Loop	5-14
		Advanced Settings	
		Yahoo! Keitai	5-14
		PC Site Browser	5-19
		Page Operations	5-22
		Bookmarks	5-22
		Saved Pages	5-24
		Streaming	5-24
		S! Quick News (Japanese)	5-25
		S! Town (Japanese)	5-26

Internet Services

Access Mobile Internet sites via Yahoo! Keitai or Internet sites via PC Site Browser. View page contents or download image/music files.



- In this guide, SoftBank mobile Internet portal is called "Yahoo! Keitai", websites accessed via PC Site Browser "PC site", and they are collectively called "Internet".
- A separate subscription is required for Internet services.
- Before using Internet, retrieve Network information.

Note

- Internet connections incur Packet Communication fees.

SSL & TLS

Secure Sockets Layer (SSL) and Transport Layer Security (TLS) are encryption protocols for secure Internet transmissions of important/sensitive information (credit card numbers, etc.) and authentication.

Confirm electronic certificates saved on 920SC (☞ P.5-16, P.5-21).

Note

- **Using SSL/TLS**
When a security notice appears, subscribers must decide for themselves whether or not to open a page.
Opening secure pages constitutes agreement to the terms of usage.
SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp., VeriSign Japan K.K., Cybertrust Japan Co., Ltd., Entrust Japan Co., Ltd., GlobalSign K.K., RSA Security Inc. and SECOM Trust Systems Co., Ltd. are not liable for the security of SSL/TLS. No liability is assumed for any damage associated with SSL/TLS use.

Cache

Retrieved Mobile Internet pages are temporarily saved in cache. Cache remains even after a session ends or handset is turned off. When full, oldest pages are automatically deleted to make room for new ones.

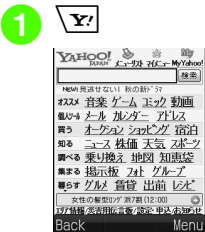
When a saved page is opened again, it may open from Cache. For the latest content, reload the page.

- When another USIM Card is inserted, Cache contents are automatically deleted.
- When a page with an expiry date is saved, page is automatically deleted upon expiry.

Yahoo! Keitai

Yahoo! Keitai Main Menu

Access Mobile sites via Yahoo! Keitai main menu.



2 Select an item

- When accessing Mobile Internet for the first time, Time & date settings window appears after Step 1. Set time & date to open a page.
- To change to a PC site from a Yahoo! Keitai page, press → *Manage content* → *Switch to PC site browser* → *This page or Link* → (OK) → *Yes or No*

Note

- When *Send referer* is set to *Not send*, pages may not be displayed (P.5-16).

Entering URL

1 → *Yahoo! Keitai* → *Enter URL*



- "http://" is set by default.

2 Enter URL

Advanced

Advanced Settings (P.5-14)

- Moving to Next Page
- Copying Text
- Refreshing Page
- Entering URL to Open Another Site/Page
- Entering URL Quickly
- Entering URL from History
- Saving Image/Background Image
- Saving Background Sound
- Deleting Access History
- Moving to Main Menu
- Using Multiple Pages

Settings

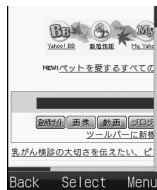
- Delete cache/Cookie/certificates (P.12-5)
- Show or hide Manufacture Number (P.12-5)
- Send or hide Referer (P.12-5)
- Select Cookie setting (P.12-5)
- Select Script setting (P.12-5)
- Confirm Root Certificate (P.12-5)
- Set Certificate retention period (P.12-5)
- Initialize Browser (P.12-6)
- Reset settings (P.12-6)

PC Site Browser

PC Site Browser Main Menu



Access PC sites via PC Site Browser main menu.

- 1 → *Yahoo! Keitai* → *PC site browser* → *Homepage*



- If a warning appears, press (OK) and choose *Yes* or *No*.

- 2 **Select an item** → (Select)

- Activate PC Site Browser,  appears.
- In PC Site Browser, download document files or stream media files.
- Some sites may not appear correctly.
- To open Yahoo! Keitai from PC Site Browser, press  → *Manage content* → *Switch to Yahoo! Keitai* → *This page* or *Link* → If a warning appears, (OK) → *Yes* or *No*

Note

- When *Send referer* is set to *Not send*, page may not open (☞P.5-21).
- Viewing content rich sites may incur high Packet Communication charges.

Entering URL

- 1 → *Yahoo! Keitai* → *PC site browser* → *Enter URL*



- 2 **Enter URL**
- "http://" is set in URL field by default.
 - If a warning appears, press (OK) and choose *Yes* or *No*

Advanced

Advanced Settings (☞ P.5-19)

- Moving to Next Page
- Copying Text
- Refreshing Page
- Entering URL to Open Page
- Entering URL Quickly
- Entering URL from History
- Deleting Access History
- Opening Main Menu
- Using Multiple Pages
- Changing Display Width

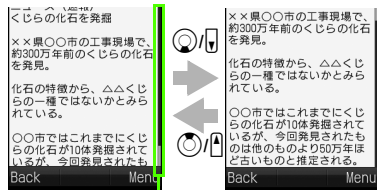
Settings

- Delete cache/Cookie/certificates (☞ P.12-6)
- Show or hide Manufacture Number (☞ P.12-6)
- Send or hide Referer (☞ P.12-6)
- Select Cookie setting (☞ P.12-6)
- Select Script setting (☞ P.12-6)
- Confirm Root Certificate (☞ P.12-6)
- Set Certificate retention period (☞ P.12-6)
- Show or hide warning (☞ P.12-6)
- Initialize Browser (☞ P.12-6)
- Reset settings (☞ P.12-6)

Page Operations

Scrolling

Scroll bar appears when window content extends beyond current view.



Scroll Bar

- : Scroll down line by line
- : Scroll up line by line

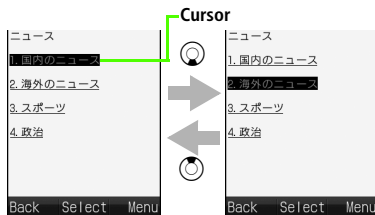
- When a horizontal scroll bar appears, use to scroll to right, or to the left.

Side Key : Scroll page down by multiple lines

Side Key : Scroll page up by multiple lines

Moving Cursor

When selecting an item such as link, move cursor to the item.



: In a vertical list, move cursor down

- Press to move cursor down.

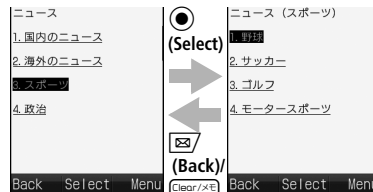
: In a vertical list, move cursor up

- Press to move cursor up.

- When multiple items exist in the same line, press to move cursor to right or left.

- Move cursor onto linked item, then it is highlighted or enclosed in a frame of dotted lines.

Previous/Next Page



Highlight link and press (Select)

: Open the next page

- Alternatively, press and select *Next*.

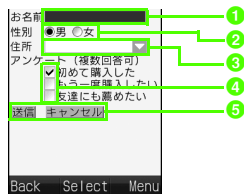
(Back) / (Clear/×E)

: Return to previous page

- Press (Back) or with no previous page, end browser a confirmation appears. Choose *Yes* to end Internet connection.

Text Entry & Item Selection

Pages may contain fields and items shown below.



1 Text entry field

Enter data, certification passwords, etc. Highlight text entry field, press **[Select]** and enter text.

2 Radio button

Select an item only. Highlight an item with **[Select]** and press **[Select]** to select it (Appearing as **[Selected]**).

3 Menu field

Open a menu and select item. Highlight an item and press **[Select]** to open it. Use **[Select]** to highlight an item and press **[Select]** to select it. If multiple items are selectable, press **[Clear/X]** to cancel all.

4 Check box

Select multiple items. Highlight an item with **[Select]** and press **[Select]** to select it (Appearing as **[Checked]**). To deselect an item, highlight **[Checked]** and press **[Select]**.

5 Command button

Perform operations assigned to a button such as *Send* or *Reset*. Highlight a command button and press **[Select]** to execute the operation.

Note

• Text entry and item selection varies by page.

Advanced

[Advanced Settings] **[P.5-22]**

Settings

- Change page font size (**[P.12-5, P.12-6]**)
- Set page scroll unit (**[P.12-5, P.12-6]**)
- Show or hide page images (**[P.12-5, P.12-6]**)
- Play or mute page sounds (**[P.12-5, P.12-6]**)

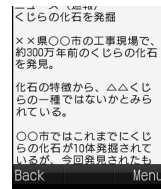
Bookmarks

Save page URLs as Bookmarks.

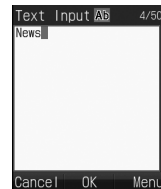
Saving as Bookmark

Save up to 30 Bookmarks.

1 Open a page



2 **[Bookmark]** → *Bookmarks* → *Save*



3 Enter title

Accessing from Bookmark

- 1  → *Yahoo! Keitai* → *Bookmarks*



- 2 Select a bookmark

Note

- Packet Communication fees apply for Internet connection.

Advanced

 **Advanced Settings** (P.5-22)

- Sending Bookmark URL
- Sending Bookmark URL via Bluetooth®
- Sending Bookmark URL via Infrared
- Changing Bookmark Order
- Deleting Yahoo! Keitai Bookmark
- Deleting PC Site Bookmark
- Saving Bookmark to Data Folder

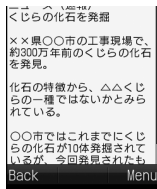
Saved Pages


Save page contents to view without connections.

Saving Page

Save up to 50 pages.

- 1 Open a page



- 2  → *Saved pages* → *Save*



- 3 Enter title

Opening Saved Page

- 1  → *Yahoo! Keitai* → *Saved pages*



- 2 Select a page

Note

- If replacing USIM Card inserted when pages are saved with another one, Saved pages cannot be displayed.

Advanced

 **Advanced Settings** (P.5-24)

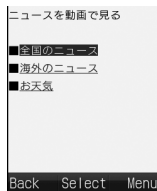
- Renaming Saved Page
- Changing Order of Saved Pages
- Deleting Saved Pages in Yahoo! Keitai
- Deleting Saved Pages in PC Site Browser

Streaming

Enjoy audio visual media while it is downloaded.
Access compatible files via page links, etc.

Streaming from Page Link

- 1 Open a page containing a page link



- 2 Select a link

Entering URL Directly

- 1  → *Media Player* → *Streaming* → *Enter URL*



- "rtsp://" is set in URL field by default.

- 2 Enter URL


- Operation while streaming is the same as that of Media Player (➡P.7-4, P.7-6).

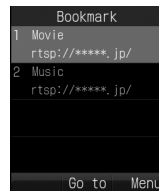
Note

- Even if streaming is paused, Internet connection remains active, incurring Packet Communication fees.

Accessing from Bookmark

Save up to 20 links in Streaming Bookmark.


- 1  → *Media Player* → *Streaming* → *Bookmark*

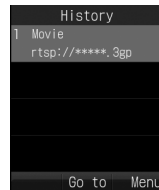


- 2 Select a bookmark

Accessing from History

Holds up to 20 previously accessed links.

- 1  → *Media Player* → *Streaming* → *History*



2 Select a history

Advanced

Advanced Settings (P.5-24)

- Changing Resolution of Video while Streaming
- Playing Video from Specified Point
- Saving File to Bookmark while Streaming
- Accessing Streaming Saved as Bookmark.
- Accessing Previously Accessed Streaming
- Editing Streaming Bookmark URL
- Saving Streaming Bookmark by Direct Entry
- Deleting Streaming Bookmark URL
- Editing History of Streaming
- Deleting History of Streaming

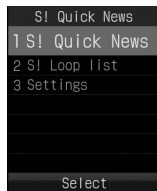
S! Quick News (Japanese)

View Yahoo! Keitai content updates for saved items.

- Select S! Quick News list or S! Loop list.
- Check for updates of items saved in S! Quick News (P.1-18, P.1-20).

Opening List

- 1  → *Entertainment* → *S!*
Quick News








- 2 *S! Quick News list or S! Loop list*

S! Quick News List






S! Quick News List

- : Unread Newsflash
- : Unread general news
- : Read Newsflash
- : Read General news
- : Newsflash/general news auto update unavailable

S! Loop List



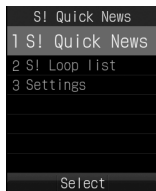
S! Loop List

- : Unread S! Loop
- : Read S! Loop
- : S! Loop auto update unavailable

Viewing Update Information

S! Quick News List Update Information




- 1  → *Entertainment* → *S! Quick News*



- 2 *S! Quick News list*

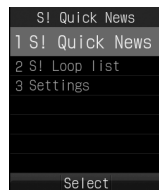


- 3 Select content → Select an item

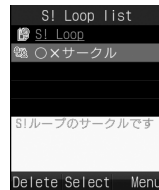
- Press  (List/Index) to return to S! Quick News list/Contents list.
- To connect to Internet and check for update, highlight an item and press  (Go to) and choose *Yes*.
- To view information on the next page, press  (Next) to open the next page.

S! Loop List Update Information




- 1  → *Entertainment* → *S! Quick News*



- 2 *S! Loop list*



- 3 Select an item → Select an entry

- Press  (List/Index) to return to S! Loop list/Contents list.
- To connect to Internet and check for update, highlight an item and press  (Go to) and choose *Yes*.
- To view information on the next page, press  (Next) to open the next page.

Registering S! Quick News List/ S! Loop List

Registering S! Quick News List

Register up to 1 newflash and 4 general news items in S! Quick News list.

- 1 → *Entertainment* → *S! Quick News*



- 2 *S! Quick News list*



- 3 *Register contents* → *Yes*



- 4 *Select content* → *Follow onscreen instructions*

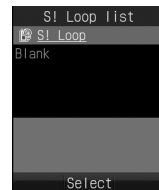
Registering S! Loop List

Register up to five entries in S! Loop list.

- 1 → *Entertainment* → *S! Quick News*



- 2 *S! Loop list*

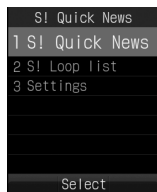


- 3 *S! Loop* → *Yes*

- For details on how to register S! Loop list, see the help menu in S! Loop.

Registering Entries Manually


- 1  → *Entertainment* → *S! Quick News*





- 2 *S! Quick News list* or *S! Loop list*





- 3 Refresh content

- To refresh an entry
Highlight content or S! Loop content
→  → *Refresh* → *Selected*
- To refresh multiple entries

 → *Refresh* → *Multiple* →
Check contents or S! Loop contents
to refresh →  (Refresh)

- To refresh all entries

 → *Refresh* → *All*
• Press  (Cancel) to cancel refresh in
process.

Deleting Entries

- 1  → *Entertainment* → *S! Quick News*




- 2 *S! Quick News list* or *S! Loop list*





- 3 Delete content



- To delete an entry

Highlight content or S! Loop content
→  (Delete) → *Yes*

- To delete multiple entries

 → *Delete* → *Multiple* →
Check contents or S! Loop contents
→  (Delete) → *Yes*

- To delete all entries

 → *Delete* → *All* → Enter
Phone Password →  (OK) → *Yes*

Advanced

Advanced Settings (P.5-25)

- Viewing Content Details
- Refreshing S! Quick News List
- Viewing S! Quick News from List
- Viewing S! Loop Content Details
- Refreshing S! Loop List
- Viewing S! Loop from List

S! Town (Japanese)

S! Town is an online communication application. Select an avatar and perform operations. In 3D virtual town, you can enjoy various events and communicate with other users.

- To use this function, *S! Town S! Appli* is required. This application is preinstalled in 920SC.
- The preinstalled *S! Town S! Appli* cannot be deleted.
- To use S! Town, Packet Communication fees apply. It may incur high charges.
- S! Town is unavailable if Internet access is restricted by subscription.

Using S! Town

When using S! Town for the first time, agree to the terms of service then complete user registration (free) and profile registration.

- For details on how to use S! Town, see the help menu in *S! Town S! Appli*.

1 ● → **Communication** →
S! Town → タイトルへ進む
(通信開始)

- Check registration status or cancel registration via Yahoo! Keitai. For details, see the help menu in *S! Town S! Appli*.
- An upgrade notice may appear when activating S! Town. Follow onscreen instructions to upgrade.

Advanced

Advanced Settings (P.5-26)

S! Loop (Japanese)

S! Loop is a communication service.

Using S! Loop

1 → *Communication* → *S! Loop*

- Connect to Internet and display the top menu page of S! Loop.

- For details on how to use S! Loop, see the help menu in *S! Loop*.


Advanced Settings

Yahoo! Keitai





Moving to Next Page

In a page,  → *Next*

Copying Text

In a page,  → *Copy text*

■ To copy selected text

Use  to move cursor to the first character to copy →  (Start) → Use  to specify range with →  (End)

■ To copy all text in text entry window

 (All)


Refreshing Page

In a page,  → *Refresh*

Entering URL to Open Another Site/Page



In a page,  → *Enter URL* → Enter URL

Entering URL Quickly



In URL entry window  → *Quick address list* → *.co.jp, .ne.jp, .ac.jp, .or.jp, http://, www., .com, or rtsp://*

Entering URL from History

■ From Yahoo! Keitai


 → *Yahoo! Keitai* → *Enter URL* → 
→ *EnterURL logs* → Select URL

■ From a page

 → *Enter URL* →  → *EnterURL logs*
→ Select URL

- In URL entry window, enter URL from History. Up to 10 URL logs appear, newest first. When maximum is reached, pages are automatically deleted oldest first.

Saving Document File

In a page, highlight document link →  (Select) → *Save*

■ To play file

Play

■ To view file details

Details

■ To return to page

Back to browser

- If file name exists confirmation appears, choose *Yes* to save under a different name. *No* to edit file name.

Saving Image/Background Image

In a page with an image, **Y'** → *Save files* → Select *Save items* and image or *Save BG image* → *Save*

■ To view image

Display

■ To set image to Wallpaper etc.

Set as (P.2-46 Setting Images to Wallpaper etc.)

■ To view image details

Details

■ To return to page

Back to browser

- When saving SVG-T/SWF files, save confirmation appears. Press **Y'** to execute other operations (P.2-44).
- If file name exists confirmation appears, choose *Yes* to save under a different name. *No* to edit file name.

Saving Background Sound

In a page playing background sound, **Y'** → *Save files* → *Save items* → **(Save)**

■ To play sound file

Play

■ To set sound file as Ringtone

Set as (P.2-46 Setting Sound File to Ringtone in Normal Mode)

■ To view sound file details

Details

■ To return to page

Back to browser

- If file name exists confirmation appears, choose *Yes* to save under a different name. *No* to edit file name.

Switching Browser

In a page, **Y'** → *Manage content* → *Switch to PC site browser* → *This page or Link*

- If a warning appears, press **(OK)** and choose *Yes* or *No*.
- *Link* can be selected only when a link is highlighted

Searching Text

In a page, **Y'** → *Manage content* → *Search* → Select text entry field → Enter text to search → Select search direction → **(Search)**

Moving to Top/Bottom of Page

In a page, **Y'** → *Manage content* → *Jump to top or Jump to bottom*

Sending URL

In a page, **Y'** → *Manage content* → *Send URL* → *S! Mail* or *SMS* → (P.4-3 Sending S! Mail **(2)**, P.4-8 Sending SMS Messages **(2)**)

Opening Previously Viewed Page

■ From Yahoo! Keitai

(Y) → *Yahoo! Keitai* → *History* → Select URL

■ From a page

In a page, **Y'** → *Manage content* → *History* → Select URL

- To open in a new tab, highlight URL, press **Y'**, and select *Open new tab*.
- Up to 50 accessed URLs are saved.

Deleting Access History

(Y) → *Yahoo! Keitai* → *History*

■ To delete an entry

Highlight URL → **Y'** → *Delete* → *Selected* → *Yes*

■ To delete multiple entries

Y' → *Delete* → *Multiple* → Check histories to delete → **(Delete)** → *Yes*

■ To delete all entries

Y' → *Delete* → *All* → Enter Phone Password → **(OK)** → *Yes*

- Alternatively, in a page, press **Y'** → *Manage content* → *History* → Highlight URL → **Y'** → *Delete*.

Zooming Page in/out

In a page, **Y'** → *Manage content* → *Zoom In/Out* → Use **(Zoom)** to select digit → **(Save)**

Viewing Flash[®]

In a page, open Flash[®] file and **Y'** → *Manage content* → *Flash[®] menu*


■ To pause/play

Pause or *Play*

■ To play from beginning

Play from start

Viewing Page Details

In a page,  → *Manage content* → *Details*


■ **To view page information**

Page information


■ **To view Server certificate**

Server certificate


Moving to Main Menu

In a page,  → *Yahoo! Keitai*

Changing Font Size


In a page,  → *Settings* → *Font size* → *Small*, *Standard*, or *Large*

Changing Character Code

In a page,  → *Settings* → *Encoding* → *Auto*, *ISO-2022-JP*, *ISO-8859-1*, *Shift_JIS*, *EUC-JP*, or *UTF-8*

- If page text appears garbled, changing character encoding may solve the problem.
-

Changing Scroll Unit

In a page,  → *Settings* → *Scroll unit* → *Single line*, *Half screen*, or *Whole screen*

Setting Show/Play of Image/Sound

In a page,  → *Settings* → *Downloads*


■ **To set image**

Images → *Show images* or *Do not show*


■ **To set sound**

Sounds → *Play sounds* or *Do not play*


Clearing Cache

In a page,  → *Settings* → *Memory manager* → *Clear cache* → *Yes*


Deleting Cookies

In a page,  → *Settings* → *Memory manager* → *Delete cookies* → *Yes*


Deleting Certificates

In a page,  → *Settings* → *Memory manager* → *Delete certificates* → *Yes*

Setting Manufacture Number Transmission


In a page,  → *Settings* → *Security* → *Manufacture number* → *On* or *Off*

Sending/Not Sending Referrer Information

In a page,  → *Settings* → *Security* → *Send referer* → *Send* or *Not send*


- Referrer is a link source URL information to be sent to Web server when accessing websites.
-

Enabling Cookies


In a page,  → *Settings* → *Security* → *Cookies* → *Enabled*, *Disable*, or *Confirm*

- Select *Confirm* to display confirmation for acceptance every time Cookie is saved.
 - Cookie automatically saves identification information of visitors in 9205C. Cookies contain user information allowing sites to recognize users and track preferences.
-

Enabling Script


In a page,  → *Settings* → *Security* → *Script* → *On*, *Ask NW access*, *Confirm*, or *Off*

Checking Root Certificates



In a page,  → *Settings* → *Security* → *Root certificates* → Select a certificate

- View electronic certificate preinstalled on 9205C.
-

Certificate Retention



In a page,  → *Settings* → *Security* → *Certificate retention* → *Per browsing*, *On*, or *Off*

Initializing Saved Information


In a page,  → *Settings* → *Initialized browser* → Enter Phone Password →  (OK) → *Yes*

- Initialize browser settings or information such as Bookmarks or Saved Pages.
-

Resetting Yahoo! Keitai Settings


In a page,  → *Settings* → *Reset settings* → Enter Phone Password →  (OK) → *Yes*

Opening Multiple Pages



Highlight page link →  → *Tab menu* → *Open new tab*

- Use tabs at top of window to open up to three pages.
- Yahoo! Keitai and PC sites cannot be open simultaneously.
- Some pages may open in a new tab automatically.
- When multiple tabs are open, some pages may be partially obscured. Close unnecessary tabs.

Using Multiple Pages

When multiple tabs are open,  → *Tab menu*



■ To switch between tabs

Switch to other tabs → Use  to move to another tab to view →  (Select)

■ To close selected tab

Close selected tab



■ To select and close a tab

Close other tabs → Use  to move to another tab to close →  (Select)

Exiting Browser

In a page,  → *Exit*

Saving Automatic Save-type Images

Highlight image link in a page →  (Select) →  (OK)

■ To view image

Display

■ To set image to Wallpaper


Set as (➡P.2-46 Setting Images to Wallpaper etc.)

■ To view image details

Details

■ To return to a page


Back to browser

- If file name exists confirmation appears, choose *Yes* to save under a different name. *No* to edit file name.
- When saving SVG-T/SWF files, save confirmation appears. Press  to execute other operations (➡P.2-44).


Zooming Image in/out

In image view,  (Full) →  (Zoom)


Viewing Details in Image View

In image view,  (Details)

Saving Saved Image to Wallpaper etc.

In image view,  (Set as) → (➡P.2-46 Setting Images to Wallpaper etc.)

Saving Manual Save-type Images


Highlight image link in a page →  (Select) → *Save*

■ To view image details



Details

■ To return to a page

Back to browser

- If file name exists confirmation appears, choose *Yes* to save under a different name. *No* to edit file name.
- When saving SVG-T/SWF files, save confirmation appears. Press  to execute other operations (➡P.2-44).

Saving Automatic Save-type Sound

Highlight sound link in a page →  (Select) →  (OK)

■ To play sound file

Play

■ To set sound file as Ringtone

Set as (➡P.2-46 Setting Sound File to Ringtone in Normal Mode)

■ To view sound file details

Details

■ To return to a page

Back to browser

- If file name exists confirmation appears, choose *Yes* to save under a different name. *No* to edit file name.

Saving Manual Save-type Sound

Highlight sound link in a page → (Select) → Save

■ To play sound file

Play

■ To set saved sound file as Ringtone

Set as (ⓂP.2-46 Setting Sound File to Ringtone in Normal Mode)

■ To view sound file details

Details

■ To return to a page

Back to browser

- If file name exists confirmation appears, choose *Yes* to save under a different name. *No* to edit file name.

Setting Saved Sound File as Ringtone

In Player window, (Stop) → (Set as) → (ⓂP.2-46 Setting Sound File to Ringtone in Normal Mode)

Saving Automatic Save-type Video

Highlight video link in a page → (Select) → (OK)

■ To play video

Play

■ To set saved video file as Ringtone

Set as (ⓂP.2-46 Setting Video File to Ringtone in Normal Mode)

■ To view video file details

Details

■ To return to a page

Back to browser

- If file name exists confirmation appears, choose *Yes* to save under a different name. *No* to edit file name.

Saving Manual Save-type Video

Highlight video link in a page → (Select) → Save

■ To play video

Play

■ To set video file as Ringtone

Set as (ⓂP.2-46 Setting Video File to Ringtone in Normal Mode)

■ To view video file details

Details

■ To return to a page

Back to browser

- If file name exists confirmation appears, choose *Yes* to save under a different name. *No* to edit file name.

Setting Saved Video File as Ringtone

In Player window of saved video, (Stop) → (Set as) → (ⓂP.2-46 Setting Sound File to Ringtone in Normal Mode)

Saving Automatic Save-type Flash®

Highlight Flash® link in a page → (Select) → (OK)

■ To view Flash®

Display

■ To set Flash® to Wallpaper

Set as → *Wallpaper* → (Set)

■ To view Flash® details

Details

■ To return to a page

Back to browser

- If file name exists confirmation appears, choose *Yes* to save under a different name. *No* to edit file name.

Operations on Saved Flash®

Open Flash®,

■ To toggle Full Screen/Normal view

Full Screen view or *Normal view*

■ To zoom in/out

Zoom → Use (Ⓜ) or (Ⓜ) to zoom in or out → To scroll, → To return to previous,

■ To pause/resume Flash® image

Pause or *Resume*

■ To change image quality

Quality → *High*, *Medium*, or *Low*


■ To rotate image by 90 degrees

Rotate → *90°R* or *90°L*


■ To view details

Details

Setting Flash®

Open Flash®,  (Set as) → *Wallpaper*


Saving Manual Save-type Flash®

Highlight Flash® link in a page →  (Select) → *Save*

■ To view Flash®

Display

■ To set Flash® to Wallpaper

Set as → *Wallpaper* →  (Set)

■ To view Flash® details

Details

■ To return to a page

Back to browser

- If file name exists confirmation appears, choose *Yes* to save under a different name. *No* to edit file name.

PC Site Browser


Moving to Next Page




In a page,  → *Next*

Copying Text

In a page,  → *Copy text*

■ To copy selected text

Use  to move cursor to the first character →

 (Start) → Use  to specify range →  (End)

■ To copy all text in text entry window

 (All)


Refreshing Page

In a page,  → *Refresh*

Entering URL to Open Page


In a page,  → *Enter URL* → Enter URL


Entering URL Quickly

In URL entry window  → *Quick address list* → *.co.jp, .ne.jp, .ac.jp, .or.jp, http://, www., .com, or rtsp://*

Entering URL from History


■ From PC Site Browser

 → *Yahoo! Keitai* → *PC site browser* →

Enter URL →  → *EnterURL logs* →

Select URL

■ From a page

 → *Enter URL* → *Select URL entry field* →

 → *EnterURL logs* → *Select URL*

- In URL entry window, enter URL from History. Up to 10 URL logs appear, newest first. When limit is reached, pages are automatically deleted oldest first.

Saving Document File

In a page, highlight file link →  (Select) → *Save*

■ To play file

Play

■ To view file details


Details

■ To return to a page


Back to browser

- If file name exists confirmation appears, choose *Yes* to save under a different name. *No* to edit file name.

Switching Browser

In a page,  → *Manage content* → *Switch to*

Yahoo! Keitai → *This page* or *Link*

- If a warning appears, press  (OK) and choose *Yes* or *No*.
- *Link* can be selected only when a link is highlighted.

Searching Text

In a page, $\sqrt{Y?}$ → *Manage content* → *Search* → Select text entry field → Enter text to search → Select search direction → \square (Search)

Moving to Top/Bottom of Page

In a page, $\sqrt{Y?}$ → *Manage content* → *Jump to top* or *Jump to bottom*

Sending URL

In a page, $\sqrt{Y?}$ → *Manage content* → *Send URL* → *S! Mail or SMS* → (P.4-3 Sending S! Mail ②, P.4-8 Sending SMS Messages ②)

Opening Previously Viewed Pages

■ From Yahoo! Keitai

\odot → *Yahoo! Keitai* → *PC site browser* → *History* → Select URL

■ From a page

$\sqrt{Y?}$ → *Manage content* → *History* → Select URL to display

- To open in a new tab, highlight URL, press $\sqrt{Y?}$, and select *Open new tab*.
- Up to 50 accessed page URLs are saved.

Deleting Access History

\odot → *Yahoo! Keitai* → *PC site browser* → *History*

■ To delete an entry

Highlight URL → $\sqrt{Y?}$ → *Delete* → *Selected* → *Yes*

■ To delete multiple entries

$\sqrt{Y?}$ → *Delete* → *Multiple* → Check entries → \square (Delete) → *Yes*

■ To delete all entries

$\sqrt{Y?}$ → *Delete* → *All* → Enter Phone Password → \odot (OK) → *Yes*

- Alternatively, in a page, press $\sqrt{Y?}$ → *Manage content* → *History* → Highlight URL → $\sqrt{Y?}$ → *Delete*.

Zooming Page in/out

In a page, $\sqrt{Y?}$ → *Manage content* → *Zoom In/Out* → Use \odot to select digit → \odot (Save)

Viewing Flash[®]

Open Flash[®] file in a page, $\sqrt{Y?}$ → *Manage content* → *Flash[®] menu*

■ To pause/play

Pause or *Play*

■ To play from beginning

Play from start

Viewing Page Details

In a page, $\sqrt{Y?}$ → *Manage content* → *Details*

■ To view page information

Page information

■ To view Server certificate

Server certificate

Opening Main Menu

In a page, $\sqrt{Y?}$ → *Homepage*

Changing Font Size

In a page, $\sqrt{Y?}$ → *Settings* → *Font size* → *Small*, *Standard*, or *Large*

Changing Character Code

In a page, $\sqrt{Y?}$ → *Settings* → *Encoding* → *Auto*, *ISO-2022-JP*, *ISO-8859-1*, *Shift_JIS*, *EUC-JP*, or *UTF-8*

- If page text appears garbled, changing character encoding may solve the problem.

Changing Scroll Unit

In a page, $\sqrt{Y?}$ → *Settings* → *Scroll unit* → *Single line*, *Half screen*, or *Whole screen*

Setting Show/Play of Image/Sound

In a page, $\sqrt{Y?}$ → *Settings* → *Downloads*


■ To set image

Images → *Show images* or *Do not show*


■ To set sound

Sounds → *Play sounds* or *Do not play*


Clearing Cache

In a page,  → *Settings* → *Memory manager* → *Clear cache* → *Yes*


Deleting Cookies

In a page,  → *Settings* → *Memory manager* → *Delete cookies* → *Yes*


Deleting Certificates

In a page,  → *Settings* → *Memory manager* → *Delete certificates* → *Yes*

Setting Manufacture Number Transmission


In a page,  → *Settings* → *Security* → *Manufacture number* → *On* or *Off*

Sending/Not Sending Referer Information

In a page,  → *Settings* → *Security* → *Send referer* → *Send* or *Not send*


- Referer is a link source URL to be sent to server when accessing websites.

Enabling Cookies


In a page,  → *Settings* → *Security* → *Cookies* → *Enabled*, *Disable*, or *Confirm*

- Select *Confirm* to show confirmation every time before a Cookie is saved.
- Cookies contain identification information allowing sites to recognize users and track preferences.

Enabling Script


In a page,  → *Settings* → *Security* → *Script* → *On*, *Ask NW access*, *Confirm*, or *Off*

Checking Root Certificates


In a page,  → *Settings* → *Security* → *Root certificates* → *Select certificate*

- View electronic certificate preinstalled on 920SC.

Certificate Retention



In a page,  → *Settings* → *Security* → *Certificate retention* → *Per browsing*, *On*, or *Off*

Setting to Show Warning Messages

In a page,  → *Settings* → *Warning messages* → *Activate PC site browser* or *Switch to Yahoo! Keitai* → *On* or *Off*



- Always show or hide warning when activating PC Site Browser, or switching between Yahoo! Keitai or PC Site Browser or vice versa.

Initializing Saved Information


In a page,  → *Settings* → *Initialized browser* → *Enter Phone Password* →  (OK) → *Yes*

- Initialize browser settings or information such as Bookmarks or Saved Pages.

Resetting PC Site Browser


In a page,  → *Settings* → *Reset settings* → *Enter Phone Password* →  (OK) → *Yes*

Opening Multiple Pages



Highlight page link →  → *Tab menu* → *Open new tab*

- Use tabs too toggle up to three pages.
- Yahoo! Keitai and PC sites cannot be open simultaneously.
- Some pages may open in a new tab automatically.
- When multiple tabs are open, contents may be partially obscured. Close unnecessary tabs.

Using Multiple Pages

When opening multiple tabs,  → *Tab menu*



■ To switch between tabs

Switch to other tab → Use  to move to another tab to view →  (Select)


■ To close selected tab

Close selected tab

■ To select and close a tab

Close other tabs → Use  to move to another tab to close →  (Select)

Changing Display Width

In a page,  → *Small screen* or *PC screen*

Page Operations

Saving Phone Number/E-mail Address

■ To save as a new entry

In a page containing phone number/
E-mail address, select phone number or E-mail
address → *Save Number* → *Phone* or *USIM* →
New → Enter each item (☛ P.2-18 Creating New
Entries ②)

■ To update entry

In a page containing phone number/Email address,
select phone number/E-mail address → *Save
Number* → *Phone* or *USIM* → *Update* →
Search Phonebook and select entry → Enter each
item (☛ P.2-18 Creating New Entries ②)

Sending Mail to Number/Mail Address

In a page containing phone number/E-mail address,
select phone number/E-mail address → *Create
Message* → *S! Mail* or *SMS* → (☛ P.4-3 Sending S!
Mail ⑤, P.4-8 Sending SMS Messages ⑤)

- Available phone numbers, Mail addresses appear underlined.

Calling Phone Number

In a page containing phone number, select phone
number → *Voice call* or *Video call*

- Available phone numbers appear underlined.


Using URL to Open Another Page


Select URL in a page

- Available URLs appear underlined.

Bookmarks




Opening Bookmarked Site

In a page,  → *Bookmarks* → *Open list* →
Select bookmark




- To open in a new tab, highlight bookmark →  →
Select *Open new tab*.

Editing Bookmark Title or URL




■ From Yahoo! Keitai

 → *Yahoo! Keitai* → *Bookmarks* →
Highlight bookmark →  (Edit) → Select Title
field → Edit title → Select URL → Edit URL →
 (Save)

■ From PC Site Browser




 → *Yahoo! Keitai* → *PC site browser* →
Bookmarks → Highlight bookmark →  (Edit) → Select Title field → Edit title → Select
URL → Edit URL →  (Save)

■ From a page




 → *Bookmarks* → *Open list* → Highlight
bookmark →  (Edit) → Select Title field →
Edit title → Select URL → Edit URL →  (Save)

Saving Bookmark by Direct Entry


■ From Yahoo! Keitai

 → *Yahoo! Keitai* → *Bookmarks* → 
→ *Add bookmark* → Select title field → Enter
title → Select URL field → Enter URL →  (Save)

■ From PC Site Browser

 → *Yahoo! Keitai* → *PC site browser* →
Bookmarks →  → *Add bookmark* →
Select title field → Enter title → Select URL field
→ Enter URL →  (Save)

■ From a page



 → *Bookmarks* → *Save* → Enter title

Sending Bookmark URL



■ From Yahoo! Keitai

 → *Yahoo! Keitai* → *Bookmarks* →
Highlight bookmark →  → *Send* → *Via
message* → *S! Mail* or *SMS* → (☛ P.4-3 Sending
S! Mail ②, P.4-8 Sending SMS Messages ②)

■ From PC Site Browser



 → *Yahoo! Keitai* → *PC site browser* →
Bookmarks → Highlight bookmark →  →
Send → *Via message* → *S! Mail* or *SMS* →
(☛ P.4-3 Sending S! Mail ②, P.4-8 Sending SMS
Messages ②)

■ From a page



 → *Bookmarks* → *Open list* → Highlight
bookmark →  → *Send* → *Via message* →
S! Mail or *SMS* → (☛ P.4-3 Sending S! Mail ②,
P.4-8 Sending SMS Messages ②)

Sending Bookmark URL via Bluetooth®




■ From Yahoo! Keitai

● → Yahoo! Keitai → Bookmarks → Highlight bookmark →  → Send → Via bluetooth → Check bookmarks →  (Send) → Yes → (P.11-7 Sending 2)

■ From PC Site Browser


● → Yahoo! Keitai → PC site browser → Bookmarks → Highlight bookmark →  → Send → Via bluetooth → Check bookmarks →  (Send) → Yes → (P.11-7 Sending 2)

■ From a page


 → Bookmarks → Open list → Highlight bookmark →  → Send → Via bluetooth → Check bookmarks →  (Send) → Yes → (P.11-7 Sending 2)

Sending Bookmark URL via Infrared



■ From Yahoo! Keitai

● → Yahoo! Keitai → Bookmarks → Highlight bookmark →  → Send → Via infrared (P.11-3)

■ From PC Site Browser



● → Yahoo! Keitai → PC site browser → Bookmarks → Highlight bookmark →  → Send → Via infrared (P.11-3)

■ From a page



 → Bookmarks → Open list → Highlight bookmark →  → Send → Via infrared (P.11-3)

Changing Bookmark Order




■ From Yahoo! Keitai

● → Yahoo! Keitai → Bookmarks → Highlight bookmark →  → Change order → Use  to move cursor to the target location → ● (Select)

■ From PC Site Browser

● → Yahoo! Keitai → PC site browser → Bookmarks → Highlight bookmark →  → Change order → Use  to move cursor to the target location → ● (Select)


■ From a page

 → Bookmarks → Open list → Highlight bookmark →  → Change order → Use  to move cursor to the target location → ● (Select)



Deleting Yahoo! Keitai Bookmark

● → Yahoo! Keitai → Bookmarks


■ To delete an entry



Highlight bookmark →  → Delete → Selected → Yes

■ To delete multiple entries

 → Delete → Multiple → Check bookmarks →  (Delete) → Yes

■ To delete all entries


 → Delete → All → Enter Phone Password → ● (OK) → Yes

• Alternatively, in a page, press  → Bookmarks → Open list → Highlight bookmark →  → Delete.



Deleting PC Site Bookmark

● → Yahoo! Keitai → PC site browser → Bookmarks


■ To delete an entry



Highlight bookmark →  → Delete → Selected → Yes

■ To delete multiple entries

 → Delete → Multiple → Check bookmarks →  (Delete) → Yes


■ To delete all entries

 → Delete → All → Enter Phone Password → ● (OK) → Yes


• Alternatively, in a page, press  → Bookmarks → Open list → Highlight bookmark →  → Delete.

Saving Bookmark to Data Folder



■ From Yahoo! Keitai

● → Yahoo! Keitai → Bookmarks →  → Save to data folder → Phone or Memory card → Yes

■ From PC Site Browser

● → Yahoo! Keitai → PC site browser → Bookmarks →  → Save to data folder → Phone or Memory card → Yes


■ From a page


 → Bookmarks → Open list →  → Save to data folder → Phone or Memory card → Yes

• The save location can be set to Memory card if inserted.

Saved Pages

Opening Saved Page in a Page

 → *Saved pages* → *Open list* → Select page



- To open in a new tab, highlight page →  → select *Open new tab*.

Renaming Saved Page



■ From Yahoo! Keitai

 → *Yahoo! Keitai* → *Saved pages* → Highlight entry →  → *Rename* → Enter name

■ From PC Site Browser





 → *Yahoo! Keitai* → *PC site browser* → *Saved pages* → Highlight entry →  → *Rename* → Enter name

■ From a page





 → *Saved pages* → *Open list* → Highlight entry →  → *Rename* → Enter name

Changing Order of Saved Pages





■ From Yahoo! Keitai

 → *Yahoo! Keitai* → *Saved pages* → Highlight entry →  → *Change order* → Use  to move cursor to the target location →  (Select)

■ From PC Site Browser

 → *Yahoo! Keitai* → *PC site browser* → *Saved pages* → Highlight entry →  → *Change order* → Use  to move cursor to the target location →  (Select)


■ From a page

 → *Saved pages* → *Open list* → Highlight entry →  → *Change order* → Use  to move cursor to the target location →  (Select)



Deleting Saved Pages in Yahoo! Keitai

 → *Yahoo! Keitai* → *Saved pages*



■ To delete an entry



Highlight entry →  → *Delete* → *Selected* → *Yes*

■ To delete multiple entries


 → *Delete* → *Multiple* → Check entries →  (Delete) → *Yes*

■ To delete all entries


 → *Delete* → *All* → Enter Phone Password →  (OK) → *Yes*

- Alternatively, in a page, press  → *Saved pages* → *Open list* → Highlight entry →  → *Delete*.



Deleting Saved Pages in PC Site Browser

 → *Yahoo! Keitai* → *PC site browser* → *Saved pages*



■ To delete an entry



Highlight entry →  → *Delete* → *Selected* → *Yes*

■ To delete multiple entries

 → *Delete* → *Multiple* → Check entries →  (Delete) → *Yes*


■ To delete all entries

 → *Delete* → *All* → Enter Phone Password →  (OK) → *Yes*

- Alternatively, in a page, press  → *Saved pages* → *Open list* → Highlight entry →  → *Delete*.



Streaming

Changing Resolution of Video while Streaming



While streaming,  → *Resolution* → 240 * 180, 176 * 144, or 128 * 96

- Same operation is available during a pause.


Playing Video from Specified Point

While streaming,  → *Time search* → Enter time →  (Play)


Saving File to Bookmark while Streaming

While streaming,  → *Add bookmark* → Select title field → Enter title → Select URL field → Enter URL →  (Save)

Accessing Streaming Saved as Bookmark.



While streaming,  → *View bookmark* → Select an entry

Accessing Previously Accessed Streaming




While streaming,  → *View history* → Select a history

Editing Streaming Bookmark URL

■ From main menu



● → *Media Player* → *Streaming* → *Bookmark* → Highlight bookmark →  → *Edit bookmark* → Select title field → Edit title → Select URL → Edit URL →  (Save)

■ From streaming window




While streaming,  → *View bookmark* → Highlight entry to edit →  → *Edit bookmark* → Select title field → Edit title → Select URL → Edit URL →  (Save)

Saving Streaming Bookmark by Direct Entry

■ From main menu

● → *Media Player* → *Streaming* → *Bookmark* →  → *Add bookmark* → Select title field → Enter title → Select URL field → Enter URL →  (Save)


■ From streaming window

While streaming,  → *View bookmark* →  → *Add bookmark* → Select title field → Enter title → Select URL field → Enter URL →  (Save)



Deleting Streaming Bookmark URL

● → *Media Player* → *Streaming* → *Bookmark*

■ To delete an entry



Highlight bookmark →  → *Delete* → *Selected* → *Yes*

■ To delete multiple entries



 → *Delete* → *Multiple* → Check bookmarks →  (Delete) → *Yes*

■ To delete all entries

 → *Delete* → *All* → *Yes*

• Alternatively, in streaming window, press  → *View bookmark* → Highlight URL →  → *Delete*.


Editing History of Streaming

● → *Media Player* → *Streaming* → *History* → Highlight entry →  → *Edit history* → Select title field → Edit title → Select URL → Enter URL →  (Save)



Deleting History of Streaming

● → *Media Player* → *Streaming* → *History*


■ To delete an entry



Highlight URL →  → *Delete* → *Selected* → *Yes*

■ To delete multiple entries

 → *Delete* → *Multiple* → Check URLs to delete →  (Delete) → *Yes*


■ To delete all entries

 → *Delete* → *All* → *Yes*


• Alternatively, in streaming window, press  → *View history* → Highlight URL →  → *Delete*.

S! Quick News (Japanese)

Viewing Content Details


In S! Quick News list, highlight content →  → *Details*


Refreshing S! Quick News List

In S! Quick News list, select content →  → *Refresh*


• Press  (Cancel) to cancel refresh.

Viewing S! Quick News from List


In S! Quick News list, select content → Highlight item →  → *Access website* → *Yes*


• Press  (Cancel) to cancel.

Viewing S! Loop Content Details


In S! Loop list, highlight content →  → *Details*


Refreshing S! Loop List

In S! Loop list, select content → Highlight item →  → *Refresh*

• Press  (Cancel) to cancel refresh in process.

Viewing S! Loop from List

In S! Loop list, select content → Highlight item →  → *Access website* → *Yes*

• Press  (Cancel) to cancel.

Refreshing S! Quick News List Automatically

● → Entertainment → S! Quick News → Settings → Auto refresh → S! Quick News

■ To refresh Newsflash automatically

Flash news → ● (OK) → 1 hour, 2 hours, 4 hours, 8 hours, or Off

■ To refresh general news automatically

General → ● (OK) → On or Off

- Auto refresh is executed based on the set time. To confirm next time for refresh, highlight content in S! Quick News list, press **[Y]**, and select *Details*.
- Set *General* to *On* to refresh automatically once a day.
- *Flash news* auto refresh is not executed from midnight to early morning. If *General* is set, news are refreshed automatically during that period.
- Auto update is not executed while roaming. Refresh news manually (☛P.5-12).
- Auto refresh may fail outside service area or where signal conditions are poor.
- If auto refresh fails, update news manually (☛P.5-12).
- When USIM Card has been replaced, auto refresh is set to *Off*.

Refreshing S! Loop List Automatically

● → Entertainment → S! Quick News → Settings → Auto refresh → S! Loop → ● (OK) → On or Off

- Auto refresh is executed once in 4 hours. S! Loop list auto refresh is not executed from midnight to early morning.
- Auto refresh is executed based on the set time. To confirm next time for refresh, highlight content in S! Quick News list, press **[Y]**, and select *Details*.
- Auto update is not executed while roaming. Refresh news manually (☛P.5-12).
- Auto refresh may fail outside service area or where signal conditions are poor.
- If auto refresh has failed, update news manually (☛P.5-12).
- When USIM Card has been replaced, auto refresh is set to *Off*.

Deleting S! Quick News List Automatically

● → Entertainment → S! Quick News → Settings → Delete S! Quick News List → Enter Phone Password → ● (OK) → Yes

S! Town (Japanese)

Using S! Town Library

● → Communication → Highlight S! Town → **[E]** (Library)

- Activate S! Appli from S! Town Library. *S! Town* may be activated for some S! Applis.
- When S! Town-compatible S! Applis are downloaded, it is automatically saved in library.
- Save S! Town-compatible S! Applis which expands S! Town functions to Library.

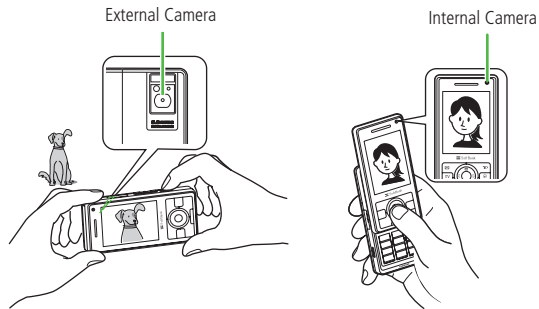
Camera & Imaging



Mobile Camera	6-2
Mobile Camera Precautions	6-2
Using Display as Viewfinder	6-3
Camera Mode	6-4
Single Shot	6-5
Capturing Options	6-7
Multi Shot	6-7
Photo Combination	6-8
Capturing Still Images with Frame	6-9
Panorama Shot	6-9
Video Mode	6-10
Recording Video	6-10
Editing Images	6-12
Editing Still Images	6-12
Compositing Still Images	6-13
Create Flash®	6-13
Printing Still Images	6-14
Printing via Bluetooth®	6-14
Printing via USB	6-15
Advanced Settings	
Capturing Still Images	6-15
Recording Videos	6-17
Editing Still Images	6-18

Mobile Camera

Capture pictures (still images) or record videos. Capture still images in JPEG, or videos in 3GP format. Toggle Internal Camera and External Camera.




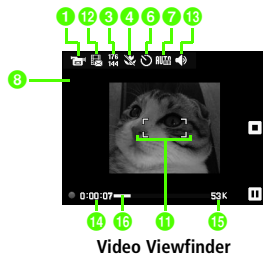
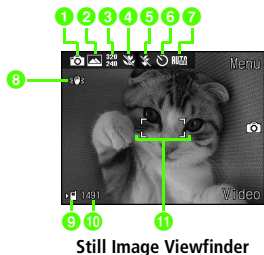
Mobile Camera Precautions

- Use a dry soft cloth to remove debris from camera lens.
- Avoid camera shake; hold 9205C steady or place it on a stable surface and use Self-timer to prevent objectionable image blur.
- Do not expose 9205C to devices with static electricity at use of camera.
- Mobile Camera employs high precision technology, however, some pixels may seem brighter or darker than others.
- Leaving 9205C in a hot place for an extended period before image capture/save may affect image quality.
- Exposing lens to direct sunlight may affect color filter.
- The quality of images captured in *Panorama shot* mode may be lower than those captured with other modes.
- When battery is low, camera may be unavailable.




Using Display as Viewfinder

Initial Viewfinder orientation changes with handset position. When 920SC is closed, Viewfinder appears in Landscape; when open, it appears in Portrait. Moreover, opening or closing 920SC with Camera active changes orientation.




















- This guide describes how to capture images or record videos in Landscape with External Camera.
- This guide describes camera operations with all keys unlocked.
 - With keys locked (➔P.1-8) and 920SC closed, press  for 2+ seconds. Unlock Key temporarily message appears. Choose *Yes* to activate Camera.



1 Mode













-  : Camera mode (Normal)
-  : Camera mode (Scene)
-  : Video mode

2 Scene/Shooting mode

-  : Auto
-  : Portrait
-  : Landscape
-  : Sports
-  : Night
-  : Indoor
-  : Beach/Snow
-  : Sunset
-  : Dusk/Dawn
-  : Fall color
-  : Against light
-  : Firework
-  : Text
-  : Single shot
-  : Multi-shot (6 shots)
-  : Multi-shot (9 shots)
-  : Photo Combination
-  : Frame shot
-  : Panorama shot

3 Shooting Size

Still Image

- | | |
|---|---|
|  : 5M (2560x1920) |  : 5M (1920x2560) |
|  : 3M (2048x1536) |  : 3M (1536x2048) |
|  : 2M (1600x1200) |  : 2M (1200x1600) |
|  : 1.3M (1280x960) |  : 1.3M (960x1280) |
|  : VGA (640x480) |  : VGA (480x640) |
|  : Standby (320x240) |  : Standby (240x320) |

Video

-  : 320x240
-  : 176x144
-  : 128x96

4 Macro

-  : On
-  : Off

5 Flash








-  : Auto
-  : On
-  : Red-eye reduction
-  : Off

6 Self-timer

-  : Off
-  : 3 seconds
-  : 5 seconds
-  : 10 seconds

7 White balance

-  : Auto
-  : Daylight
-  : Incandescent
-  : Fluorescent
-  : Cloudy

- 8 Anti-Shake (When set)
 : Anti-Shake On
- 9 Save to
 : Phone  : Memory card, Digital camera, or Ask each time
- 10 Available remaining shooting number
- 11 Focus frame
- 12 Recording time
 : For S! Mail  : Normal
- 13 Record sound
 : Sound On  : Sound Off
- 14 Elapsed recording time
- 15 Total data size (*For S! Mail*)/Total recording time (*Normal*)
- 16 Progress bar

Camera Mode

Select image size in Camera mode; select Shooting mode to suit subject. In Camera mode, select from Normal or Scene mode. In Shooting mode, set Single shot, Multi-shot, Photo Combination, Panorama or Frame shot. Captured images are saved to *Pictures*. Insert Memory Card to save images to *Digital camera*. See available settings in each Camera mode below:

Camera	External Camera		Internal Camera
	Normal	Scene	
Camera Mode			-
Image Orientation	Portrait/ Landscape*	Portrait/ Landscape*	Portrait
Multi-shot	Yes	No	Yes
Photo Combination	Yes	No	No
Frame shot	Yes	No	No
Panorama shot	Yes	No	No
Auto focus	Yes	Yes	No
Macro	Yes	Yes	No

* In Portrait when 920SC is open and in Landscape when closed.

- In Scene mode, Saturation, Sharpness, Effect and Flash settings are unavailable.

Shooting Size

Camera & Camera Mode	Shooting Size
External Camera	
Landscape	5M (2560 x 1920)
	3M (2048 x 1536)
	2M (1600 x 1200)
	1.3M (1280 x 960)
	VGA (640 x 480)
Standby (320 x 240)	
Portrait	5M (1920 x 2560)
	3M (1536 x 2048)
	2M (1200 x 1600)
	1.3M (960 x 1280)
	VGA (480 x 640)
Standby (240 x 320)	
Internal Camera	Standby (240 x 320)

* Complete Panorama images measure up to 550 x 2000 (Portrait) or 2400 x 400 (Landscape) pixels.

- When Memory Card is inserted and save location is set to *Digital camera*, 320 x 240 or 240 x 320 pixel images are automatically saved to *Memory card*.
- A still image captured in Landscape appears in Landscape when viewed in full screen.


Shooting Mode

Shooting Mode	Description
Single shot	Capture single images, select size for purpose; attach images to S! Mail, save as Wallpaper, etc.
Multi-shot	Press shutter once to capture six or nine sequential images.
Photo Combination	Capture sequential images manually. Select Frame to automatically combine images into a composite image.
Frame shot	Capture a still image with Frame.
Panorama shot	Ideal for landscape. Capture up to six images to automatically composite into a single panoramic image.

Single Shot






1 (2+ seconds)








- Press  (Photo) for Camera mode.
- Adjust settings before capturing as required.

2 Frame image in Viewfinder




- Press  or , or  to enlarge or reduce image.
- Use  or  to brighten or darken image.

3  (halfway) → 










- Press  halfway in focus. Press  completely to capture.
- Alternatively press  () to capture.
- To redo, press .











4  (Save)

- Use  half press with Auto Focus. Frame turns green when image is in focus. Frame turns brown if image is not in focus. Available when *Auto focus* is set to *On*.

Shortcut Key Operations

Press assigned key to change settings. Available shortcuts vary by mode or setting status.

Key	Item	Description
	Mode	Normal, Scene
	Shooting mode	Single shot, Multi-shot (6 shots), Multi-shot (9 shots), Photo Combination, Frame shot, and Panorama shot
	Self-timer	Off, 3 seconds, 5 seconds, and 10 seconds
	Switch camera	External camera, Internal camera
	Macro	On, Off
	Flash	Auto, On, Red-eye reduction, Off
	Quick view	Phone, Memory card, Digital camera
	Mode switch	—
	Zoom*	—

Key	Item	Description
	Brightness	—
	Flash	Use  to switch modes ( when in Portrait)
	Self-timer	Use  to switch modes ( when in Portrait)
	Macro	Use  to switch modes ( when in Portrait)
	Screen display	Use  to switch modes ( when in Portrait)

* Up to 3x optical zoom, and 4x digital zoom.

Advanced

Advanced Settings (P.6-15)

- Switching to Internal/External Camera
- Switching Camera Modes
- Switching Shooting Mode
- Setting Shooting Size
- Setting Macro
- Setting Flash
- Setting Face Link
- Setting Self-timer
- Setting White Balance
- Setting Effect (Color Tone)
- Viewing Captured Pictures
- Viewing Shortcuts Assigned to Keys when Capturing Still Images
- Entering File Name of Captured Still Image
- Enlarging Captured Still Image
- Deleting Images Displayed by Quick Play
- Playing Slide Show
- Viewing Quick Play Image Details

Settings

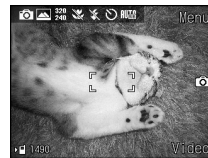
- Show or hide Indicators (P.12-8)
- Activate or cancel Anti-Shake (P.12-8)
- Activate or cancel Auto Focus (P.12-8)

- Activate or cancel Digital Zoom (P.12-8)
- Activate or cancel Auto Save (P.12-8)
- Set Contrast (P.12-8)
- Set Saturation (P.12-8)
- Set Sharpness (P.12-8)
- Select Quality (P.12-9)
- Set ISO (P.12-9)
- Set Exposure metering (P.12-9)
- Set save location (P.12-9)
- Show or hide Guideline (P.12-9)
- Set Shutter sound (P.12-9)

Capturing Options

Multi Shot

1 (2+ seconds)



- Press (Photo) for Camera mode.

2 Highlight → Multi-shot → Select image count



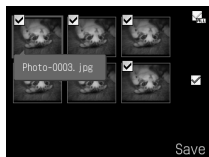
- Adjust settings before capturing as required.

3 Frame image in Viewfinder



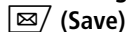
- Press / , or to enlarge or reduce image.
- Use or to brighten or darken image.

4 or ()



- To redo, press .

5 Check images to save →



- Auto Focus cannot be used for Multi Shot.

Photo Combination

1 (2+ seconds)



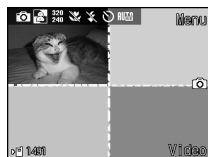
- Press (Photo) for Camera mode.

2 → Highlight →

Photo Combination →

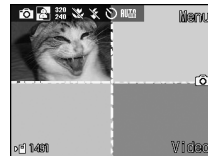
(List) → Select a frame

→ (OK)



- Adjust settings before capturing as required.

3 Frame image in Viewfinder



- Press / , or to enlarge or reduce image.
- Use or to brighten or darken image.

4 Apply selected frame and press or ()



- To redo, press .

5 (Save)

- Auto Focus cannot be used in Photo Combination.

Capturing Still Images with Frame

1 (2+ seconds)



- Press  (Photo) for Camera mode.







2 → **Highlight** → *Frame shot* → (List) → **Select a frame** → (OK)



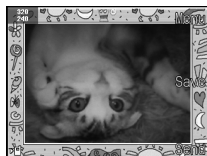
- Adjust settings before capturing as required.


3 **Frame image in Viewfinder**



- Press /, or / to enlarge or reduce image.
- Use  or  to brighten or darken image.

4 or ()



- To redo, press /X/E.

5 (Save)

- In Frame shot mode, Auto Focus is unavailable.

Panorama Shot

1 (2+ seconds)



- Press  (Photo) for Camera mode.

2 → **Highlight** → *Panorama shot*



- Adjust settings before capturing as required.

3 Frame image in Viewfinder



- Press /, or to enlarge or reduce image.
- Use or to brighten or darken image.

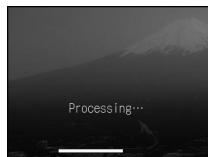
4 or ()



- To redo, press **Clear/X/E**.

5 Move 920SC to capture an image (vertically or horizontally) → Adjust small black border inside big border to automatically capture image

6 Repeat Step 5 to capture range → or (Stop)



- Capturing ends. Alternatively, capturing six images automatically ends capturing.
- To redo, press **Clear/X/E**.

7 Create panoramic image automatically → (Save)

- Depending on the number of images to be captured, producing may take time.

- Auto Focus is not available in Panorama.
- Move 920SC slowly to capture panoramic image.
- Panorama is ideal for capturing landscapes. Stand at least ten meters from subject. If too close panoramic image creation may fail.
- Low light or high contrast may hinder panoramic image creation.

Video Mode

Capture clips easily. Files are saved in 3GP format to *Videos* folder in Data Folder. When recording a video to attach to or insert into an S! Mail, set Recording time to *For S! Mail* (P.6-17).

Recording Video

1 → Camera → Record video









- Adjust settings before capturing as required.

2 Frame a capturing object on Viewfinder



- Press /, or to enlarge or reduce image.
- Use or to brighten or darken image.














3  or  ()4  or  ()

- Capturing ends. When recordable time has elapsed, recording automatically ends.

5  (Save)

Shortcut Key Operations

Press assigned key to change settings. Available shortcuts vary by mode or setting status.

Key	Item	Description
	Shooting mode	For S! Mail, Normal
	Self-timer	Off, 3 seconds, 5 seconds, and 10 seconds
	Switch camera	External camera, Internal camera
	Record sound	Sound On, Sound Off
	Switch Photo/Video	—
	Zoom*	—
	Brightness	—
	Flash	 to switch modes
	Self-timer	 to switch modes
	Macro	 to switch modes
	Screen display	 to switch modes











* Up to 3x optical zoom, and 4x digital zoom.

Advanced

Advanced Settings P.6-17

- Switching to Internal/External Camera
- Setting Recording Time
- Setting Shooting Size
- Setting Macro
- Setting Self-timer
- Setting White Balance
- Setting Effect (Color Tone)
- Setting Sound Recording
- Viewing Recorded Video
- Viewing Shortcuts Assigned to Keys when Recording Video
- Viewing Recorded Video before Saving
- Entering File Name of Recorded Video

Settings

- Show or hide Indicators ( P.12-8)
- Activate or cancel Anti-Shake ( P.12-8)
- Activate or cancel Auto Focus ( P.12-8)
- Activate or cancel Digital Zoom ( P.12-8)
- Activate or cancel Auto Save ( P.12-8)
- Set Contrast ( P.12-8)
- Set Saturation ( P.12-8)
- Set Sharpness ( P.12-8)
- Select Quality ( P.12-9)
- Set save location ( P.12-9)


Editing Images

Editing Still Images


Edit still images saved in Data Folder.

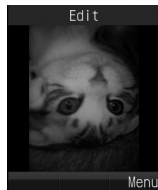
- 1  → **Data Folder** → Select a folder



- 2 Highlight a file →  (View)





- 3  → **Edit** → *Picture editor*







- 4 **Edit image**



- **To set Effects on image**

 → *Effects* → *Filter, Style, or Warp* → Select an effect →  (Done)



- **To add blur or correct red-eye**

 → *Partial effects* → *Partial blur* or *Redeye repair* →  → Use Menu to add blur or correct red-eye →  → *Done* →  (Done)



- **To adjust an image**

 → *Adjust* → *Auto level, Brightness, Contrast, or Colour* → Adjust image →  (Done)



- **To resize an image**


 → *Transform* → *Resize* → Select a setting → Enter *Width* or *Height* (only for *Customize*) →  (Done)

- **To rotate an image**

 → *Transform* → *Rotate* → *90 clockwise* or *90 anticlockwise* →  (Done)

- **To flip an image**

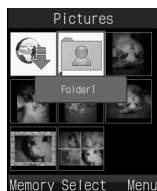
 → *Transform* → *Flip* → *Vertically* or *Horizontally* →  (Done)


- 5  **(Save)** → Enter file name

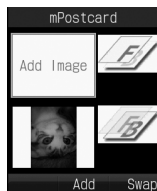
Compositing Still Images

Use still images saved in Data Folder to composite image. This function renders one of two still images as line art, merging it with the other to create a stamped photograph.

- 1  → **Data Folder** → **Select a folder**



- 2 **Highlight a file** →  → **Edit** → **mPostcard**



- 3  (**Add**)






- 4 **Select a still image to merge to**


■ To select from Data Folder

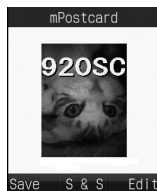
Open → Select a file


- With Memory Card inserted, select a file from *Pictures* or *Digital camera* folder.

■ To capture an image

Take photo →  () → 

- 5  (**Merge**) → **View result**



- 6  (**Save**) → **Enter file name**

Create Flash[®]

Use a still image in Data Folder to create Flash[®] image. Created Flash[®] image is saved to *Flash[®]* folder in Data Folder.


- 1  → **Camera** → **Dynamic effect**




- With Memory Card inserted, select a file from *Pictures* or *Digital camera* folder.


- 2 **Select a file to import into Flash[®]** → **Create Flash[®]**

■ To add frame to image

 (Frame) → Select a frame

■ To add clock to image











 (Watch) → Select a clock →

 (Done)



■ To restore currently edited image

 (Reset) → *Yes*

3 (Save) → Enter file name

- To delete frame or clock added to image, select a file and then  (Frame) or  (Watch), and press  (Delete)
- To delete icon or balloon added to image, select a file and then  (Icon) or  (Balloon), and press  (Delete). When multiple items are added, use  to highlight icon or balloon to delete →  (Delete) →  (Done).
- Up to 5 icons or 3 balloons can be added.
- To create Flash[®] using an image in Data Folder, highlight an image in Data Folder →  → *Edit* → *Dynamic effect* and perform the same operations.

Advanced

 **Advanced Settings**  P.6-18

Printing Still Images


Print still images saved on 920SC by connecting a printer via Bluetooth[®] or USB.


For more information about printer operations and paper setting, see printer User Manual.

Printing via Bluetooth[®]

- Print images with Bluetooth[®] printer.
- Pair Bluetooth[®] printer beforehand.

1  → *Data Folder* → **Select a file location**

2 **Highlight data to print** →  → *Print via*

3 **Bluetooth** → **Check files to print** →  (**Print**)

4 **Select receiving device**


- If no device is registered, search and register new device.

5 Set items as required

■ To set paper size

Paper size → Select an item

■ To set the number of copies

Number of copies → Enter the number of copies (1 to 99) →  (OK)

■ To set the number of pages to print per sheet

Page format → Select an item

- When selecting *Duplicate*, select *Pages per sheet* and select a setting (1 to 16 up).

■ To set whether to print the date or not

Print date → Select an item

■ To set whether to print a frame or not

Frame → Select an item


■ To set print quality


Print quality → Select an item

6  (**Preview**) →  (**Print**)

Printing via USB

1  → *Data Folder* → Select a file location

2 Highlight data to print →  → *Print via*

3 *USB* → Check files to print →  (Print)


4 Connect 920SC to a printer via USB

5 Set items as required

■ To set paper size

Paper size → Select an item

■ To set the number of copies

Number of copies → Enter the number of copies (1 to 99) →  (OK)

■ To set the number of pages to print per sheet

Page format → Select an item

- When selecting *Duplicate*, select *Pages per sheet* and select a setting (1 to 16 up).

■ To set whether to print the date or not

Print date → Select an item

■ To set whether to print a frame or not

Frame → Select an item

■ To set print quality




Print quality → Select an item

6  (Preview) →  (Print)




Advanced Settings

Capturing Still Images




Switching to Internal/External Camera

 (2+ seconds) →  → Highlight  → *External camera* or *Internal camera*




Switching Camera Modes

 (2+ seconds) →  → Highlight  → *Normal* or *Scene*

Switching Shooting Mode




 (2+ seconds) →  → Highlight  → *Single shot*, *Multi-shot*, *Photo Combination*, *Frame shot*, or *Panorama shot*

Setting Shooting Size




 (2+ seconds) →  → Highlight  → Select an item

- For details on available items, see "Shooting Size" (P.6-5).

Setting Macro

 (2+ seconds) →  → Highlight  → *On* or *Off*

Setting Flash

 (2+ seconds) →  → Highlight  → *Auto*, *On*, *Red-eye reduction*, or *Off*

- When Flash is set, Anti-shake is unavailable.

Setting Face Link

(2+ seconds) → → Highlight → *On* or *Off*

Setting Self-timer

(2+ seconds) → → Highlight → *Off*, *3 seconds*, *5 seconds*, or *10 seconds*

Setting White Balance

(2+ seconds) → → Highlight → *Auto*, *Daylight*, *Incandescent*, *Fluorescent*, or *Cloudy*

Setting Effect (Color Tone)

(2+ seconds) → → Highlight → *None*, *Sepia*, *Negative*, *Black & White*, *Antique*, *Aqua*, *Yellow*, or *Pink*

Viewing Captured Pictures

(2+ seconds) → → Highlight → *Pictures* or *Digital camera* → Select a file

- *Digital camera* is available if Memory Card is inserted.

Viewing Shortcuts Assigned to Keys when Capturing Still Images

(2+ seconds) → → Highlight

Entering File Name of Captured Still Image

(2+ seconds) → Frame a capturing object on Viewfinder → Capture an image → → *Rename* & *Save* → Enter file name

Setting Captured Still Image as Wallpaper

(2+ seconds) → Frame a capturing object on Viewfinder → Capture an image → → *Set as* → *Wallpaper* → Use or to adjust size as required → Use (Rotate) to adjust position as required → (Set)

Setting Captured Still Image to Phonebook Entry

(2+ seconds) → Frame a capturing object on Viewfinder → Capture an image → → *Set as* → *Caller ID* → Search Phonebook and select an entry (P.2-20) → (Set)

Enlarging Captured Still Image

(2+ seconds) → Frame a capturing object on Viewfinder → Capture an image → → *Zoom*

- Press or to enlarge or reduce image.
- Press to change position.

Sending Captured Still Images

(2+ seconds) → Frame a capturing object on Viewfinder → Capture an image → (Send)

■ To send via message

Via message → (P.4-3 Sending S! Mail)

- A captured still image is saved to Data Folder when exceeding 300 KB in size. Resize the image to attach to a message. (P.4-4 Attaching Files)

■ To send via Bluetooth®

Via bluetooth → (P.11-7 Sending)

■ To send via infrared

Via infrared (P.11-3)

Viewing Still Images by Quick Play

(2+ seconds) → → Use to view images

- Alternatively, press or to view previous and next still images.
- Press (Zoom) to enlarge still image.
- When Memory Card is inserted, press and select *Phone*, *Memory card*, or *Digital camera* to view images.

Sending Still Images Displayed by Quick Play

(2+ seconds) → → Use to view images → (Send)

■ To send via message

Via message → (P.4-3 Sending S! Mail)

■ To send via Bluetooth®

Via bluetooth → (P.11-7 Sending)

■ To send via infrared

Via infrared (P.11-3)

- When Memory Card is inserted, press and select *Phone*, *Memory card*, or *Digital camera* to view images.

Deleting Images Displayed by Quick Play

(2+ seconds) → → Use to view images → → *Delete* → *Yes*

- When Memory Card is inserted, press and select *Phone*, *Memory card*, or *Digital camera* to view images.

Setting Quick Play Image as Wallpaper

(2+ seconds) → → Use to view images → → *Set as* → *Wallpaper* → Use or to adjust size as required → Use (Rotate) to adjust position as required → (Set)

- When Memory Card is inserted, press and select *Phone*, *Memory card*, or *Digital camera* to view an image.

Setting Quick Play Image to Phonebook Entry

(2+ seconds) → → Use to view images → → *Set as* → *Caller ID* → Search Phonebook and select an entry (P.2-20) → (Set)

- When Memory Card is inserted, press and select *Phone*, *Memory card*, or *Digital camera* to view images.

Playing Slide Show

(2+ seconds) → → → *Slide Show*

- Press (Stop) during playback to cancel Slide Show.
- When Memory Card is inserted, press and select *Phone*, *Memory card*, or *Digital camera*.

Enlarging Still Images Displayed by Quick Play

(2+ seconds) → → Use to view images → (Zoom)

- Press or to enlarge or reduce.
- Press to change position.
- When Memory Card is inserted, press and then select *Phone*, *Memory card*, or *Digital camera* to view images.

Viewing Quick Play Image Details

(2+ seconds) → → Use to view images → → *Details*

- When Memory Card is inserted, press and select *Phone*, *Memory card*, or *Digital camera* to view images.

Recording Videos

Switching to Internal/External Camera

→ *Camera* → *Record video* → → Highlight → *External camera* or *Internal camera*

Setting Recording Time

→ *Camera* → *Record video* → → Highlight → *For S! Mail* or *Normal*

- When *Normal* is set, up to an hour recording is available.
- When *For S! Mail* is set, shooting size of 320 x 240 is unavailable. *Quality* is unselectable and automatically set to *Economy*.

Setting Shooting Size

→ *Camera* → *Record video* → → Highlight → 320 x 240 → 176 x 144 → 128 x 96

- When recording time is set to *For S! Mail*, shooting size, 320 x 240 is unavailable.



Setting Macro

→ *Camera* → *Record video* → → Highlight → *On* or *Off*



Setting Self-timer

→ *Camera* → *Record video* → → Highlight → *Off*, 3 seconds, 5 seconds, or 10 seconds



Setting White Balance

● → Camera → Record video →  → Highlight  → Auto, Daylight, Incandescent, Fluorescent, or Cloudy



Setting Effect (Color Tone)

● → Camera → Record video →  → Highlight  → None, Sepia, Negative, Black & White, Antique, Aqua, Yellow, or Pink



Setting Sound Recording

● → Camera → Record video →  → Highlight  → Sound On or Sound Off


Viewing Recorded Video

● → Camera → Record video →  →  → Select a file
• Open Videos.


Viewing Shortcuts Assigned to Keys when Recording Video

● → Camera → Record video →  → Highlight 




Viewing Recorded Video before Saving

● → Camera → Record video → Record a video →  → Play

Entering File Name of Recorded Video



● → Camera → Record video → Record a video →  → Rename & Save → Enter file name

Sending Recorded Video

● → Camera → Record video → Frame a recording object on Viewfinder →  or ● (●) →  or ● (■) →  (✉) (✉)















- To send via message
Via message → (P.4-3 Sending S! Mail 2)
- To send via Bluetooth®
Via bluetooth → (P.11-7 Sending 2)
- To send via Infrared
Via infrared → (P.11-3)

Editing Video right after Recording





● → Camera → Video editor → Frame a recording object on Viewfinder →  or ● (●) →  or ● (■) → Edit video → (P.7-9 Editing Videos 3)

Editing Still Images



Cropping and Editing Still Images

- → Data Folder → Select a file location → Highlight a file → ● (View) →  → Edit → Picture editor →  → Crop
- To adjust cropping area
Use  to adjust area to crop →  → Done →  (Done) → ● (Save) → Enter file name
- To adjust size to crop
 → Size → Use  to adjust size to crop →  → Done →  (Done) → ● (Save) → Enter file name
- To change cropping shape
 → Shape → Use  to switch cropping shape →  → Done →  (Done) → ● (Save) → Enter file name
- To adjust cropping area after changing size or shape, press  to select Move and adjust.



Adding Frame to Still Images

- → Data Folder → Select a file location → Highlight a file → ● (View) →  → Edit → Picture editor →  → Insert → Frames → Use  to highlight a frame →  (Done) → ● (Save) → Enter file name




Inserting Image to a Still Image

● → *Data Folder* → Select a file location → Highlight a file → ● (View) →  → *Edit* → *Picture editor* →  → *Insert* → *Image* → Select a file




■ To move position of inserted image


Use  to move inserted image →  (Done) → ● (Save) → Enter file name

■ To adjust size of inserted image



 → *Resize* → Use  to adjust size of inserted text →  (Done) → ● (Save) → Enter file name

■ To rotate inserted image



 → *Rotate* → Use  to rotate inserted image →  (Done) → ● (Save) → Enter file name

- To move inserted image after changing size, etc., press  to select *Move* and change position.
- With Memory Card inserted, select *Image* and select files from *Pictures* and *Digital camera* folders.




Adding Clipart to Still Images

● → *Data Folder* → Select a file location → Highlight a file → ● (View) →  → *Edit* → *Picture editor* →  → *Insert* → *Cliparts* → Select a clipart → ● (Select)




■ To move position of added clipart


Use  to move added clipart →  (Done) → ● (Save) → Enter file name

■ To adjust size of added clipart



 → *Resize* → Use  to adjust size of added clipart →  (Done) → ● (Save) → Enter file name

■ To rotate added clipart



 → *Rotate* → Use  to rotate added clipart →  (Done) → ● (Save) → Enter file name

- To move the position of added clipart after changing size, etc., press  to select *Move* and change position.

Adding Emotion Clipart to Still Images

● → *Data Folder* → Select a file location → Highlight a file → ● (View) →  → *Edit* → *Picture editor* →  → *Insert* → *Emotion* → Select a emotion clipart → ● (Select)




■ To move position of added emotion clipart


Use  to move added emotion clipart →  (Done) → ● (Save) → Enter file name

■ To adjust size of added emotion clipart

 → *Resize* → Use  to adjust size of added emotion clipart →  (Done) → ● (Save) → Enter file name

■ To rotate added emotion clipart

 → *Rotate* → Use  to rotate added emotion clipart →  (Done) → ● (Save) → Enter file name

- To move added emotion clipart after changing size, etc., press  to select *Move* and change position.

Adding Text to Still Images

● → *Data Folder* → Select a file location → Highlight a file → ● (View) → → *Edit* → *Picture editor* → → *Insert* → *Text* → Enter text

■ To move position of added text

Use to move text → (Done) → ● (Save) → Enter file name

■ To adjust size of added text

→ *Resize* → Use to adjust text size → (Done) → ● (Save) → Enter file name

■ To rotate added text

→ *Rotate* → Use to rotate added text → (Done) → ● (Save) → Enter file name

■ To adjust the font size of added text

→ *Font size* → *Large, Normal, or Small* → (Done) → ● (Save) → Enter file name

■ To adjust the color of added text

→ *Colour* → Use to adjust color of added text → (Done) → ● (Save) → Enter file name

- Text can be added to still images of 320 x 240 or above.
- To move the position of the added text after changing the size, etc., press to select *Move* and change the position.

Changing an Image before Merging

● → *Data Folder* → Select a file location → Highlight a file → → *Edit* → *mPostcard* → ● (Add) → Add a still image to merge to → Highlight image → → *Change image* → (P.6-13 Compositing Still Images

Swapping Base Image and Image Merged as Line Art

● → *Data Folder* → Select a file location → Highlight a file → → *Edit* → *mPostcard* → ● (Add) → Add a still image to merge to → → *Swap image* → (P.6-13 Compositing Still Images

Editing Composite Still Images

● → *Data Folder* → Select a file location → Highlight a file → → *Edit* → *mPostcard* → ● (Add) → Select an image → ● (Merge) → (Edit)

■ To adjust position of line art

→ *Move* → Use to move → (Done) → (Save) → Enter file name

■ To resize line art

→ *Resize* → Use to adjust size → (Done) → (Save) → Enter file name

■ To rotate line art

→ *Rotate* → Use to rotate → (Done) → (Save) → Enter file name

■ To change color of line art

→ *Change colour* → Use to select color → (Done) → (Save) → Enter file name

■ To adjust line art shadow

→ *Shadow on* or *Shadow off* → (Done) → (Save) → Enter file name

Saving and Sending Composite Still Images

● → *Data Folder* → Select a file location → Highlight a file → → *Edit* → *mPostcard* →

● (Add) → Add a still image to merge to →

● (Merge) → ● (S & S)

■ To send via message

Via message → Enter file name → (P.4-3 Sending S! Mail

■ To send via Bluetooth®

Via bluetooth → Enter file name → (P.11-7 Sending

■ To send via infrared

Via infrared → Enter file name → (P.11-3)

Adding Icon to Image

● → *Camera* → *Dynamic effect* → Select a file → (Icon) → Select an icon

■ To adjust size of added icon

→ *Size* → Use to adjust size → (Done) → Use to adjust position → (Done) → (Save) → Enter file name

■ To rotate added icon

→ *Rotate* → Use to adjust rotation angle → (Done) → Use to adjust position → (Done) → (Save) → Enter file name

■ To reverse added icon

→ *Reverse* → Use to adjust angle → (Done) → Use to adjust position → (Done) → (Save) → Enter file name

■ To make added icon transparent

→ *Transparency* → Use to adjust degree of transparency → (Done) → Use to adjust position → (Done) → (Save) → Enter file name

- With Memory Card inserted, select a file from *Pictures* or *Digital camera* folder.
- To add an icon, before pressing (Save), select (Icon) and repeat the operation.
- Add up to five icons.
- To delete an icon added while editing, select (Icon) and press (Delete). When an icon is added, the added icon is highlighted. Press (Delete) to delete it. When multiple icons are added, use to highlight an icon to delete → (Delete) → (Done).

Adding Created Balloons to Images

→ *Camera* → *Dynamic effect* → Select a file → (Balloon) → *Normal* → Select a balloon → Enter text

■ To adjust font size

→ *Font size* → Use to adjust size → (Done) → Use to adjust text position → (Done) → (Save) → Enter file name

■ To adjust font color

→ *Font color* → Use to adjust text color → (Done) → Use to adjust position → (Done) → (Save) → Enter file name

■ To add an action to text

→ *Action text* → Use to select an action for text → (Done) → Use to adjust position → (Done) → (Save) → Enter file name

■ To reverse text

→ *Reverse* → Use to adjust angle of the text → (Done) → Use to adjust position → (Done) → (Save) → Enter file name

■ To edit text

→ *Change text* → Enter text → Use to adjust position → (Done) → (Save) → Enter file name

- With Memory Card inserted, select a file from *Pictures* or *Digital camera* folder.
- To add self-made balloon, before pressing (Save), select (Balloon) and press (Insert).
- Add up to three balloons.
- To delete balloons added while editing, select (Balloon) and press (Delete). When a balloon is added, the added balloon is highlighted. Press (Delete) to delete it. When multiple balloons are added, use to highlight a balloon to delete → (Delete) → (Done).

Adding Preinstalled Balloons to Images

→ *Camera* → *Dynamic effect* → Select a file → (Balloon) → *Ready-made* → Select a balloon → Use to adjust position → (Done) → (Save) → Enter file name

- With Memory Card inserted, select a file from *Pictures* or *Digital camera* folder.
- To add preinstalled balloon, before pressing (Save), press (Balloon) and press (Insert).
- Add up to three balloons.
- To delete balloons added while editing, select (Balloon) and press (Delete). When a balloon is added, the added balloon is highlighted and press (Delete) to delete it. When multiple balloons are added, use to highlight a balloon to delete → (Delete) → (Done).

6

Camera & Imaging

Media Player & S! Applications

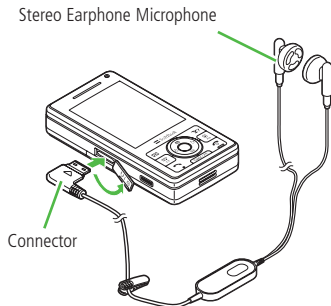


Media Player	7-2
Music & Video	7-2
Playable File Formats	7-3
Media Player Music Window	7-3
Media Player Video Window	7-3
Playing Music	7-4
Playing Video	7-6
Using Playlist	7-8
Creating Playlist	7-8
Playing Playlist	7-8
Editing Videos	7-9
S! Applications	7-10
Network S! Appli	7-10
Activating S! Appli	7-10
Exiting, Pausing, & Resuming S! Appli	7-10
Downloading S! Appli	7-11
Advanced Settings	
Music Playback	7-11
Video Playback	7-13
Playlist	7-15
Editing Video	7-15
S! Appli	7-15

Media Player

Play sound/video files in Data Folder. Or download video content and play it in Streaming.

- Use Stereo Earphone Microphone with Media Player. Insert Connector as shown below. Remove Connector to use Speaker. (If Stereo Earphone Microphone is disconnected in Manner mode, Speaker is muted).



- Use Stereo Earphone Microphone to accept Voice Calls. When handset rings/vibrates, press Stereo Earphone Microphone switch for 1+ seconds to answer the call.
- From Music or Video menu, select *Download music* or *Download videos*, to download files via Yahoo! Keitai.

Music & Video

Downloading Music & Video

Access Yahoo! Keitai and download music or video.

1 → **Media Player**

2 **Download music or video**

■ To download music

Music → *All music* → *Download music* or *Music search*

- Select *Music search* to access *Music search* and search by genre or artist name.

■ To download video

Movie → *All videos* → *Download videos*

Saving PC Media Files to Memory Card

1 **Insert Memory Card into 920SC**

- Press → *Data Folder* → (Memory) to confirm folders are created.

2 **Remove Memory Card from 920SC and insert into PC**

3 **Save PC Media Files to the specified Memory Card Folder**

- Save files to the following folders by type:

Music file: PRIVATE/MYFOLDER/My Items/Music
PRIVATE/MYFOLDER/My Items/Sounds & Ringtones

Video file: PRIVATE/MYFOLDER/My Items/Videos

- After saving files, insert Memory Card into 920SC and load saved files to play the files.

Playable File Formats

Player	File (Extension)
Music	MPEG4 Audio (mp4, m4a, aac, or 3gp (sound only)) SoftBank Music Contents (smc)
Video	MPEG4, H.263, or H.264 (mp4, 3gp)

- To play a music file in a format other than above, select it from *Ring songs · tones*. Even compatible files must be saved in *Ring songs · tones* to play.

Note

- Video files exceeding 320 x 240 in resolution cannot be played.

Media Player Music Window



Music Playback

- 1 Volume level
- 2 Title (File name when title is unknown)
- 3 Artist's name
- 4 File no./Total number of files
- 5 Playing status : Play/Pause/Stop
- 6 Elapsed playing time
- 7 Repeat section
- 8 Repeat mode
 : Repeat all
 : Off
 : One
 : Shuffle
- 9 Progress bar
- 10 Total playing time
- 11 Sound effect

Media Player Video Window

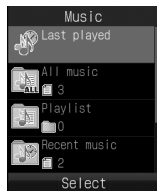


Video Playback

- 1 Volume level
- 2 Artist's name and title (File name when the video title information is unknown)
- 3 Playing status : Play/Pause/Stop
- 4 Elapsed playing time
- 5 File no./Total number of files
- 6 Progress bar
- 7 Total playing time
- 8 Repeat mode/Repeat section/Playback speed

Playing Music

1 → *Media Player* → *Music*



2 Play a file

■ To play most recently played file


Last played

- While playing, *Now Playing* appears and Music playback window is displayed.


■ To select from all files

All music → Highlight a file →  (Play)


■ To play Playlist

Playlist → Highlight a Playlist →  (Play)


■ To select from list of recently played files

Recent music → Highlight a file →  (Play)


■ To select from list of often played files

Most played music → Highlight a file →  (Play)


■ To select from list of Artists


Artists → Highlight a file →  (Play)




■ To select from list of Albums




Albums → Highlight a file →  (Play)




■ To select from list of Genres


Genres → Highlight a file →  (Play)






- To set music file to Ringtone, highlight a paused file or one from list and press  (Set as) (P.2-46). Valid only for compatible files.

- To end playback and return to list, press  (Stop) and then . In Menu, press  to return to previous window or closes Menu.

- During playback, press  for the next file. Press  to restart the file. Press  at the beginning for the previous file.

- To play a specified section repeatedly, during playback, press  at the start point and  at the end point. Press  again to cancel.

- When Memory Card is inserted, Memory Card files appear in *All music* list with .

- When Player is activated via  or Main Menu, press  or  to hide Player window while it plays. To use Player press  to show Player window. In Standby, press  to end Player. End confirmation appears, choose *Yes*. When activated via Switch Bar, hiding Player may end it.

- If a call arrives while a file is playing, playback pauses and 920SC rings. After call ends, paused Player window returns. For BGM, playback resumes automatically after call ends.

- If Alarm time arrives while a file is playing, playback pauses, Alarm sounds and indicator appears. Press any key to stop Alarm, then another key to clear the indicator. For BGM, playback resumes.

Music Folder

Folder structure is as follows.

Folder	Description
Last played/ Now playing	Last played or currently played file
All music	Up to 9999 <i>Music</i> files
Playlist	View playable file on <i>Music</i> in created folders
Recent music	100 recently played files (Most recent first)
Most played music	100 most frequently played files (Most frequent first)
Artist	All <i>Music</i> files by Artist
Album	All <i>Music</i> files by Artist Album
Genre	All <i>Music</i> files by Artist Genre

- Memory Card files may take longer to load.
- Show/hide in *Music menu* (ⓘ P.12-7).












Note

- **Changing or deleting *All music* files affects files in *Music* or *Ring songs* • tones.**

Shortcut Key Operations

Press the assigned key to perform operations.

Available shortcuts vary by playback status or file type.

Key	Description
	Play/Pause
	Next music
	Previous music
	Volume up
	Volume down
	Stop
	Menu
	Repeat section
	Repeat mode
	Sound effect
	Time search

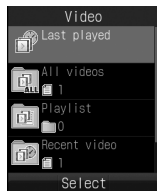
Advanced

Advanced Settings (ⓘ P.7-11)

- Searching File by Title or Artist
 - Adding Files to Playlist
 - Sending Files
 - Sorting Files
 - Purchasing or Acquiring Content Key
 - Deleting Files
 - Renaming File
 - Protecting File
 - Viewing File Details
 - Changing Order of Files in Playlist.
 - Renaming Playlist
 - Deleting Playlist
 - Playing from Specified Point
 - Selecting Phone or A/V Headset during Playback Pause to Resume Playback
 - Switching to Phone Speaker during Playback
 - Switching to Bluetooth® Headphones during Playback
 - Connecting to Web Link
 - Viewing Shortcuts Assigned to Keys
 - Viewing Lyric
- ### Settings
- Set Repeat mode (ⓘ P.12-7)
 - Set Equalizer (ⓘ P.12-7)
 - Adjust Tone volume level (ⓘ P.12-7)
 - Set Music sub folders (ⓘ P.12-7)

Playing Video

1 → *Media Player* → *Movie*




2 Play a file


■ To play most recently played file

Last played


■ To select from all files

All videos → Highlight a file →  (Play)


■ To play Playlist



Playlist → Highlight a Playlist →  (Play)

■ To select from list of recently played files

Recent video → Highlight a file →  (Play)

■ To select from list often played files

Most played video → Highlight a file →  (Play)

- To set video file to Ringtone, highlight a paused file or one from list and press  (Set as) (P.2-46). Valid only for compatible files.
- When Memory Card is inserted, Memory Card files appear in *All videos* list with .

Movie Folder

Folder structure is as follows.

Folder	Description
Last played	Play most recently played file
All videos	View all playable file on <i>Movie</i> up to 9999
Playlist	View playable file on <i>Movie</i> in created folders
Recent video	View up to 100 recently played file (Most recently played file appears first)
Most played video	View up to 100 frequently played file (Most frequently played file appears first)

- Set folder show/hide in *Video menu* (P.12-7).

Note
















- If deleting or changing setting of files in *All videos* folder, files in *Movie* are also deleted or changed.

Shortcut Key Operations












Press the assigned key to perform operations.

Available shortcuts vary by playback status or file type.

In Normal Screen View

Key	Description
	Play/Pause
	Next video
	Previous video
	Volume up
	Volume down
	Stop
	Menu
	Repeat section
	Repeat mode
	Full screen view
	Time search
	Resolution
	Capture frame
	Play faster
	Play slower

In Full Screen View

Key	Description
	Play/Pause
	Volume down
	Volume up
	Next video
	Previous video
	Repeat section
	Repeat mode
	Normal screen view
	Capture frame
	Play faster
	Play slower







Advanced

Advanced Settings P.7-13

- Searching File by Title or Artist
- Adding Files to Playlist
- Sending Files
- Sorting Files
- Purchasing or Acquiring Content Key
- Deleting Files
- Renaming File
- Protecting File to Restrict Editing File Name and Deleting File
- Viewing File Details
- Changing Order of Files in Playlist

- Renaming Playlist
- Deleting Playlist
- Playing Video in Full Screen View
- Editing Video
- Changing Resolution
- Playing from Specified Point
- Selecting Phone or A/V Headset during Playback Pause to Resume Playback
- Switching to Phone Speaker during Playback
- Switching to Bluetooth® Headphones during Playback
- Capturing Still Image from Video and Saving to Pictures
- Connecting to Web Link
- Changing Playback Speed
- Viewing Shortcuts Assigned to Keys

Settings

- Set Repeat mode ( P.12-7)
- Adjust Tone volume level ( P.12-7)
- Set Backlight ( P.12-7)
- Set Video sub folders ( P.12-7)
- Show or hide Video thumbnails ( P.12-7)
- Access or ignore linked information ( P.12-7)

Using Playlist

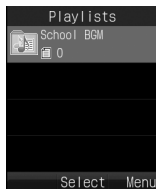
Creating Playlist

Create up to 20 Playlists, containing up to 100 files each.

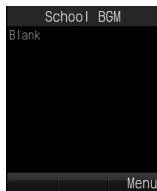
- 1  → **Media Player** → **Music**
or **Movie** → **Playlist** → 
→ **Create playlist**




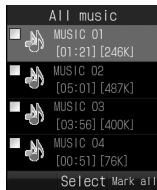
- 2 **Enter Playlist name**




- 3 **Select the created Playlist**



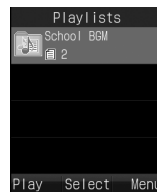
- 4  → **Add** → **Files**



- 5 **Check files to save** → 
(Save)

Playing Playlist



- 1  → **Media Player** → **Music**
or **Movie** → **Playlist**



- 2 **Highlight a Playlist** → 
(Play)

- Playlist cannot be played if included file has been deleted, or file is added from Memory Card and Memory Card is removed. Insert the Memory Card and load file to play.

Advanced

 **Advanced Settings**  P.7-15

- Creating Playlist Including All Tracks in Existing Playlist

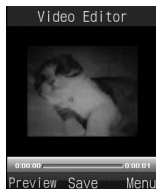
Editing Videos

Edit Video files in Data Folder. Edit only copy unprotected MPEG (3gp) files.

1 → **Data Folder** → Select a file location










2 Highlight a file → → **Video editor**







3 Edit video



■ To cut video

 → *Cut* →  (Play) as required →  (Start) at the start point to cut →  (End) at the end point to cut → To redo cut,  (Reset) and select start and end points again →  (Done)
• To cut from the beginning of video, select *Cut* and then  (Start).



■ To merge multiple videos

 → *Merge* →  (Memory or Phone) as required → Check files to merge →  (Done) →  (Merge)



■ To replace sound with other video sound

 → *Replace sound* → *From other video* or *From other sound* → Select file →  (Done)



■ To delete only video sound

 → *Audio Erase* →  (Erase)



■ To delete only video

 → *Video Erase* →  (Erase)




■ To play back in slow motion

 → *Slow Motion* → *1/2X*, *1/3X*, or *1/4X* →  (Execute)

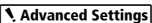

■ To play back in fast motion

 → *Fast Motion* → *2X*, *3X*, or *4X* →  (Execute)

4 (**Save**) → Enter file name

- Merge up to 9 files.
- Press  (Preview) and then  (Play) to view edited video. Press  to return to the editing window.
- Video files exceeding 320 x 240 in resolution cannot be edited.

Advanced

 **Advanced Settings**  P.7-15

- Adding Files to Merge Video
- Deleting Files to Merge
- Changing File Order to Merge

S! Applications

Download S! Appli including games, 3D images, and information via Mobile sites.

- Use only SoftBank handset-compatible S! Appli.
- To download S! Appli, separate subscription is required. Communication fees apply.
- For details on Communication fees, contact Customer Service (☎P.13-29).

Network S! Appli


Some S! Applis require network connection. Enjoy network gaming or access real-time information like stock prices.


- A separate subscription is required to download S! Appli or to use Network S! Appli.
- Communication fees apply to use Network S! Appli.

Activating S! Appli

- 1  → S! Appli → S! Appli library



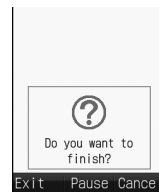
- 2 **Highlight S! Appli to activate**
→  (Start)

- Activate S! Appli;  appears at top of Display.

Exiting, Pausing, & Resuming S! Appli

Exiting & Pausing S! Appli

- 1 **While activating S! Appli,** 





- 2 **Exit or pause S! Appli**

- **To exit S! Appli**


 (Exit)

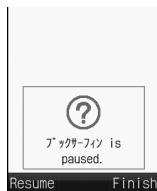
- **To pause S! Appli**


 (Pause)

- When S! Appli is paused, paused status is saved and Standby returns.  appears at top of Display.

Resuming paused S! Appli

- 1 While pausing S! Appli, in Standby,  → S! Appli









- 2  (Resume)

Advanced

Advanced Settings P.7-15

- Viewing S! Appli in Memory Card
- Moving S! Appli in Phone to Memory Card
- Locking/Unlocking S! Appli
- Viewing Details of S! Appli
- Deleting S! Appli

Settings

- Adjust volume ( P.12-10)
- Adjust Backlight setting ( P.12-10)
- Activate or cancel Vibration while S! Appli is in use ( P.12-10)
- Sort S! Appli ( P.12-10)
- Restore S! Appli settings to defaults ( P.12-10)
- Confirm Java Root Certificate ( P.12-10)

Downloading S! Appli

- 1  → S! Appli → S! Appli library






- 2 Download S! Appli
- 3 Access site for S! Appli to download → Select S! Appli
 - When S! Appli details appears, press  (OK).
- 4 When a confirmation appears, press  (OK)
- 5 Exit
 - To activate S! Appli, select *Launch*.


Advanced Settings

Music Playback








Searching File by Title or Artist

-  → Media Player → Music → All music →  → Search files → Check Title or Artist → Select Search field → Enter title or artist name →  (Search)



Adding Files to Playlist

-  → Media Player → Music → Select a folder
- To add a file
 - Highlight file →  → Add to playlist → Selected → Select Playlist
- To add multiple files
 -  → Add to playlist → Multiple → Check files to add →  (Save) → Select Playlist


Sending Files

-  → Media Player → Music → Select a folder → Highlight a file →  → Send
- To send via message
 - Via message →  P.4-3 Sending S! Mail 
- To send via Bluetooth®
 - Via bluetooth →  P.11-7 Sending 
- To send via infrared
 - Via infrared →  P.11-3


Sorting Files

-  → Media Player → Music → All music →  → Sort by → Title, Date, or Artist



Purchasing or Acquiring Content Key

● → *Media Player* → *Music* → Select a folder
 → Highlight a file →  → *Download Content key*


Deleting Files

● → *Media Player* → *Music* → Select a folder
 ■ **To delete a file**
 Highlight a file →  → *Delete* → *Selected*
 → *Yes*

■ To delete multiple files


 → *Delete* → *Multiple* → Check files to delete →  (Delete) → *Yes*

■ To delete all files


 → *Delete* → *All* → *Yes*

- To delete all files in *All music* folder, enter Phone Password.



Renaming File

● → *Media Player* → *Music* → Select a folder
 → Highlight a file →  → *Rename* → Enter file name



Protecting File

● → *Media Player* → *Music* → Select a folder
 → Highlight a file →  → *Lock or Unlock*


Viewing File Details

● → *Media Player* → *Music* → Select a folder
 → Highlight a file →  → *Details*
 • Alternatively, during playback, press  and select *Details*.

Changing Order of Files in Playlist.

● → *Media Player* → *Music* → *Playlist* →
 Select Playlist → Highlight a file →  → *Move track in playlist* → Use  to highlight destination
 → ● (OK)


Renaming Playlist

● → *Media Player* → *Music* → *Playlist* →
 Highlight a Playlist →  → *Rename* → Enter Playlist name


Deleting Playlist

● → *Media Player* → *Music* → *Playlist*


■ To delete a list

Highlight Playlist →  → *Delete* → *Selected*
 → *Yes*

■ To delete all lists



 → *Delete* → *All* → Enter Phone Password
 → ● (OK) → *Yes*

Playing from Specified Point

● → *Media Player* → *Music* → Select a folder
 → Highlight a file → ● (Play) →  → *Time search* → Enter time → ● (Play)


- Some copy protected data may not be played with *Time search*.

Selecting Phone or A/V Headset during Playback Pause to Resume Playback

● → *Media Player* → *Music* → Select a folder
 → Highlight a file → ● (Play) →  (Stop) →
 → *Play via* → *Phone or A/V headset*

- When *A/V headset* is set, select a device to connect. When no device is registered, search and register new device.

Switching to Phone Speaker during Playback



● → *Media Player* → *Music* → Select a folder
 → Highlight a file → ● (Play) →  → *Transfer to Phone*

Switching to Bluetooth® Headphones during Playback

● → *Media Player* → *Music* → Select a folder
 → Highlight a file → ● (Play) →  → *Transfer to A/V headset* → Select device

- When no device is registered, search and register new device.
- If setting *Transfer to A/V headset*, volume adjustment on 920SC is unavailable. Adjust on the headphones.
- Playback with monaural headphones is unavailable.
- Some files may not be played.



Connecting to Web Link

- → *Media Player* → *Music* → Select a folder → Highlight a file → ● (Play) →  → *Connect web link* → Yes
-  appears in Music playback window for files with connection to web link.


Viewing Shortcuts Assigned to Keys

- → *Media Player* → *Music* → Select a folder → Highlight a file → ● (Play) →  → *Shortcut*

Viewing Lyric



- → *Media Player* → *Music* → Select a folder → Highlight a file → ● (Play) →  → *View lyric*
-  appears on Music playback window for files with available lyric.

Playing from Shortcuts




- 
- Last played file plays from stopped point.

Video Playback


Searching File by Title or Artist

- → *Media Player* → *Movie* → *All videos* →  → *Search files* → Check *Title* or *Artist* → Select Search field → Enter title or artist name →  (Search)


Adding Files to Playlist

- → *Media Player* → *Movie* → Select a folder
- **To add a file**
Highlight a file →  → *Add to playlist* → *Selected* → Select Playlist
- **To add multiple files**
 → *Add to playlist* → *Multiple* → Check files to add →  (Save) → Select Playlist


Sending Files

- → *Media Player* → *Movie* → Select a folder → Highlight a file →  → *Send*
- **To send via message**
Via message → (📧)P.4-3 *Sending S!* Mail (📧)
- **To send via Bluetooth®**
Via bluetooth → (📶)P.11-7 *Sending (📶)*
- **To send via infrared**
Via infrared (📶)P.11-3)





Sorting Files

- → *Media Player* → *Movie* → *All videos* →  → *Sort by* → *Title, Date, or Author*


Purchasing or Acquiring Content Key

- → *Media Player* → *Movie* → Select a folder → Highlight a file →  → *Download Content key*


Deleting Files

- → *Media Player* → *Movie* → Select a folder
- **To delete a file**
Highlight a file →  → *Delete* → *Selected* → Yes
- **To delete multiple files**
 → *Delete* → *Multiple* → Check files to delete →  (Delete) → Yes
- **To delete all files**
 → *Delete* → *All* → Yes
- To delete all files in *All videos* folder, enter Phone Password.



Renaming File

- → *Media Player* → *Movie* → Select a folder → Highlight a file →  → *Rename* → Enter file name



Protecting File to Restrict Editing File Name and Deleting File

- → *Media Player* → *Movie* → Select a folder → Highlight a file →  → *Lock* or *Unlock*


Viewing File Details

- → *Media Player* → *Movie* → Select a folder → Highlight a file →  → *Details*
- Alternatively, during playback, press  → *Details*.

Changing Order of Files in Playlist

● → *Media Player* → *Movie* → *Playlist* → Select Playlist → Highlight a file →  → *Move track in playlist* → Use  to highlight destination → ● (OK)


Renaming Playlist

● → *Media Player* → *Movie* → *Playlist* → Highlight Playlist →  → *Rename* → Enter Playlist name


Deleting Playlist

● → *Media Player* → *Movie* → *Playlist*


■ To delete a list

Highlight Playlist →  → *Delete* → *Selected* → *Yes*




■ To delete all lists

 → *Delete* → *All* → Enter Phone Password → ● (OK) → *Yes*


Playing Video in Full Screen View

● → *Media Player* → *Movie* → Select a folder → Highlight a file → ● (Play) →  → *Full screen view*


Editing Video

● → *Media Player* → *Movie* → Select a folder → Highlight a file →  → *Video editor* →  (P.7-9 Editing Videos )

Changing Resolution



● → *Media Player* → *Movie* → *All videos* → Highlight a file → ● (Play) →  → *Resolution* → 240 * 180, 176 * 144, or 128 * 96

Playing from Specified Point

● → *Media Player* → *Movie* → Select a folder → Highlight a file → ● (Play) →  → *Time search* → Enter time → ● (Play)


- Some copy protected files may not play via *Time search*.

Selecting Phone or A/V Headset during Playback Pause to Resume Playback


● → *Media Player* → *Movie* → Select a folder → Highlight a file → ● (Play) →  (Stop) →  → *Play via* → *Phone or A/V headset*

- When *A/V headset* is set, select a device to connect. When no device is registered, search and register new device.

Switching to Phone Speaker during Playback


● → *Media Player* → *Movie* → Select a folder → Highlight a file → ● (Play) →  → *Transfer to Phone*

Switching to Bluetooth® Headphones during Playback

● → *Media Player* → *Movie* → Select a folder → Highlight a file → ● (Play) →  → *Transfer to A/V headset* → Select device


- If none is registered, search and register new device.
- If setting *Transfer to A/V headset*, volume adjustment on 920SC is unavailable. Adjust on headphones.
- Playback with monaural headphones is unavailable.
- Some files may not play.


Capturing Still Image from Video and Saving to Pictures

● → *Media Player* → *Movie* → Select a folder → Highlight a file → ● (Play) →  → *Capture frame* → ● (Save)


- Images cannot be captured from copy protected video.

Connecting to Web Link

● → *Media Player* → *Movie* → Select a folder → Highlight a file → ● (Play) →  → *Connect web link*


-  appears in Video playback window for files with web link.

Changing Playback Speed

● → *Media Player* → *Movie* → Select a folder → Highlight a file → ● (Play) →  → *Playback speed* → *Very slow, Slow, Normal, Fast, or Very fast*

- Sound is muted while changing speed.


Viewing Shortcuts Assigned to Keys

● → *Media Player* → *Movie* → Select a folder → Highlight a file → ● (Play) →  → *Shortcut*


Playlist

Creating Playlist Including All Tracks in Existing Playlist

■ To create music Playlist



● → *Media Player* → *Music* → *Playlist* →
 Select Playlist →  → *Add* → *Playlist* →
 Select Playlist

■ To create video Playlist


● → *Media Player* → *Movie* → *Playlist* →
 Select Playlist →  → *Add* → *Playlist* →
 Select Playlist

Editing Video


Adding Files to Merge Video

In Merge window of video,  → *Add* → Check file
 to add →  (Done)

Deleting Files to Merge


In Merge window of video, use ● to highlight file
 →  → *Delete* → *Yes*


Changing File Order to Merge

In Merge window of video,  → *Change order*
 → Use ● to highlight file to move → ● (OK)


S! Appli

Viewing S! Appli in Memory Card

● → *S! Appli* → *S! Appli library* →  →
Memory card

- Press  (Phone) to go back to list saved in phone.


Moving S! Appli in Phone to Memory Card

● → *S! Appli* → *S! Appli library* →  →
Move

■ To move an S! Appli

Selected → *Yes*

■ To move multiple S! Applis


Multiple → Check S! Applis to move → 
 (Move) → *Yes*


■ To move all S! Applis

All → *Yes*

- To move a file set for another function or locked to Memory Card, a confirmation appears. Choose *Yes* to move the file. Choose *No* to move only unlocked files or files without set functions.

Locking/Unlocking S! Appli

● → *S! Appli* → *S! Appli library* → Highlight an
 S! Appli →  → *Lock or Unlock*


-  appears for locked S! Appli.
- When S! Appli is locked, confirmation appears.

Viewing Details of S! Appli

● → S! Appli → S! Appli library → Highlight an S! Appli →  → Details


- View Name, Description, Profiles, Certification, Size, Record Size, Version, and Vendor.

Setting Net Access while Using S! Appli

● → S! Appli → S! Appli library → Highlight an S! Appli →  → Permission → Net Access → Always allow, Confirm at Initial Request, Confirm Every Time, or Not allow


- Select *Confirm Every Time* to show confirmation every time you attempt network access.

Setting S! Appli Automatic Invocation

● → S! Appli → S! Appli library → Highlight an S! Appli →  → Permission → Application Autoinvocation → Always allow, Confirm at Initial Request, Confirm Every Time, or Not allow


- Select *Confirm Every Time* to show confirmation every time Autoinvocation is activated.

Setting Device Connections while Using S! Appli


● → S! Appli → S! Appli library → Highlight an S! Appli →  → Permission → Local connectivity → Always allow, Confirm at Initial Request, Confirm Every Time, or Not allow

- Select *Confirm Every Time* to show confirmation every time you attempt device connection.

Setting Multimedia Recording while Using S! Appli


● → S! Appli → S! Appli library → Highlight an S! Appli →  → Permission → Multimedia recording → Always allow, Confirm at Initial Request, or Not allow

Reading User Data such as Phonebook

● → S! Appli → S! Appli library → Highlight an S! Appli →  → Permission → Read User data Access → Always allow, Confirm at Initial Request, Confirm Every Time, or Not allow


- Select *Confirm Every Time* to show confirmation every time you try to access user data.

Writing & Deleting User Data such as Phonebook

● → S! Appli → S! Appli library → Highlight an S! Appli →  → Permission → Write/delete User data Access → Always allow, Confirm at Initial Request, Confirm Every Time, or Not allow

- Select *Confirm Every Time* to show confirmation every time you try writing or deleting.

Setting Bluetooth® Connection

● → S! Appli → S! Appli library →  → Permission → Bluetooth connectivity → Always allow, Confirm at Initial Request, or Not allow


Restoring S! Appli Settings to Defaults

● → S! Appli → S! Appli library → Highlight an S! Appli →  → Permission → Reset → Yes



Deleting S! Appli

● → S! Appli → S! Appli library


■ To delete an S! Appli

Highlight S! Appli to delete →  → Delete → Selected → Yes

■ To delete multiple S! Applis

 → Delete → Multiple → Check S! Appli to delete →  (Delete) → Yes

■ To delete all S! Applis

 → Delete → All → Enter Phone Password → ● (OK) → Yes

- To delete a file set for another function or locked to Memory Card, a confirmation appears. Choose *Yes* to delete the file. Choose *No* to move only unlocked files or files without set functions.

Handy Extras




Saving Calendar Entries	8-2
Opening Calendar	8-2
Saving Schedule	8-2
Viewing Schedule	8-3
Alarms	8-4
Setting Alarms	8-4
Calculator	8-5
Currency or Unit Converter	8-5
Converting Currencies	8-5
Converting Units	8-6
World Clock	8-7
Viewing World Clock	8-7
Selecting Areas	8-7
Notepad	8-7
Adding Notepad	8-7
Viewing Notepad	8-7
Tasks	8-8
Saving Tasks	8-8
Viewing Tasks	8-8
Voice Recorder	8-9
Voice Recorder Window	8-9
Recording Sound	8-9
Playing Sound	8-10
Bar Code Reader	8-10
Scanning Bar Code and QR Code	8-10
Using Barcode Files	8-11
Creating QR Code	8-12
Checking Scanned Barcode	8-13

Stopwatch	8-13
Dictionary	8-14
File Viewer	8-14
Using File Viewer	8-14
BookSurfing® (Japanese)	8-15
Browsing Electronic Comics	8-15
Advanced Settings	
Calendar	8-16
Alarm	8-18
Currency/Unit Conversion	8-19
World Clock	8-19
Notepad	8-20
Tasks	8-20
Voice Recorder	8-21
Bar Code Reader	8-22
File Viewer	8-23

Saving Calendar Entries

Opening Calendar

1  → *Calendar*

Viewing Calendar

Select from three view modes. Select a date in Monthly view or Weekly view to open Daily view.



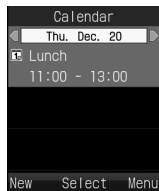
Monthly View


















Weekly View







- : Highlighted position
- Light blue: Today*
- Blue: Saturday
- Red: Holiday/Sunday
- * Only weekdays appear in light blue. Saturday or Sunday/Holidays appear in blue or red.

┘ (Blue): Schedule registered




Daily View

-  : Schedule
-  : Schedule (No category)
-  : Schedule (Appointment)
-  : Schedule (Meeting)
-  : Schedule (Business)
-  : Schedule (Holiday)
-  : Schedule (Anniversary)
-  : Schedule (Birthday)
-  : Schedule (Phone call)
-  : Schedule (Date)
-  : Schedule (Travel)
-  : Schedule (Miscellaneous)
-  : Holiday
-  : Alarm set
-  : Repetition set

- To change Monthly view window for previous/next month, press  or , or highlight Year/Month field and press .
- To change Weekly view window for previous/next week, press  or , or highlight Year/Month field and press .

Saving Schedule

Save up to 200 events including Tasks.
Example: Saving Title, Start date & time.

1  → *Calendar*



2  (New)



3 Enter Title



4 Highlight Start date & time fields → Enter Start date



5 (Save)

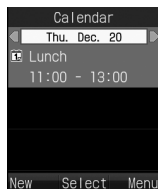
- In Calendar, place cursor on target date before Step 2, to open Start date or End date field.

Viewing Schedule


1 → Calendar



2 Enter digit of the day to view → Enter year and month



3 Select a schedule

- To check the status of Calendar items registered, press  in Calendar or Schedule list, and select *Memory status* to view the registered number of Schedule and Task.

Advanced

Advanced Settings P.8-16

- Switching View Mode
- Displaying a Calendar by Specifying a Date
- Viewing Schedule by Category
- Sending Schedule
- Deleting Schedule
- Viewing Secret Schedule
- Checking Missed Alarm Event
- Viewing Calendar Memory Status
- Sending Schedule as vFile
- Saving Schedule as vFile
- Printing Schedule via Bluetooth®

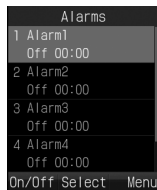
Alarms

Save up to five Alarms. Use Alarm activation to activate or cancel alarm settings. Set alarms to repeat on specific days of the week or everyday.

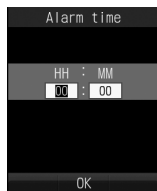
Setting Alarms

Set Alarm time as an example.

1 → *Tools* → *Alarms*







2 Select from *Alarm1* to *Alarm5*





3 Enter Alarm time



4 (Save)

- During a call or while dialing (*Connecting...* appears), a tone sounds and an indicator appears. While dialing (*Dialling...* appears), an indicator appears. When *Alerts on call on System sounds* is unchecked, only indicator appears during a call or connection. Press any key twice to clear indicator. When Snooze is set to other than *Off*, press  (End) and then press .
- When Alarm is set,  appears in Standby.
- If multiple alarms are set for the same time, first one set sounds first. If Schedule or Tasks alarm is set for the same time as Alarm (*Tools*), Alarm sounds first.
- At Alarm Time, tone sounds and indicator appears. Handset vibrates if Vibration is not *Off*. Press any key to stop Alarm. Press again to clear indicator.
- When Manner mode is active, setting in *For manner mode* ( P.8-19) applies.
- If Camera or Voice Recorder is active at Alarm Time, Alarm sounds upon operation termination.

Advanced

 **Advanced Settings**  P.8-18

- Setting Volume or Vibration in Manner Mode













Calculator

Perform arithmetic operations up to 13 digits.

1  → **Tools** → **Calculator**




2 Use keypad, , and  to enter equations

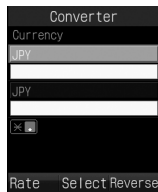
- To enter +, -, ×, or ÷, press , , , or , or .
- To view the result, press .
- To toggle symbols to enter decimal numbers, (or), press  (()).
- To move cursor to left/right, press  or .
- To erase a symbol in a mathematical expression, place cursor after a symbol to erase and press .
- To erase mathematical expression and the result at once, press  (C) or hold  for 1+ seconds.

Currency or Unit Converter

Convert various currencies or units of measure.

Converting Currencies

1  → **Tools** → **Converter** → **Currency**



2 Select Original currency field → Select currency



3 Highlight Original currency value field → Enter value




- To enter a decimal point, press .


4 Select Target currency field → Select currency

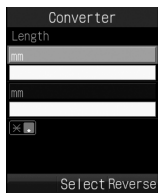


5 View result in Converted currency value field

- To toggle the original currency and target currency, press  (Reverse).

Converting Units

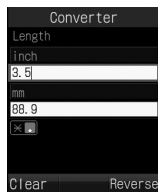
- 1  → *Tools* → *Converter* → *Length, Weight, Volume, Area, or Temperature*




- 2 Select Original unit field → Select currency

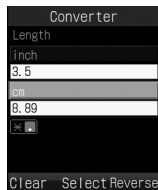


- 3 Highlight Original unit value field → Enter value






- To enter a decimal point, press .

- 4 Select Target unit field → Select unit



- 5 View result in Converted value field

- To toggle original and target unit, press  (Reverse).
- To enter/delete "-" when converting temperature, press .
- To erase value, press  (Clear).

Advanced


 **Advanced Settings**  P.8-19

- Changing Exchange Rate
- Adding Currency Unit

World Clock

See current time in world's major cities.


Viewing World Clock

- 1  → *Tools* → *World clock*



Selecting Areas

Save a second time zone to see the time in World clock.

- 1  → *Tools* → *World clock*





- 2 Highlight Area 1 or Area 2 field → Use  to select city




- 3  (Save)

Advanced

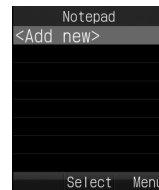
 **Advanced Settings**  P.8-19

Notepad

Add up to 20 memos. Memos can be added even during calls ( P.3-24, P.3-26).



Adding Notepad

- 1  → *Tools* → *Notepad*





- 2 *<Add new>* → Enter text

Viewing Notepad

- 1  → *Tools* → *Notepad* →  (View)

Advanced

 **Advanced Settings**  P.8-20

- Deleting Notepad
- Sending Notepad
- Viewing Notepad Memory Status

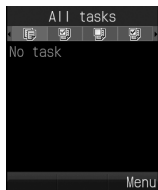
Tasks


Save up to 200 Tasks and Schedule and manage by list.

Saving Tasks

Save Title, Due date & time as an example.

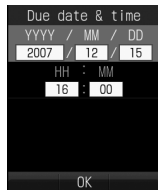
1  → *Tools* → *Tasks*



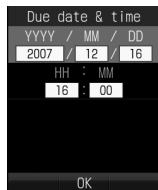
2  → *Add new*



3 Enter a title



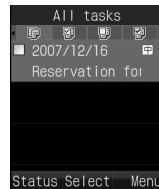
4 Highlight Due date & time field → Enter date and time




5  (Save)

Viewing Tasks

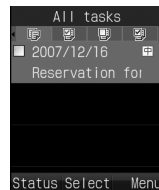
1  → *Tools* → *Tasks*




- In Tasks, press  to toggle *All tasks*, *Completed tasks*, *Uncompleted tasks*, and *Expired tasks*.

Marking a Task as Completed

1  → *Tools* → *Tasks*



2 Highlight a Task →  (Status) → *Completed*

- To unmark a Task, select *Uncompleted*.

Advanced

Advanced Settings (P.8-20)

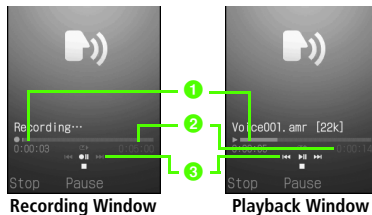
- Saving Task
- Sending Tasks as vFile
- Sorting Tasks
- Displaying a Task of a Specified Day
- Deleting Tasks
- Saving Tasks as vFile
- Viewing Secret Schedule
- Viewing Missed Alarm Event
- Printing Tasks via Bluetooth®
- Viewing Task Item Status

Voice Recorder

Record up to 60 minutes; activate from Tools, or via Menu in Data Folder, Create Message window or during a call.

Voice Recorder Window

Use Softkeys and Multi Selector operations to control Voice Recorder.

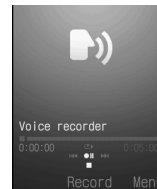


- 1 Elapsed time
- 2 Recordable time (recording)/Playback time (playback)
- 3 Multi Selector operations

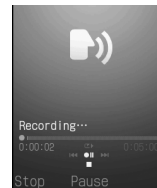
Recording Sound

Recorded sound is saved to *Ring sounds · tones* in Data Folder.


- 1 → **Tools** → **Voice recorder**







- 2 **(Record)**



3 (Stop) or

- Recording ends. When recordable time has elapsed, recording automatically ends.
- Press  (Pause) to pause recording.

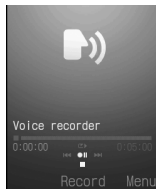
• To quickly confirm the recorded content, press  (Play). Press  (Pause) again to pause the playback.

• To start the next recording, press  and then  (Record).

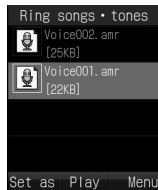
Playing Sound

Play a sound file saved in Data Folder.

1 → *Tools* → *Voice recorder*




2 → *My sounds*



3 Highlight a sound file → (Play)

Advanced

 **Advanced Settings**  P.8-21

- Recording Continuously
- Sending Recorded Sound File
- Sending Recorded Sound File
- Editing Recorded Sound File Name
- Protecting Recorded Sound File
- Viewing Recorded Sound File Details

Bar Code Reader

Use Camera to scan printed barcodes or use barcode images acquired from websites, etc.

Scanning Bar Code and QR Code

Bar Code Reader automatically determines and scans Bar codes (JAN code) and QR Codes. Use scan results for handset operations such as calling.




QR Code



1 → *Tools* → *Bar code reader* → *Scan barcode*






2 Use Display to frame barcode

→  (Scan)


- If scan fails, press  to refocus and try again. Camera continuously refocuses automatically during scanning until the code is scanned or scan canceled.

- Some barcodes may be invalid.
- Scan may fail if barcode is not clear.
- Indoors, scan may fail if handset shadows barcode.
- Scan may fail when capturing multiple barcodes.
- JAN codes are one-dimensional codes made up of combinations of vertical bars of varying widths and spaces. 9205C is not compatible other 1D codes (e.g., ITF code, Code39, or Codabar/NW-7).
- QR Code is two-dimensional code with information in matrix.
- Hold handset approximately eight centimeters away from barcode. If it does not scan, move 9205C slowly to adjust the distance and press  to fix focus.
- To adjust brightness, press .

- To cancel scanning, press  (Cancel).
- To save the scanned result, press  (Save). Check the saved barcode in *Scanned results* (P.8-13).
- To scan split barcode data, choose *Yes* after scanned and repeat scanning.
- Split barcode data cannot be displayed or saved unless all split barcode data are scanned.
- When "MEMORY" or "MAILTO:" appears in scanned result, items for Phonebook or Message and the contents are displayed. Press  (Select) to enter the items in a new Phonebook enter or S! Mail. Texts that can be entered at once are highlighted in gray (if the text contains illegal character, the texts after the character are not highlighted in gray).
- Use QR Codes for text only. 9205C cannot scan image or music file QR Codes.

Using Barcode Files

Use a barcode file saved in Data Folder.

1  → **Tools** → **Bar code reader** → **Open barcode**



- With Memory Card inserted, select a file from *Pictures* or *Digital camera* folder.

2 Select a file

- For split barcode, once one portion is scanned, the rest is automatically recognized and scanned. If file name or saved directory of a split barcode has been changed, select unrecognized part to scan.
- Barcode with changed file size may not scan.
- If barcode is unrecognizable, a message appears.


Creating QR Code

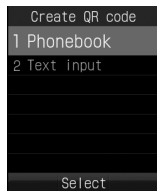
Use Phonebook or enter text to create QR Code.

- A single QR Code can encompass up to 211 alphanumeric or 105 Japanese characters.
- When volume of information is large, split QR Code automatically appears (Up to 16 QR Codes).
- Created QR Code is saved in *Pictures* in Data Folder. Check the saved QR Code in Data Folder (☞P.8-11).

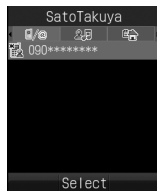
Creating QR Code from Phonebook

Create a QR Code from a saved phone number.

- 1  → *Tools* → *Bar code reader* → *Create QR code*




- 2 *Phonebook* → Select an entry (☞P.2-20)



- 3 Select a number




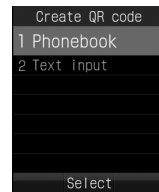
- 4  (Save)

- Created QR Code contains Last name, Reading, Phone number, E-mail address, Address, and Memo. Other items will not be included.
- Press  (Send) in QR Code confirmation window to create S! Mail with the created QR Code attached.

Creating Text QR Code

Enter text and create QR Code.

- 1  → *Tools* → *Bar code reader* → *Create QR code*




2 Text input → Enter text



QR Code
Confirmation
Window

3 (Save)

- In QR Code confirmation window, press  (Send) to create S! Mail and attach QR Code.

Checking Scanned Barcode

Check the saved scanned result.



1 (Home) → Tools → Bar code reader → Scanned results



2 Select a file

- Scanned result too large to open does not appear. Some files cannot be opened.

Advanced

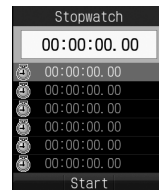
 **Advanced Settings**  P.8-22

- Viewing Scanned Barcode Data
- Viewing Bar Code Reader Help
- Specifying Saving Location of Created QR Code

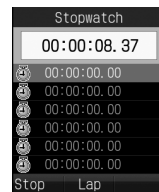
Stopwatch

Use 9205C as a stopwatch; record up to 10 lap times and total time.


1 (Home) → Tools → Stopwatch



2 (Start)



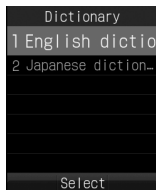
3 (Stop)

- While Stopwatch is running, press  (Lap) to mark a lap.

Dictionary

Look up words in English/Japanese dictionaries.

1  → **Tools** → **Dictionary**



2 **English dictionary or Japanese dictionary** → **Enter a word**



3 **Select a target word**

File Viewer

Using File Viewer


Select Normal view or Full screen view. In either view, Menu and shortcut (Key operations) are available to control Display.



Normal View



Full Screen View


1  → **Data Folder**



2 **Other documents** → **Select a file**



3 **Use Menu or navigation shortcuts to browse**









- Open PDF, XLS, DOC, PPT, or TXT files saved in Data Folder. Select an image file saved in Data Folder and File Viewer is activated automatically.
- To scroll pages, press .
- While File Viewer is active, Switch Bar (➔P.2-3) is not available.
- Files with up to approximately 10 MB can be browsed. Some file with less than 10 MB may not be browsed.

Note



- If a document includes many pages or complicated designs, all pages of the document may not appear properly.
- A file in any language other than Japanese or English may not appear properly.

Shortcut Key Operations

Press the assigned key to perform operations.

Key	Description
	Zoom in
	Zoom out
	Move to the first page
	Move to the previous page
	Rotate 90 degrees clockwise or cancel
	Move to the next page
	Move to the last page
	Select Full screen view or Normal view

Advanced

 **Advanced Settings**  P.8-23

- Switching Between Full Screen View and Normal View
- Zoom In/Out Browser Screen
- Changing Display Mode for File Width or Size
- Going to Pages
- Capturing Images

- Rotating File 90 Degrees Clockwise
- Searching String within Page
- Sending Files
- Editing File Name
- Protecting File
- Viewing File Details
- Deleting Files
- Viewing Shortcuts Assigned to Buttons

BookSurfing® (Japanese)

Download and view e-books, comics, photobooks (CCF files) saved in *Books*. Enlarge/reduce images, scroll page, browse images with sound/vibration effects.

To browse CCF files, acquire Content Key. Content Key is not required to browse 9205C pre-installed.

Browsing Electronic Comics

1  → *Entertainment* → *BookSurfing®*

- See BookSurfing® help menu for subsequent steps.

- After changing phone models, move CCF files via Memory Card. Re-download Content Key to browse those files. Note that some contents may require re- downloading CCF files.

Advanced Settings

Calendar

Saving to Schedule

● → *Calendar* → [⌨] (New) → Enter title → Highlight Start date & time field → Enter date & time

■ To set End date & time

Select End date & time field → Highlight End date & time field → Enter date and time → [⌨] (Save)

■ To set Schedule for all day

Select Start or End date & time field → [⌨] (Check) → ● (OK) → [⌨] (Save)

■ To set Category

Select Category field → Select a Category → [⌨] (Save)

■ To set Alarm

Select Alarm field → Select Alarm time field → Select time → Select Duration field → Select Duration → Select Alert tone/video field → Select folder → Highlight file → [⌨] (Play) → [Y] (Select) → Select Volume field → Use 🎵 to adjust volume → ● (OK) → Select Vibration field → Select an item → [⌨] (Done) → [⌨] (Save)

• If a Memory Card file is set as Alarm Sound, copy to 920SC confirmation appears. For a copy protected file, move to 920SC confirmation appears.

■ To repeat a set Schedule

Select Repeat field → *No repetition, Every day, Every week, Every month, or Every year* → Enter a number of times to repeat → [⌨] (Save)

■ To set Location

Select Location field → Enter content → [⌨] (Save)

■ To automatically delete Schedule

Select Expiry field → *After 1 month, After 1 year, After 2 years, or After 3 years* → [⌨] (Save)

• Upon expiry, schedule is automatically deleted from Calendar. (e.g. if Expiry is *After 1 year*, and Repetition is unset, schedule is deleted one year from event end date. If Repetition is set, schedule is deleted one year after last repetition. Select *Off* to cancel auto delete.

■ To set Details

Select Details field → Enter content → [⌨] (Save)

■ To set Secret

Select Secret field → *On or Off* → [⌨] (Save)

Editing Schedule

● → *Calendar* → Select a date → Select a schedule → ● (Edit) → Edit in the same way as on registration → [⌨] (Save)

Switching View Mode

● → *Calendar* → [Y] → *View mode* → *Monthly, Daily, or Weekly*

Displaying a Calendar by Specifying a Date

● → *Calendar* → [Y] → *Go to*

■ To show today's date

Today

■ To toggle to a specified date

Date → Enter date

Viewing Schedule by Category

● → *Calendar* → [Y] → *List by category* → Select a Category

Sending Schedule

● → *Calendar* → [Y] → *Send events*

■ To send via Bluetooth®

Via bluetooth → Check a schedule → [⌨] (Send) → *Yes* → [P.11-7 Sending 2]


■ To send via infrared

Via infrared → Enter Phone Password → ● (OK) → *Yes* [P.11-3]


Deleting Schedule

● → *Calendar*

■ To delete an entry

Select a date → Highlight a schedule →  → *Delete* → *Selected* → *Yes*


■ To delete all schedules of selected date

Highlight a date →  → *Delete* → *All this day* → *Yes*


■ To delete schedules for a specified period of time

 → *Delete* → *Periods* → Enter start date and end date → ● (Delete) → *Yes*


■ To delete schedules of currently displayed month or week

 → *Delete* → *This month* or *This week* → *Yes*




■ To delete all schedules before the highlighted date

 → *Delete* → *All past data* → Enter Phone Password → ● (OK) → *Yes*



■ To delete all schedules

 → *Delete* → *All* → Enter Phone Password → ● (OK) → *Yes*



■ To delete multiple schedules listed by category

 → *List by category* → Select a category →  → *Delete* → *Multiple* → Check schedules →  (Delete) → *Yes*



■ To delete all schedules in a category

 → *List by category* → Select a category →  → *Delete* → *All (This category)* → *Yes*




Setting Holiday

● → *Calendar* →  → *Settings* → *Set holiday* → Select a field → Enter title → Enter Date → Select frequency →  (Save)



Changing Holiday Display

● → *Calendar* →  → *Settings* → *Set holiday* → Check an item to change →  (Save)


Editing Added Holiday

● → *Calendar* →  → *Settings* → *Set holiday* → Highlight an entry →  → *Edit* → Edit the entry →  (Save)

Deleting Added Holiday

● → *Calendar* →  → *Settings* → *Set holiday* → Highlight an entry →  → *Delete*


Setting the Beginning of a Week

● → *Calendar* →  → *Settings* → *Starting day* → *Sunday* or *Monday*

Setting Default Calendar View

● → *Calendar* →  → *Settings* → *Default view mode* → *Monthly*, *Weekly*, or *Daily*


Setting Reminder

● → *Calendar* →  → *Settings* → *Reminder* → Select On/Off field → *On*

■ To set remind time

Select Time field → Enter a time →  (Save)

■ To set Alarm sound duration

Select Duration field → *10 seconds*, *20 seconds*, *30 seconds*, *60 seconds*, or *Other* →  (Save)




• When selecting *Other*, enter duration.

■ To set Alarm sound or video


Highlight Alert tone/video field → Select folder → Highlight file →  (Play) →  (Select) →  (Save)

• If a Memory Card file is set as Alarm Sound, copy to 9205C confirmation appears. For a copy protected file, move to 9205C confirmation appears. Choose *Yes* to complete setting.


■ To adjust Alarm volume

Select Volume field → Use  to adjust volume →  (Play) → ● (OK) →  (Save)


■ To set Vibration

Select Vibration field → *Off* or *Pattern 1* to *Pattern 5* →  (Save)

Viewing Secret Schedule

● → *Calendar* →  → *Unlock temporarily* → Enter Phone Password → ● (OK)

Checking Missed Alarm Event

● → *Calendar* →  → *Missed alarm event* → Select a schedule

Viewing Calendar Memory Status

● → *Calendar* → → *Memory status*

Sending Schedule as vFile

● → *Calendar* → Select a date → Highlight a schedule → → *Send*

■ To send via message

Via message → (P.4-3 Sending S! Mail 2)

■ To send via Bluetooth®

Via bluetooth → (P.11-7 Sending 2)

■ To send via infrared

Via infrared (P.11-3)

Saving Schedule as vFile

● → *Calendar* → Select a date → Highlight a schedule → → *Save to data folder* → *Phone* or *Memory card* → *Yes*

• Save location can be set to Memory Card if inserted.

Printing Schedule via Bluetooth®

● → *Calendar* → Select a date → Highlight a schedule → → *Print via bluetooth* → (P.6-14 Printing via Bluetooth® 5)

Alarm

Saving Alarm

● → *Tools* → *Alarms* → *Alarm1* to *Alarm5* → Enter Alarm time

■ To edit Alarm name

Select Alarm name field → Enter Alarm name → (Save)

■ To set Alarm every day or once only

Select Repeat field → *Once only* or *Everyday* → (Save)

■ To set Alarm for a specific day

Select Repeat field → *Selected day* → Check day to set → (Done) → (Save)

■ To set Alarm sound or video

Highlight Alert tone/video field → Select folder → Highlight file → (Play) → (Select) → (Save)

• If a Memory Card file is set as Alarm Sound, copy to 920SC confirmation appears. For a copy protected file, move to 920SC confirmation appears. Choose *Yes* to complete setting.

■ To adjust Alarm volume

Select Volume field → Use to adjust volume → (Play) → ● (OK) → (Save)

■ To set Vibration

Select Vibration field → *Off* or *Pattern 1* to *Pattern 5* → (Save)

■ To set Snooze

Select Snooze field → *Off*, *1 minute*, *3 minutes*, *5 minutes*, *10 minutes*, or *Other* → (Save)

• When Snooze is other than *Off*, alarm sounds at the specified interval until Snooze is canceled. Alarm repeats specified times. If no handset operations take place, or any key except and (End) is pressed while alarm sounds, alarm stops, and resets to sound again at specified interval.

To cancel Snooze, press or (End).

• For *Other*, enter duration.

■ To set Snooze repeat time(s)

Select Snooze repeat times field → *Once*, *2 times*, *3 times*, *5 times*, or *10 times* → (Save)

■ To set Alarm duration time

Select Duration field → *10 seconds*, *20 seconds*, *30 seconds*, *60 seconds*, or *Other* → (Save)

• For *Other*, enter duration.

Setting/Canceling Alarm

● → *Tools* → *Alarms* → Highlight an Alarm → (On/Off)

Resetting Alarm

● → *Tools* → *Alarms*

■ To reset an entry


Highlight an Alarm → → *Reset this*

■ To reset all entries

→ *Clear All*


Setting Volume or Vibration in Manner Mode

● → *Tools* → *Alarms* → Highlight an Alarm →

 → *For manner mode*

■ To set Alarm volume

Alarms volume → Use  to adjust volume →

 (Play) → ● (OK)

■ To set Vibration

Vibration → *On* or *Off*

Currency/Unit Conversion

Viewing Exchange Rate

● → *Tools* → *Converter* → *Currency* →

Highlight Original currency field →  (Rate)

Changing Exchange Rate


● → *Tools* → *Converter* → *Currency* →


Highlight Original currency field →  (Rate) →

Highlight a currency → ● (Edit) → Enter rate

Adding Currency Unit


● → *Tools* → *Converter* → *Currency* → 

(Rate) →  (Add) → Enter currency unit and exchange rate

- To delete an added currency unit, highlight a rate and press , and select *Delete*.

World Clock

Setting Daylight Saving Time

● → *Tools* → *World clock* →  (DST) →

Check an area to set daylight saving time → 


(Done) → ● (Save)

Notepad



Deleting Notepad

● → Tools → Notepad


■ To delete a notepad

Highlight a notepad →  → Delete → Selected → Yes

■ To delete multiple entries

Highlight a notepad →  → Delete → Multiple → Check entries →  (Delete) → Yes

■ To delete all entries


Highlight a notepad →  → Delete → All → Enter Phone Password → ● (OK) → Yes

Sending Notepad


● → Tools → Notepad

→ Select a notepad →  → Send memo →  (2)

Viewing Notepad Memory Status


● → Tools → Notepad →  → Memory status

Editing Notepad

● → Tools → Notepad → Highlight a notepad →  (Edit) → Edit the notepad

Tasks

Saving Task

● → Tools → Tasks →  → Add new →



Enter title → Highlight Due date & time → Enter Due date and time




■ Setting Alarm

Select Alarm field → Select Alarm time field →

Select Alarm time → Select Duration field →

Select Duration → Select Alert tone/video field →

Select a location of sound or video file → Highlight the file →  (Play) →  (Select) → Select


Volume field → Use  to adjust volume → ● (OK) → Select Vibration field → Select a setting →  (Done) →  (Save)

• If a Memory Card file is set as Alarm Sound, copy to 920SC confirmation appears. For a copy protected file, move to 920SC confirmation appears. Choose *Yes* to complete setting.


• At Alarm Time, tone sounds and indicator appears. Press any key to stop Alarm. Press ● (OK) to clear indicator. If no key is pressed, Missed Alarm message appears. Press ● (View) to view the event.

• When a call is being made or during a call (*Connecting...* appears), a tone sounds and an indicator appears. When a call is being made (*Dialling...* appears), only indicator appears. When *Alerts on call* on *System sounds* is unchecked, only indicator appears during a call or connection. Press ● to clear an indicator.

■ To set Priority

Select Priority field → *Low, Middle, or High* →  (Save)


■ To set Details

Select Details field → Enter content →  (Save)


■ To activate or cancel Secret

Select Secret field → *On or Off* →  (Save)


Sending Tasks as vFile

● → Tools → Tasks → Select a task to send →  → Send


■ To send via message

Via message →  (2)


■ To send via Bluetooth®

Via bluetooth →  (2)

■ To send via infrared

Via infrared →  (3)

Sorting Tasks

● → Tools → Tasks →  → Sort by → *Deadline or Priority*

Displaying a Task of a Specified Day

● → Tools → Tasks →  → Go to

■ To show today's task

Today


■ To enter a date to view a task

Date → Enter date



Deleting Tasks

● → Tools → Tasks


■ To delete a task

Highlight a task →  → Delete → Selected → Yes


■ To delete multiple tasks

 → Delete → Multiple → Check tasks →  (Delete) → Yes

■ To delete all tasks


 → Delete → All tasks → Enter Phone Password → ● (OK) → Yes

Saving Tasks as vFile


● → Tools → Tasks → Select a task →  → Save to data folder → Phone or Memory card → Yes

• Save location can be set to Memory Card if inserted.


Viewing Secret Schedule

● → Tools → Tasks →  → Unlock temporarily → Enter Phone Password → ● (OK)

Viewing Missed Alarm Event

● → Tools → Tasks →  → Missed alarm event → Select a missed task to check

Printing Tasks via Bluetooth®

● → Tools → Tasks → Highlight a task →  → Print via bluetooth → (P.6-14 Printing via Bluetooth® 5)

Viewing Task Item Status

● → Tools → Tasks →  → Memory status

Editing Tasks



● → Tools → Tasks → Select a task to edit →

● (Edit) → Select an item to edit → Edit item →



 (Save)

Voice Recorder



Setting Recorded Sound File for Ringtone, etc.

● → Tools → Voice recorder → ● (Record) →  (Stop) →  (Set as) → Select a ringtone

Recording Continuously

● → Tools → Voice recorder → ● (Record) →  (Stop) →  → Record

Sending Recorded Sound File

● → Tools → Voice recorder → ● (Record) →  (Stop) →  → Send

■ To send via message

Via message → (P.4-3 Sending S! Mail 2)



■ To send via Bluetooth®

Via bluetooth → (P.11-7 Sending 2)



■ To send via infrared

Via infrared (P.11-3)



Sending Recorded Sound File

● → Tools → Voice recorder → ● (Record) →  (Stop) →  → Delete → Yes



Editing Recorded Sound File Name

● → Tools → Voice recorder → ● (Record) →  (Stop) →  → Rename → Enter file name


Protecting Recorded Sound File

● → Tools → Voice recorder → ● (Record) →
 (Stop) →  → Lock or Unlock


Viewing Recorded Sound File Details

● → Tools → Voice recorder → ● (Record) →
 (Stop) →  → Details


Changing Default Name at Saving

● → Tools → Voice recorder →  → Record settings → Default name → Enter file name

Changing Recording Time

● → Tools → Voice recorder →  → Record settings → Recording time → 1 min, 2 min, 3 min, 4 min, 5 min, or 60 min

Changing Default Saving Location

● → Tools → Voice recorder →  → Record settings → Set default memory → Phone or Memory card

- When Memory Card is not inserted, files are automatically saved to 920SC.

Bar Code Reader

Using Scanned Data

● → Tools → Bar code reader → Scan barcode
 → Scan a barcode

■ To call scanned phone number

Select a number with *TEL:* or 10 to 32-digit number starting with 0 → Voice call, Video call, or *S! Circle Talk*

■ To send S! Mail to scanned phone number

Select a number with *TEL:* or 10 to 32-digit number starting with 0 → Create message → (P.4-3 Sending S! Mail 5)

■ To send S! Mail to scanned mail address

Select address → (P.4-3 Sending S! Mail 5)


■ To access scanned URL

Select URL starting with *http://* or *rtsp://*



■ To save scanned entry to Phonebook

Select an entry → (P.2-18 Creating New Entries)


■ To save scanned number, etc. as a new Phonebook entry

Highlight a phone number, etc. →  → Save to phonebook → New → (P.2-18 Creating New Entries)


■ To add scanned number, etc. to an existing Phonebook entry

Highlight a phone number, etc. →  → Save to phonebook → Update → Search Phonebook and select entry (P.2-20) → Edit the entry →  (Save)


■ To add scanned URL to Bookmarks

Highlight a URL →  → Add bookmark



■ To copy scanned mail address or phone number, etc.

Highlight an E-mail address or phone number →  → Copy Address, Copy telephone, or Copy URL

■ To paste scanned phone number, mail address, etc. to Message text

 → Send message → ● (OK) → S! Mail or SMS → (P.4-3 Sending S! Mail 2 or P.4-8 Sending SMS Messages 2)


■ To paste a scanned phone number or mail address to Message text

 → Send message →  (Cut) → Highlight the first letter → ● (Start) → Set range → ● (End) → ● (OK) → S! Mail or SMS → (P.4-3 Sending S! Mail 2 or P.4-8 Sending SMS Messages 2)


■ To copy scanned characters

 → Copy → Highlight the first letter → ● (Start) → Set range → ● (End)


Viewing Scanned Barcode Data

● → *Tools* → *Bar code reader* → *Scan barcode* →  → *Scanned results* → Select a scanned result

Viewing Bar Code Reader Help


● → *Tools* → *Bar code reader* → *Scan barcode* →  → *Help*

Specifying Saving Location of Created QR Code


● → *Tools* → *Bar code reader* → *Create QR code* → *Phonebook* or *Text input* → (P.8-12) Creating QR Code from Phonebook 2 or P.8-12 Creating Text QR Code 2) →  → *Save to phone* or *Save to memory card* → ● (Save)

File Viewer


Switching Between Full Screen View and Normal View

● → *Data Folder* → *Other documents* → Select a file →  → *Full screen view* or *Normal view*


Zoom In/Out Browser Screen

● → *Data Folder* → *Other documents* → Select a file →  → *Zoom* → *In* or *Out*

Changing Display Mode for File Width or Size


● → *Data Folder* → *Other documents* → Select a file →  → *Fit to screen* → *Page, width,* or *height*

Going to Pages

● → *Data Folder* → *Other documents* → Select a file →  → *Go to* → *Previous page,* *Next page,* *First page,* *Last page,* or *Page*


- For *Page*, specify page number.

Capturing Images


● → *Data Folder* → *Other documents* → Select a file →  → *Screen capture*



- Captured image is saved in JPEG format to *Pictures* in *Data Folder* of 920SC.

Rotating File 90 Degrees Clockwise


● → *Data Folder* → *Other documents* → Select a file →  → *Rotate*

Searching String within Page

● → *Data Folder* → *Other documents* → Select a file →  → *Search* → Enter keyword


- When search result appears and next result is ready, press  then  for previous result.

Sending Files


● → *Data Folder* → *Other documents* → Select a file →  → *Send*

- **To send via message**
Via message → (P.4-3) *Sending S! Mail* 2)
- **To send via Bluetooth®**
Via bluetooth → (P.11-7) *Sending* 2)
- **To send via infrared**
Via infrared → (P.11-3)


Editing File Name

● → *Data Folder* → *Other documents* → Select a file →  → *Rename* → Enter file name


Protecting File

● → *Data Folder* → *Other documents* → Select a file →  → *Lock* or *Unlock*


Viewing File Details


● → *Data Folder* → *Other documents* → Select a file →  → *Details*

Deleting Files


● → *Data Folder* → *Other documents* → Select a file →  → *Delete* → *Yes*

Assigning Scroll Range

● → *Data Folder* → *Other documents* → Select a file →  → *Settings* → *Panning* → *10 pixel*, *20 pixel*, *40 pixel*, or *Screen*


- Assign scroll range for each press of .

Fit to Display

● → *Data Folder* → *Other documents* → Select a file →  → *Settings* → *Reflow* → *On* or *Off*


- When *On*, content is fit to Display size.

Setting Map


● → *Data Folder* → *Other documents* → Select a file →  → *Settings* → *Map on* → *On* or *Off*

- Current position is framed in red.



Setting Guide for Shortcuts in Full Screen View

● → *Data Folder* → *Other documents* → Select a file →  → *Settings* → *Controller* → *On* or *Off*

Editing Default File Name at Screen Capture

● → *Data Folder* → *Other documents* → Select a file →  → *Settings* → *Screen capture name* → Enter file name

Viewing Shortcuts Assigned to Buttons

● → *Data Folder* → *Other documents* → Select a file →  → *FileViewer shortcuts* → Use  to view shortcuts

Communication Services

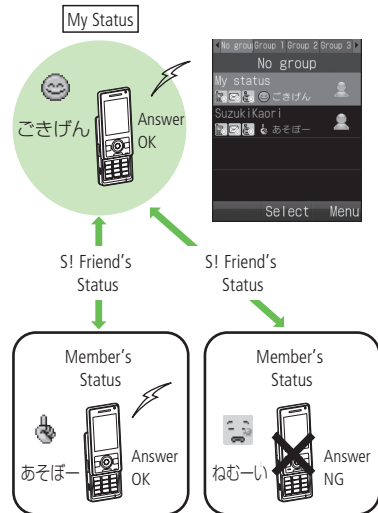


S! Friend's Status	9-2
Viewing S! Friend's Status Window	9-2
S! Friend's Status Notification	9-3
S! Friend's Status Members List	9-3
Adding Members	9-3
Adding from Phonebook or Phone Number	9-3
Adding from Received Request	9-4
Setting My Status	9-5
S! Circle Talk	9-6
Viewing S! Circle Talk Window	9-6
Initiating S! Circle Talk	9-7
Receiving S! Circle Talk Call	9-8
Adding & Deleting S! Circle Talk Members	9-8
Creating S! Circle Talk Members	9-9
Near Chat (Japanese)	9-10
About Near Chat	9-10
Using Near Chat	9-11
Advanced Settings	
S! Friend's Status	9-12
S! Circle Talk	9-14

S! Friend's Status

Check members' current mood or availability.

- S! Friend's Status requires a separate subscription.
- Available on S! Friend's Status-compatible models.



- Adding entries to Members List makes their status available. Status is updated automatically.

Note

- Confirm **IP service setting** (☞ P.12-20) is set to **On** before using the service.

Viewing S! Friend's Status Window



Members List Window



Member Status Window

- 1 Group name of S! Friend's Status
- 2 Your information (My Status) (☞ P.9-5)
- 3 Member's information
- 4 Answer status
Call, message, or S! Circle Talk answer status
- 5 Image, name, and phone number
Image saved in Account Details appears in My Status. Image, name, phone number, or group saved in Phonebook appears in Member Status.
- 6 Status icon and status label
Indicates your/member's status.
- 7 Network connection status
Your/member's connection status
- 8 Comment
- 9 Standby Window setting status
S! Friend's Status Standby Window indicator

S! Friend's Status Notification

Alerts for S! Friend's Status Request, etc.

- Notification is sent to person added or removed from S! Friend's S!tatus members list.
- See S! Friend's Status Notification types below:

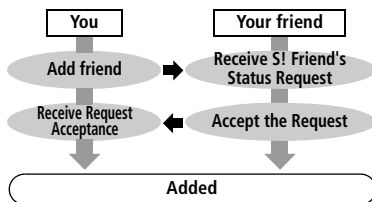
Type	Description
S! Friend's Status Request	You are added to S! Friend's Status members list.
Request Acceptance	Your request for S! Friend's Status members list is accepted.
Request Rejection	Your S! Friend's Status members list request is rejected or no reply has been received within two hours.
Cancel Request	You are removed from S! Friend's Status members list.
Online Notification	S! Friend's Status is not available due to network trouble.

S! Friend's Status Members List

Add a member to S! Friend's Status members list to enable information sharing with other members.

- Add up to 30 members.

Adding Members



- When added to the list, your S! Friend's Status (My Status) is sent making information sharable.

Note

- When network connection status (P.9-12) is *Offline*, adding members to the list is not available. When adding members, make sure to set network connection status to *Offline*.

Adding from Phonebook or Phone Number

- 1 → *Communication* → *S! Friend's Status*



- When no member is saved, choose *Yes*.

- 2 **Add members**

■ To use Phonebook

→ *Add member* → *From phonebook* → Search Phonebook and select entry (P.2-20) → Select phone number

■ To enter phone number

→ *Add member* → *New entry* → (Select) → Enter phone number → (Save)

3 Send request confirmation appears, choose *Yes*

- After Request is accepted and Request Acceptance received, member is added.
- S! Friend's Status information changes to *Waiting* and status to *Unknown*.

- If you do not wish to show your status upon initial registration by default, change My Status first.

Note

- When 30 members are saved, none can be added. Delete members to add new ones.
- If handset is incompatible, Request Not Available notification appears.

Adding from Received Request

Add members via S! Friend's Status Request.

- When received, add sender confirmation appears. Follow these steps to add members.



1 (View)



2 When S! Friend's Status Request appears, choose *Yes*

- Request Acceptance is returned and new member is added to the list.
- Choose *No* to reject the Request. Request Rejection is sent. (Member is not added.)
- To check later, select *Check Later*.

- Request Rejection is automatically sent:
 - Not available to reply within two hours.
 - 30 members are already saved.

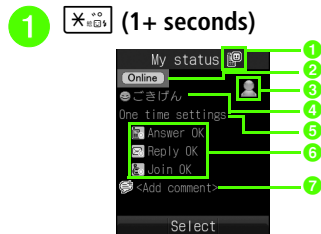
Note

- For *No*, Request Rejection is sent. The person who sent Request cannot be added members list for 24 hours.
- If Request Rejection is not received within 24 hours, it is resent.

Setting My Status

Set S! Friend's Status information as follows.

My Status Details Window



My Status Details Window

- 1 Standby Window Setting Status
Standby Window My Status indicator
- 2 Network connection status (P.9-12)
- 3 Image
Show images saved in Account details.
- 4 Status icon and status label
Change status icon and short sentence (status label). Change status icon and label in Status setting. (P.9-13)
- 5 Answer status batch change
Change call, message, or S! Circle Talk status at once.

- 6 Answer status
Change call, message, or S! Circle Talk status.
- 7 Comment
Edit Short message (up to 15 char.).

Changing My Status Information

- 1 Open My Status Details →
Select any item except
network connection status →
Select item to set → (Update)

• Changed My Status is sent to members.
Set following items.

Item	Settings
Status setting	16 combinations of status icons and labels
One time settings	
All OK	Call: Answer OK Mail: Reply OK S! Circle Talk: Join OK
Mail only OK	Call: Answer NG Mail: Reply OK S! Circle Talk: Join NG

Item	Settings	
	All NG	Call: Answer NG Mail: Check Later S! Circle Talk: Join NG
	User Setting	- ¹
Call	Answer OK, Urgency only, Answer NG	
Mail	Reply OK, Check Later	
S! Circle Talk	Join OK, Auto Join ² , Join NG ³	
Comment	Max. 15 characters	

- 1 Change answer settings in *My status one time settings* (P.9-13).
- 2 Start S! Circle Talk automatically upon reception.
- 3 Reject S! Circle Talk automatically upon reception.

Advanced


Advanced Settings [P.9-12]

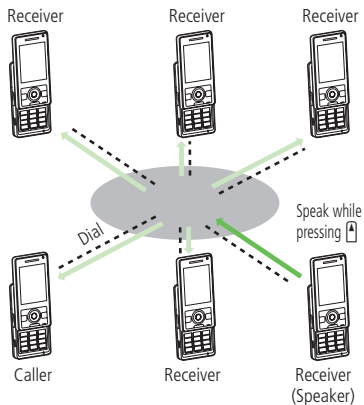
- Adding S! Friend's Status Members
- Setting to Standby Window
- Viewing S! Friend's Status Notification
- Making a Voice/Video Call and Sending a Mail
- Initiating S! Circle Talk
- Adding Members to Phonebook
- Editing Members in Phonebook
- Editing Group Names
- Changing Groups
- Removing a Member

S! Circle Talk

Talk with multiple people (up to 11).

Send messages to a group or make a comment.

- A member may talk while pressing . Only one member can talk at a time.
- S! Circle Talk requires a separate subscription.
- S! Circle Talk is a free-based service.



Note

- Set *IP service setting* (P.12-20) to *On* before using the service. Also set *network connection status* (P.9-12) of *My Status* to *Online*. S! Circle Talk is not available when the status is *Offline*.
- Calling S! Circle Talk is not available while using *Voice/Video Call* or *S! Circle Talk*.
- Only available with handsets which support S! Circle Talk.

Viewing S! Circle Talk Window



- 1 Call status/Talk Status
- 2 S! Circle Talk Member
If saved in Phonebook, name appears. Otherwise, phone number appears.
- 3 S! Circle Talk Member Connection Status

Initiating S! Circle Talk

Upon initiation, registration confirmation appears. Save members or groups to members list to begin use.

1 



Members Window



- Select *Save now* or *Save later*. For *Save now*, member is saved immediately (P.9-9).



2 **Select member or group from S! Circle Talk members**

■ To select a member or group

Select a member or group directly



■ To select multiple members or groups

 (Multiple) → Check members or groups to call →  (Call)


3  (Call) or 







- When a member connects, S! Circle Talk starts.

4 **Talk while holding  () or**




- Talk while  appears.
- All members can hear speaker.
- Talk for 30 seconds at a time. After 30 seconds, alert beeps and session ends.
- Warning appears five seconds before session ends.




5 **To talk again, press  () or  while Press  to speak appears**




- While a member is talking, a message appears and other members cannot talk.

6 **To end S! Circle Talk, **

- When only one member remains, S! Circle Talk ends.

- In S! Circle Talk, press  ( / ) to toggle *Loud speaker On or Off*.


Note


- If a call is received in S! Circle Talk, 920SC follows Incoming Calls setting (P.9-14).
- If Alarm time arrives in S! Circle Talk, Alarm sounds and indicator appears. Press  (OK) to clear Alarm.

Receiving S! Circle Talk Call

- 1 When a call arrives, press  (Call) or 



- To reject, press  (Reject).

- 2 To end S! Circle Talk, 

Note

- If My Status (S! Circle Talk) is *Auto Join*, S! Circle Talk starts automatically for a call. If My Status (S! Circle Talk) is *Join NG*, call is automatically rejected.

Adding & Deleting S! Circle Talk Members

Adding S! Circle Talk Members


Add members before/during S! Circle Talk calls.

- 1  → Select list →  (Add)




- 2 Add members


■ To use S! Circle Talk members

S! Circle Talk members → Select a member →  (Call)


■ To use S! Friend's Status members list

S! Friend's Status members list → Select a member →  (Call)

■ To use Phonebook

Phonebook → Search Phonebook to add and select entry (P.2-20) → Select phone number →  (Call)

■ To enter phone number


New entry → Enter phone number →  (Call)

- Repeat Steps 1 and 2 to add multiple members or groups.


Deleting S! Circle Talk Members

Delete members from list before S! Circle Talk call.

- Members cannot be deleted during S! Circle Talk call.

- 1  → Select the list to delete member



2 Highlight member →  → **Delete**



3 Delete members

- To delete a member
Selected → Yes
- To delete all members
All → Yes

Creating S! Circle Talk Members

Add phone numbers to S! Circle Talk members from S! Friend's Status members list or Phonebook.

- Save individual entries or groups as S! Circle Talk members. Save frequent numbers as a group.
- Save up to 30 members or groups. A single group can include up to 10 members.

Adding Individual to Members List

1  → <Add new entry>



2 Individual



3 Add a member

■ To use S! Friend's Status members list

S! Friend's Status members list → Select a member

■ To use Phonebook

Phonebook → Search Phonebook and select entry to add (P.2-20) → Select phone number

■ To enter phone number

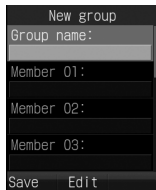
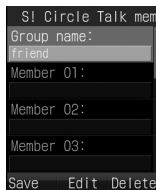
New entry → Enter phone number

Adding Group to Members List

Example: Create a new group.

1  → <Add new entry>



2 *Group* → *New entry***3** *Group name:* → Enter a group name**4** *Member 01:* to *Member 10:***5** Add a member

- To use **S! Friend's Status members list**

S! Friend's Status members list → Select a member

- To use **Phonebook**

Phonebook → Search Phonebook and select entry to add (☞P.2-20) → Select phone number

- To enter phone number

New entry → Enter phone number

6  (Save)

- Edit Group names and members saved in groups later.

Advanced

- ▲ **Advanced Settings** (☞P.9-14)

- Setting Speaker Phone for S! Circle Talk
- Setting a Group of S! Circle Talk Members
- Setting Accept/Reject for S! Circle Talk Call
- Deleting S! Circle Talk Members
- Adding Members during S! Circle Talk
- Rejoining S! Circle Talk

Near Chat (Japanese)

- This application employs the use restriction function that enables supervising adults to restrict the usage by children under 18 years old. When resetting "S! Appli settings" (☞P.12-10) using "Phone Password", the password used for restricting the application is also reset and the restriction is canceled.
- For details on password restriction, see Near Chat S! Appli instructions.
- Users may receive unsolicited connection requests from unknown sources, as Near Chat employs Bluetooth® technology. You can reject such requests.

About Near Chat

Exchange real-time text messages wirelessly with compatible devices within 10 meters.

- This application employs Bluetooth® technology. Therefore, connection fees do not apply.
- Near Chat S! Appli is required. This application is pre-installed in 920SC.

Note

- **Near Chat range may vary by ambient conditions.**
- **The pre-installed Near Chat S! Appli cannot be deleted.**

Using Near Chat

Setup

First, activate these settings.


- Bluetooth
- Bluetooth Visibility
- S! Appli request setting

- Activating Near Chat activates Bluetooth.
Bluetooth remains active even after Near Chat ends.

Note

- When *Bluetooth On/Off* is *Off*, you cannot use Near Chat S! Appli.
- When *Bluetooth On/Off* is *On* and *Visibility* in *Bluetooth settings* is *Show my phone*, 9205C is visible to other Bluetooth® devices. Connection requests from other devices may be received.
- When *Visibility* is *Hide my phone* and *S! Appli request* is *Off*, Near Chat will not start from other device requests.

S! Appli Request

- 1  → *Settings* → *Connectivity* → *Bluetooth* → *S! Appli request*



- 2 *On* or *Off*

Starting Near Chat via 9205C Operation

- 1  → *Communication* → *Near Chat* →  (はい)




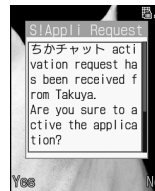
- If *Bluetooth On/Off* is *Off*, press  (Yes).


- 2 Send Near Chat request via S! Appli
- 3 To exit Near Chat, exit S! Appli (ⓍP.7-10)

Receiving Near Chat Request

For details on Near Chat operations, see Near Chat S! Appli instructions.

- 1 When notification of Near Chat request appears, press  (Yes)



- 2 When a confirmation appears, press  (はい)
- 3 To exit Near Chat, exit S! Appli (ⓍP.7-10)

- After 30 seconds of inactivity, notification appears.

Advanced Settings


S! Friend's Status

Setting S! Friend's Status Connection

Open My Status details → Select Network connection status → *Online* or *Offline*

- For *Offline*, other items in My Status or S! Circle Talk cannot be edited or updated.



Adding S! Friend's Status Members

In S! Friend's Status members list,  → *Add member*


■ To select from Phonebook

From phonebook → Search Phonebook and select an entry (P.2-20) → Select a phone number → *Yes*

■ To enter phone number directly


New entry →  (Select) → Enter phone number →  (Save) → *Yes*


Setting Whether to Display My Status in Standby Window

In S! Friend's Status members list, highlight My status →  → *Set Standby window* → *Yes* or *No*


- Choose *Yes* to show or *No* to hide.

Setting to Standby Window


In S! Friend's Status members list,  → *Set Standby window* → *Yes* → Select save location

- Alternatively, in Member Status window, press  and select *Set Standby window*.


Canceling from Standby Window


In S! Friend's Status members list,  → *Set Standby window* → *Yes*

■ To delete a member


Highlight member →  → *Delete*


■ To delete all members

 → *Delete all*



- Alternatively, in Member Status window, press  and select *Set Standby window*.

Viewing S! Friend's Status Notification

In S! Friend's Status members list,  → *S! Friend's Status notification* → Select notification list


- Press  (Display) to check notification details.
- Request notification can also be selected (P.9-4).

Deleting S! Friend's Status Notification


In S! Friend's Status members list,  → *S! Friend's Status notification* → Check a notification to delete →  (Delete)

Making a Voice/Video Call and Sending a Mail


■ To make a call

In S! Friend's Status members list, highlight member →  → *Voice call* or *Video call*


■ To send a message


In S! Friend's Status members list highlight member →  → *Create message S! Mail or SMS* (P.4-3 Sending S! Mail, P.4-8 Sending SMS Messages)

Initiating S! Circle Talk


In S! Friend's Status members list,  → *Call S! Circle Talk* → *Individual or Group* → (P.9-7 Initiating S! Circle Talk 2)


Adding Members to Phonebook

In S! Friend's Status members list highlight a member →  → *Add to phonebook* (P.2-42 Enter and Save Phone Number)


- Alternatively, in Member Status window, press  and select *Add to phonebook*.

Editing Members in Phonebook

In S! Friend's Status members list, highlight a member →  → *Edit phonebook* → Edit phonebook (P.2-18)



- Alternatively, in Member Status window, press  and select *Edit phonebook*.

Setting Actions When Saving



In S! Friend's Status members list,  → *Settings* → *Request reply* → *Always answer, Known only, or Do not answer*

- If *Do not answer* is selected, Rejection request is always returned.

Setting Answer Status


In S! Friend's Status members list,  → *Settings* → *My status one time settings* → *User Settings* → Select answer status → Select answer status icon →  (Save)

Changing Status Icons or Status Labels

In S! Friend's Status members list,  → *Settings* → *Status setting* → Select an icon to change → *Status Icon* → Select an icon → *Status Label* → Enter text →  (Save)



- Selectable icons in Status Icon is same as those for pictograms.
- Up to 4 characters can be entered in Status Label.

Updating Lists

In S! Friend's Status members list,  → *Settings* → *Update list*



- Information in S! Friend's Status is basically updated automatically.

Editing Group Names


In S! Friend's Status members list, use  to switch to group to change name →  → *Change group name* → Enter group name

Changing Groups


■ To change group in S! Friend's Status members list window


In S! Friend's Status members list, use  to switch to group to change → highlight a member →  → *Change group* → Select group to change

■ To change group in Member Status window



In Member Status window, select a member to change group → Use  to select Group field → Select a group to change

Removing a Member

In S! Friend's Status members list, highlight a member →  → *Unregister* → *Yes*

- The removed member cannot be added to the list for 24 hours.
- If Unregistered notification is not received by the removed member within 24 hours, the S! Status Request is sent from the member.
- Alternatively, in Member Status window press  and select *Unregister*.


Editing Names

In S! Friend's Status members list, select a member → Use  to select Name field → Select Last name field → Edit → Select First name field → Edit → 



(OK) →  (Save) →  (Save)

- The name in Phonebook is also changed.

Setting Images of S! Friend's Status Members





In S! Friend's Status members list, select a member → Use  to select Image icon

■ To set from saved still image



Pictures → Select a file →  (Save) →  (Save)

- With Memory Card inserted, files can be selected from *Pictures* and *Digital camera* folders after *Pictures* is selected.

■ To set by capturing still image

Take photo → Capture still image (P.6-5 Single Shot  to ) →  (Save) →  (Save)

■ To cancel set image

Off →  (Save) →  (Save)

- The incoming image in Phonebook is also changed.

Making Voice/Video/S! Circle Talk Calls and Sending Messages to Saved Members

In S! Friend's Status members list, select a member


■ To make a call


Select Phone field of Answer status → *Voice call* or *Video call*

■ To send a message

Select Message field of Answer status → *S! Mail* or *SMS* (➔P.4-3 Sending S! Mail 5, P.4-8 Sending SMS Messages 5)


■ To initiate S! Circle Talk

Select S! Circle Talk field of Answer Status →  (Call) (➔P.9-6)


- S! Circle Talk is not available if Answer status is .

S! Circle Talk

Adding Member List from S! Friend's Status or Phonebook


 → <Add new entry> → *Group* → *S! Friend's Status group* or *Phonebook group* → select a group to add

Setting Speaker Phone for S! Circle Talk


In S! Circle Talk members list,  → *Loud speaker* → *Off* or *On*

- Alternatively, press  ( / ) during S! Circle Talk.

Setting a Group of S! Circle Talk Members

Highlight a group in S! Circle Talk members list →  → *Group settings* (➔P.9-9 Adding Group to Members List 3)


Setting Accept/Reject for S! Circle Talk Call

In S! Circle Talk members list,  → *Incoming calls* → *Voice calls* or *Video calls* → *Reject calls* or *Accept calls*



- S! Circle Talk automatically ends when receiving a call with *Accept calls* set.

Deleting S! Circle Talk Members

■ To delete an entry

Highlight a member in S! Circle Talk members list →  → *Delete* → *Selected* → *Yes*


■ To delete all entries

In S! Circle Talk members list,  → *Delete* → *All* → Enter Phone Password →  (OK) → *Yes*

Adding Members during S! Circle Talk

During S! Circle Talk,  → *Add member* (➔P.9-8 Adding S! Circle Talk Members 2)

Initiating S! Circle Talk by Entering Phone Number

Enter phone number →  → (➔P.9-7 Initiating S! Circle Talk 3)

Rejoining S! Circle Talk

 (Dialed calls) or  (Received calls) → Highlight call log →  → *Rejoin S! Circle Talk*


Handset Security




Changing Phone Password	10-2
Setting PINs	10-2
PIN Certification	10-2
Changing PIN/PIN2	10-3
Canceling PIN Lock	10-3
Setting USIM Lock	10-4
Locking & Restricting Handset Operations	10-4
Phone Lock	10-4
Password Lock	10-5
Application Lock	10-5
Secret Mode	10-5
Secret Folders	10-6
Mobile Tracker	10-6
Facial Recognition	10-7
Using Facial Recognition	10-8
User Registration	10-8
Toggling Facial Recognition	10-9
Starting Facial Recognition	10-10
Restoring Default Settings	10-11
Clearing Phone Memory	10-11
Resetting Settings	10-11
All Reset	10-12
Advanced Settings	
Facial Recognition	10-12

Changing Phone Password

By default, Phone password is set to "9999".

- 1  → **Settings** → **Security** → **Change password**



- 2 Enter current Phone Password →  (OK)



- 3 Enter new Phone Password (4 digits) →  (OK)



- 4 Enter new Phone Password again →  (OK)

Advanced

Settings


- Change Phone Password (ⓘ P.12-20)

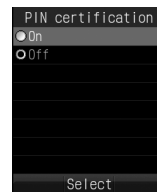
Setting PINs

PINs are security codes for USIM Card. For details, see "USIM Card" (ⓘ P.13-4).

PIN Certification

To activate PIN certification each time the power is turned on, set this function to *On*.

- 1  → **Settings** → **Security** → **PIN certification**



- 2 **On or Off**



- 3 Enter PIN →  (OK)

Changing PIN/PIN2

- 1  → **Settings** → **Security** → **Change PIN or Change PIN2**



- When **PIN certification** (☑P.10-2) is set to **Off**, PIN cannot be changed.

- 2 **Enter current PIN or PIN2** →  (OK)




- 3 **Enter new PIN or PIN2 (4 to 8 digits)** →  (OK)



- 4 **Enter new PIN or PIN2 (4 to 8 digits)** →  (OK)

Canceling PIN Lock

If PIN or PIN2 is incorrectly entered three consecutive times, PIN lock or PIN2 lock is activated to restrict handset operations. To cancel PIN lock or PIN2 lock, perform following operations.

- 1 **In PUK Code entry window,** enter PUK Code →  (OK)



- 2 **Enter new PIN or PIN2 (4 to 8 digits)** →  (OK)



- 3 **Enter new PIN or PIN2 (4 to 8 digits)** →  (OK)

Note

- For more information about PUK and PUK2, contact Customer Service (☎P.13-29).
- Entering incorrect PUK Code 10 consecutive times locks USIM Card (turning 9205C off does not reset the count).
- Once locked, USIM Card cannot be unlocked. Contact Customer Service (☎P.13-29).

Advanced

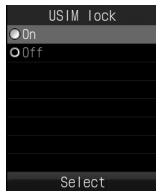
Settings

- Activate or cancel PIN Certification (☞P.12-19)
- Change PIN (☞P.12-19)
- Change PIN2 (☞P.12-19)

Setting USIM Lock


Activate this function to require USIM Password entry to use 920SC with a different USIM Card.


- 1  → **Settings** → **Security** → **USIM lock**



- 2 **On or Off**



- 3 Enter USIM Password (4 to 8 digits) →  (OK)

- To set to *On*, enter USIM password (4 to 8 digits) again and press  (OK).

- USIM Password is dedicated to USIM Card authentication. If USIM Password matches, another USIM Card can be used in 920SC. Change USIM Password each time *USIM lock* is set to *On*.
- If you forget USIM Password, insert USIM Card with *USIM lock* set to *On* and reset all settings (P.10-12).

Advanced


Settings

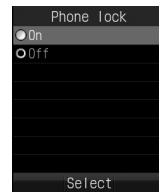
- Activate or cancel USIM Lock ( P.12-19)

Locking & Restricting Handset Operations

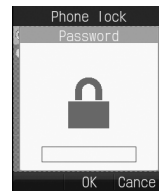
Phone Lock

Activate this function to require Phone Password entry each time 920SC is powered on.

- 1  → **Settings** → **Security** → **Phone lock**



- 2 **On or Off**

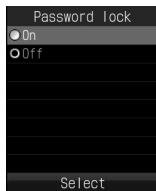


- 3 Enter Phone Password →  (OK)

Password Lock

Lock 920SC in Standby. Activate this function to require Phone Password entry to use 920SC.

- 1 → **Settings** → **Security** → **Password lock**



- 2 **On or Off**



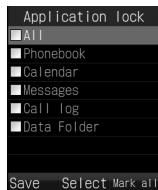
- 3 **Enter Phone Password** → (OK)


• Entering Phone Password cancels Password Lock. Password lock remains *Off*.

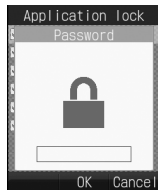
Application Lock

Activate this function to require Phone Password entry to open Phonebook, Calendar, Messaging, Call log, or Data Folder.

- 1 → **Settings** → **Security** → **Application lock**



- 2 **Check functions to lock** →  (Save)

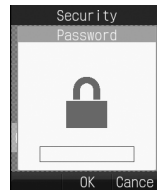


- 3 **Enter Phone Password** → (OK)

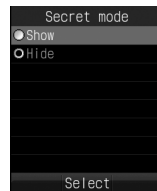
Secret Mode

Select *Hide* to activate this function and hide Secret Phonebook entries, Messaging folders, Calendar schedules, or Tasks.

- 1 → **Settings** → **Security** → **Secret mode**



- 2 **Enter Phone Password** → (OK)



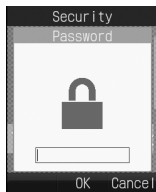
- 3 **Show or Hide**

• Powering 920SC off then back on activates Secret mode.

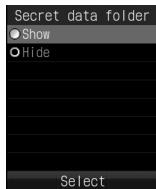
Secret Folders

Activate Secret mode to Secret folders within Data Folder.

- 1 → *Settings* → *Security* → *Secret data folder*



- 2 Enter Phone Password → (OK)



- 3 *Show or Hide*

- Powering 9205C off then back on activates Secret mode.

Mobile Tracker

Activate this function to send SMS notification to a specified address if a different USIM Card is inserted. Specify up to 2 addresses.

- 1 → *Settings* → *Security* → *Mobile tracker*



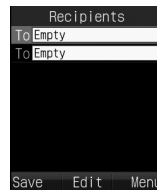
- 2 Enter Phone Password → (OK)



- 3 Select Activation field → *On*




- 4 Select Recipients field



- 5 Select To field → Enter address → (Save)

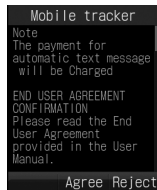


- To enter an address from Phonebook, highlight To field →  → *Phonebook* → Search Phonebook and select entry (⤵ P.2-20) → Select a phone number.

6 Select Sender field → Enter sender name




7 Press (Save) → Confirm message



8 (Agree)

- Not to agree the message, press  (Reject).

- When a different USIM Card is inserted, SMS notification is sent to the specified address upon 920SC activation. Nothing appears on 920SC. If Phone Password is incorrectly entered three consecutive times when trying to set Mobile Tracker, SMS notification is also sent.
- To delete a recipient address, press  and select *Delete* in Step 5.

Advanced

Settings

- Activate or cancel Phone Lock (☞ P.12-19)
- Activate or cancel Password Lock (☞ P.12-19)
- Activate or cancel Application Lock (☞ P.12-19)
- Activate or cancel Secret mode (☞ P.12-19)
- Activate Mobile Tracker (☞ P.12-20)

Facial Recognition

When powered on, 920SC verifies an authorized user from a registered image. If Facial Recognition fails, 920SC is disabled.

- While functions are in use, Facial Recognition may take time. In this case, after exiting all functions in use, the recognition starts.
- Facial Recognition matches the saved image to the one at the time of recognition. When capturing an image or using Facial Recognition, remember the following points.
 - Make sure your face (eyes, mouth, nose, eyebrows, etc.) is clearly visible. Facial features may be obscured by hair, colored glasses, hat, etc., inhibiting image capture or recognition.
 - The face should be lit evenly and brightly. Avoid backlight, strong light, or shadows.

Note


- **Identification accuracy is not guaranteed. SoftBank is not liable for misuse or damages associated with Facial Recognition.**
- **Phone Password is required for Facial Recognition settings or cancellation upon recognition failure. Changing Phone Password enhances security. (⤵ P.10-2).**

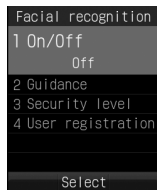
Using Facial Recognition

User Registration

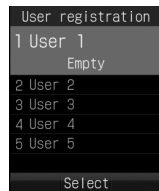
Save image, name and a question & answer from which to verify identification, should recognition fail.

Save up to five users. Save up to five images per user. Change location (home, office, inside vehicle or station, etc.) or condition (face angle, accessories, glasses, etc.) for each shot.

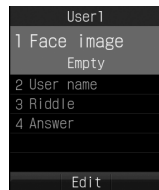
- 1  → **Settings** → **Security** → **Facial recognition**



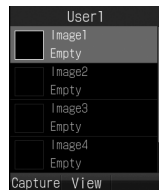
- 2 **User registration**




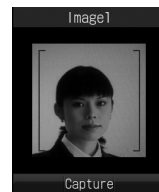
- 3 **Select from User 1 to User 5**






- 4 **Face image**



- 5 **Select from Image1 to Image5** →  (Capture)

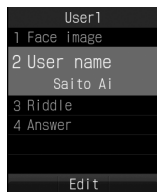


- 6 **Frame your face on Display** →  (Capture) →  (Save) →  (OK)

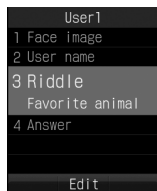


- After saving image, if *Facial recognition* is *Off*, an activation confirmation appears. Choose *Yes* to activate Facial Recognition.

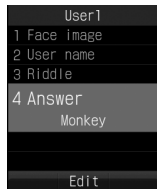
7 **Clear/削除** → *User name* → Enter user name



8 *Riddle* → Enter question




9 *Answer* → Enter answer

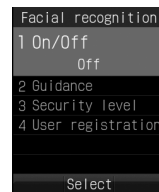


- Image capture may take time. Stay still until complete.
- A confirmation appears if registration fails. Change shooting conditions and start over.
- If a question and answer are not saved, enter Phone Password for recognition.
- Saving multiple images increase recognition accuracy, however, security may be compromised.
- The same image can be saved to multiple users. This may increase recognition accuracy.
- Look straight and frame whole face with no expression. If face is too small, image may not be saved. Do not change face angle while shooting.

toggling Facial Recognition


Activate Facial Recognition. Save a user beforehand.

1  → *Settings* → *Security* → *Facial recognition*



2 *On/Off*




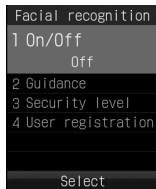
3 *On or Off* → Enter Phone Password →  (OK)

- Set to *On* to match your face to the saved portrait when 920SC is turned on. If the recognition fails, 920SC is disabled.

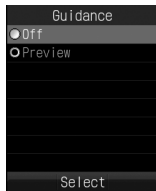
Recognition Guidance

Activate this function to show guidance in Facial Recognition. Cancel it for recognition message with no image. Select to *Preview* to show image.

- 1  → **Settings** → **Security** → **Facial recognition**



- 2 **Guidance**




- 3 **Off or Preview**

Setting Security Level

Select recognition accuracy level.

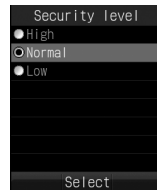
- Accuracy levels are as follows.

Item	Description
High	Unsaved faces are least likely to be recognized by mistake. However, your face may also be difficult to recognize.
Normal	An intermediate setting.
Low	Your face is most recognizable. However, unsaved faces are more likely to be recognized by mistake.

- 1  → **Settings** → **Security** → **Facial recognition**



- 2 **Security level**



- 3 **High, Normal, or Low**

Starting Facial Recognition

Facial Recognition starts when the power is turned on. When face is recognized, 920SC is enabled.





- 1 **Face Display**

- When *Guidance* (P.10-10) is *Preview*, image appears. When face is recognized, focus moves to recognized face. Recognition result appears with *Matching* (green frame), *Similar* (yellow frame), or *Unknown* (red frame).
- Internal camera is used for Facial Recognition. Dust or smudges on the lens may lead to recognition failure. Clean with a soft cloth before use.
- While functions are in use, Facial Recognition may take time. End other functions.


If Facial Recognition Fails

To try again, press  (Recog.).

If recognition fails, follow steps below accordingly:

- If similar
 - Use question and answer to complete recognition. Question appears. Press  (Answer) and enter it.
 - When a question and an answer are not saved, enter Phone Password. Enter Phone Password and press  (OK) to complete recognition.
- If no match is found
 - Use Phone Password conduct the recognition. Press  (Code), enter Phone Password and press  (OK) to complete recognition.

Advanced

 **Advanced Settings** (ⓘ P.10-12)


 **Settings**

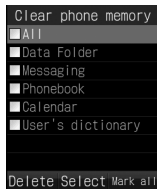
- Activate or cancel Facial Recognition (ⓘ P.12-19)
- Show or hide Guidance (ⓘ P.12-19)
- Set Security Level (ⓘ P.12-19)
- Save Facial Recognition User (ⓘ P.12-19)


Restoring Default Settings

Clearing Phone Memory

Clear Data Folder, Messaging, 920SC Phonebook, Calendar, or User's dictionary. Alternatively, clear all 920SC files at once.

- 1  → **Settings** → **Memory settings** → **Phone memory** → **Clear phone memory**



- 2 **Check items** →  (Delete)




- 3 **Enter Phone Password** →  (OK) → **Yes**

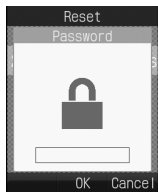
Resetting Settings

Clear saved contents/settings in Settings and saved contents/settings of Alarms in Tools and restore default settings.

The following settings are not affected.

Item	Unaffected Settings
Call settings	Contents saved in <i>Reject incoming calls</i> → <i>Reject list</i> → <i>Edit black list</i> Settings saved in <i>Optional services</i> → <i>Voice mail/Call forwarding</i> → <i>Call forwarding on</i> Settings saved in <i>Optional services</i> → <i>Call waiting</i> Settings saved in <i>Optional services</i> → <i>Call barring</i> Settings saved in <i>Optional services</i> → <i>Voice mail/Call forwarding</i> → <i>Voice mail on</i>
Phonebook	Settings saved in <i>Account details</i> , <i>Group settings</i>
Security	<i>USIM lock</i> , <i>PIN certification</i> , <i>Change PIN</i> , <i>Change PIN2</i>

- 1  → *Settings* → *Security* → *Reset* → *Reset settings*



- 2 Enter Phone Password →  (OK) → *Yes*

All Reset

Restore 9205C to defaults and delete Phonebook (Phone), Messaging, and Data Folder contents/ settings. However, preinstalled files and S! Appli are not deleted.

- 1  → *Settings* → *Security* → *Reset* → *All reset*



- 2 Enter Phone Password →  (OK) → *Yes*

Advanced




Settings

- Delete Phonebook entries, messages, etc. (ⓘ P.12-19)
- Restore Settings to default values (ⓘ P.12-19)



Advanced Settings

Facial Recognition



Editing User Information

-  → *Settings* → *Security* → *Facial recognition* → *User registration* → Select user →  P.10-8 User Registration 



Deleting User Information

-  → *Settings* → *Security* → *Facial recognition* → *User registration* → Highlight user →  (Delete) → *Yes*

Viewing Images

-  → *Settings* → *Security* → *Facial recognition* → *User registration* → Select a user → *Face image* → Highlight image →  (View)
- When multiple portraits are saved, press  to check another one.

Deleting Images

-  → *Settings* → *Security* → *Facial recognition* → *User registration* → Select a user → *Face image* → Highlight image →  (Delete) → *Yes*

Connectivity & File Backup



Connectivity	11-2
Transmission Types	11-2
Infrared	11-2
Getting Started	11-2
Infrared Precautions	11-2
Infrared Data Transmission	11-3
Sending Data	11-3
Receiving One by One	11-3
Transferring All	11-4
Receiving All	11-4
Bluetooth®	11-5
Getting Started	11-5
Bluetooth® Precautions	11-5
Bluetooth® Data Transmission	11-6
Toggling Bluetooth®	11-6
Searching for Bluetooth® Devices	11-6
Browsing Connected Device Files	11-7
Sending	11-7
Receiving One by One	11-7
Transferring All	11-8
Receiving All	11-8
A/V Headset	11-9
USB Connection	11-9
Getting Started	11-9
Connecting to a PC	11-9

Memory Card Backup	11-10
Memory Card Backup Precautions	11-10
Backing Up to Memory Card	11-10
Loading from Memory Card	11-11
Mass Storage	11-12
Connecting to a PC	11-12
Removing Device	11-12
S! Addressbook Back-up (SAB)	11-13
SAB Precautions	11-13
Synchronization Modes	11-13
Synchronizing Phonebook	11-14
Synchronizing Phonebook Automatically	11-14
Advanced Settings	
Bluetooth® Settings	11-15
S! Addressbook Back-up	11-16

Connectivity

Transfer files wirelessly between 920SC and other Infrared or Bluetooth®-compatible devices, or connect 920SC to PCs or printers via USB Cable.

Transmission Types

Transfer files via Infrared or Bluetooth® as follows.

Transmission Type	Description
Transfer Each	Receive single files/send multiple files. Received files are automatically saved to the appropriate location by file type.
Transfer All	Receive/send all files by function at once.

- Most received files are saved to the appropriate location by file type, however, some may be saved to *Other documents* in Data Folder.

Infrared

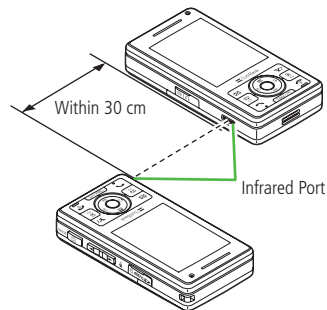
Exchange files wirelessly with infrared-compatible handsets, PCs or other devices.

Getting Started

- 920SC Infrared is based on IrMC1.1. Transmission may be unavailable for some functions, even when IrMC1.1 is supported on the other party's handset.
- Infrared data transmission is unavailable while sending/receiving message or using Internet.
- Calling or sending mail are unavailable during Infrared transmissions.
- Transmissions may be inhibited in direct sunlight, under fluorescent lighting or near infrared devices.
- Authorization Code is the 4-digit password used to allow transmissions between infrared devices. Enter same Authorization Code on both devices when transmitting all files at once.

Infrared Precautions

- Place devices within 30 cm. Align device ports. Do not place objects in between devices.



- Maintain port alignment until transmission ends.
- A soiled port may inhibit transmission. Clean port with a soft cloth beforehand.
- If transmission fails, a confirmation appears. Review precautions, choose *Yes* to try again.

Infrared Data Transmission

Send and receive Phonebook or Calendar entries, Account details, Schedules, Tasks, still images, videos, sound files, vFiles, and others.

Send either all Phonebook entries, Schedules, Tasks or Bookmarks in a single transfer.

Note



- Infrared is unavailable while Internet services/Media Player is use, or while editing mail/files.
- Some received files cannot be saved on 9205C.

Sending Data


First, activate Infrared on the other device.

1 Send data

■ To send from Data Folder


In list,  → *Send* → *Via infrared* → Select data →  (Send)

■ To send from Calendar, Tasks, Bookmarks or Phonebook

Highlight item →  → *Send* → *Via infrared*

- Some functions allow sending from Details/Playback window.

Receiving One by One

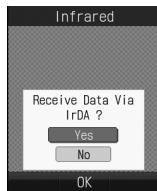
- 1  → *Settings* → *Connectivity* → *Infrared* → *Infrared On/Off* → *On (3 min.)*

- If Bluetooth® is active, cancellation confirmation appears. Choose *Yes* to activate Infrared.
- 9205C is ready to receive data.

- 2 **Begin sending from other device within 3 minutes**





- 3 **Cancel Calling confirmation appears, choose *Yes***



- 4 **Receive confirmation appears, choose *Yes***



- 5 **Save confirmation appears, choose *Yes***

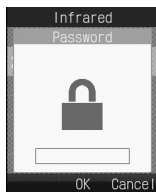
- To save pictograms, select *Pictures* or *My Pictogram*.
- Press  (Cancel) to cancel receiving.
- Press  to terminate data reception.

Note

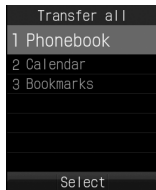
- Receive files in Standby. Files cannot be received when Password Lock is active, All Keys locked or during Software Update.

Transferring All

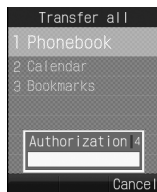
- 1 → *Settings* → *Connectivity*
→ *Infrared* → *Transfer all*



- 2 Enter Phone Password →
 (OK)



- 3 *Phonebook, Calendar, or Bookmarks*



- For *Phonebook*, choose *Yes* to transfer images

- 4 Enter Authorization Code
(4 digits) → (OK)

Receiving All

- 1 → *Settings* → *Connectivity*
→ *Infrared* → *Infrared On/Off*
→ *On (3 min.)*

- 920SC is ready to receive files.

- 2 Begin sending from other device within 3 minutes



- 3 No Calling confirmation appears, choose *Yes*



4 Enter Authorization Code (4 digits) → (OK)




- Enter same Authorization Code as sender.



5 Select a saving method

■ To add files as new entries

Add New



■ To overwrite current entries

Overwrite → *Yes* → Enter Phone Password →  (OK)

- Receiving all entries deletes existing 920SC entries except Account details. Receiving Account details deletes existing Account details except handset phone number.
- Press  (Cancel) to cancel receiving.
- Press  to terminate reception.

Advanced

Settings

- Activate or cancel Infrared transmission ( P.12-26)
- Transfer Phonebook or Calendar entries, and Bookmarks at once ( P.12-26)

Bluetooth®

Connect Bluetooth®-compatible handsets or other devices to exchange files wirelessly, or handsfree devices for handsfree calling. Connect 920SC to PCs and other devices for Internet access, etc.

Getting Started

Bluetooth® transmissions require Bluetooth®-compatible devices with the same profiles. See 920SC Bluetooth® specifications below:

Item	Specification
Communication Standard	Bluetooth® Standard Ver. 2.0
Applicable Profiles	Headset Handsfree Serial Port Dialup Networking File Transfer Object Push Advanced Audio Distribute Audio/Video Remote Control Basic Imaging ¹ Basic Printing
Output	Bluetooth® Power Class2
Communication Distance ²	Approximately 10 m

Item	Specification
Frequency Band Used	2.4 GHz
Bluetooth® QD ID	B013357

- 1 920SC only supports printing.
- 2 Varies by radio interference and other conditions.

Bluetooth® Precautions


- 920SC may not work with all Bluetooth® devices.
- File transfers may not be available with some Bluetooth® devices. Operations, displays or actions vary by device, even if device meets Bluetooth® standards by interference.
- The 2.4 GHz band used by Bluetooth® devices is shared with other devices. Transmission rate or distance may be reduced, or transmissions terminated.
- Use of handsfree devices may create noise depending on connected devices or the usage environment.
- 920SC cannot be connected to other devices when connected to Bluetooth® headphones while playing media files.
- USB and Bluetooth® cannot be used simultaneously.
- Deactivate Bluetooth® before connecting USB Cable.

Bluetooth® Data Transmission

Send and receive Phonebook or Calendar entries, Account details, Schedules, Tasks, still images, videos, sound files, vFiles, and others.


Send either all Phonebook entries, Schedules, Tasks or Bookmarks in a single transfer.

Toggle Bluetooth®

- 1  → *Settings* → *Connectivity* → *Bluetooth* → *Bluetooth On/Off*




- 2 *On or Off*

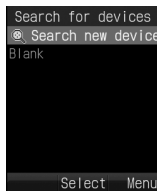
- If Infrared is active, a confirmation appears. Choose *Yes* to activate Bluetooth®.
- If Bluetooth® is active,  appears at the top of Display. Transfer data or connect compatible devices.

Searching for Bluetooth® Devices

Save Bluetooth® devices to Paired devices list. Up to 10 can be saved. Enter same Authorization Code on both 9205C and device.

Activate Bluetooth® on device beforehand.

- 1  → *Settings* → *Connectivity* → *Bluetooth* → *Search for devices*




- 2 *Search new devices*



- If Bluetooth® is *Off*, choose *Yes*.

- 3 When devices appear, select one



- 4 Enter Authorization Code (4 to 16 digits) →  (OK)




- 5 Enter same Authorization Code on device within 30 seconds

- Authorization Code is a 4- to 16-digit password required for transmissions between Bluetooth® devices. When connecting to a handsfree device, enter specified Authorization Code. Authorization Code entry is not required for registered devices.
- If authorization fails, a confirmation appears. Choose *Yes* and repeat from step 4.
- If 10 paired devices are already registered, oldest is deleted to make room for the new one. If all are authenticated, memory full confirmation appears.
- Paired Devices Indicators
 - PC: Personal Computer
 - MP: Mobile Phone
 - PDA: PDA
 - PR: Printer
 - OT: Others
 - HD: Handsfree Device/Headset
- If a Bluetooth® connection request appears, choose *Yes* and enter specified Authorization Code within 30 seconds. For paired devices, choose *Yes* to establish connection without Authorization Code.

Browsing Connected Device Files

Access connected device's shared folders or files. Import or delete files from the other device.

- 1  → *Settings* → *Connectivity* → *Bluetooth* → *Paired devices*





- 2 Select a device
- 3 Approve access on source device


Sending

- 1 Select file and send

■ From Data Folder, Phonebook, Bookmarks, or Tasks

In list,  → *Send* → *Via bluetooth* → Select entries →  (Send) → *Yes*

■ From Calendar

In list, highlight entry →  → *Send* → *Via bluetooth*

- 2 Select receiving device

- Receiver accepts and transfer begins.
- If device is not registered, register it first.

- Some functions allow sending option from Details or Playback window.

Receiving One by One

After sender approves connection, file transfer begins and received file is saved in Data Folder.

- 1 Transfer confirmation appears, choose *Yes*




- 2 Received confirmation appears, choose *Yes*


- Save received pictogram files to *Pictures* or *My Pictograms*.

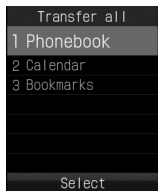
- Received folders are saved to *Other documents*.

Transferring All

- 1  → *Settings* → *Connectivity* → *Bluetooth* → *Transfer all*



- 2 Select receiving device → Enter Phone Password →  (OK)




- If device is not registered, register it first.

- 3 *Phonebook, Calendar, or Bookmark*

- When Phonebook is selected to transfer image data, choose *Yes*.

Receiving All

- 1  → *Settings* → *Connectivity* → *Bluetooth* → *Bluetooth On/Off* → *On*



- 920SC is set in standby mode to receive data. Begin sending files from other device.

- 2 Connection confirmation appears, choose *Yes*






- 3 Select a saving method

- To add new data

Add

- To delete all to overwrite data

Overwrite → *Yes* → Enter Phone Password  (OK)

- When receiving phonebook entries, all entries except My Phonebook Information are deleted. When receiving My Phonebook Information, all data except the phone number is overwritten.
- Press  (Cancel) to cancel the reception.
- Press  to terminate data reception.

A/V Headset

Connect Bluetooth®-compatible headphones to listen to music.

1 Activate Media Player




2 → *Transfer to A/V headset*

3 Select a device to connect

- When no device is registered, search and register new device.

- To switch output from headsets to 920SC, press

 → *Transfer to Phone.*

Advanced

Advanced Settings (☞ P.11-15)

- Disconnecting Currently Connected Device
- Browsing Currently Connected Device
- Editing Name of Paired Device
- Authorizing Paired Device
- Deleting Connected Device
- Viewing Paired Device Details
- Searching Devices by Type

Settings

- Activate or cancel Bluetooth® functions (☞ P.12-25)
- Search for a new Bluetooth® device (☞ P.12-25)
- Reference connected device files (☞ P.12-25)
- Search/save from Bluetooth® devices (☞ P.12-25)
- Adjust Handsfree setting (☞ P.12-25)
- Set Secure mode (☞ P.12-25)
- Set Answering mode (☞ P.12-25)
- Confirm 920SC device address (☞ P.12-26)
- Edit 920SC name (☞ P.12-26)
- Confirm available Bluetooth® functions (☞ P.12-26)
- Activate or cancel S! Appli communication (☞ P.12-26)
- Transfer all Phonebook or Calendar entries, or Bookmarks at once (☞ P.12-26)

USB Connection

Connect 920SC to a PC to transfer files between devices. Connect printer to print still images. 920SC supports USB 2.0.

Getting Started

Install Samsung PC Studio and USB driver first. For installation instructions, PC operating environment, etc., see user guide on the included CD-ROM.

Connecting to a PC

The following operations are available:

- Transfer 920SC Data Folder files to PC
- Import PC files and save to Data Folder
- Perform Packet Communications

Note

- **To access to the Internet through PC or PDA connection (Mobile data communication), a large volume of packet communication is required in short period that will apply for high packet communication charge. Please pay attention on communication fee when using mobile data communication.**

Memory Card Backup

Back up Phonebook entries, etc. to Memory Card (Package backup). Restore backed up items as required (Package restoration).


- Restore from Backup in case of accidental loss.
- Backups are saved by type (transfer date is file name).
- Available Backup types
 - Phonebook
 - Calendar
 - Tasks
 - Content Key
 - Bookmarks
- Use Backup to save files, share information between microSD™ Memory Card-compatible handsets, or move files to a newly purchased handset.

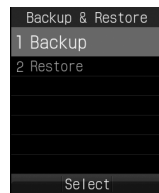
Memory Card Backup Precautions

- Not available when battery is low.
- During backup or loading data, Voice Call or Messaging are unavailable (Call reception is also unavailable).
- Some data may not be transferable. Alternatively, some content of backup data may not be usable on other SoftBank handsets or PCs, etc.

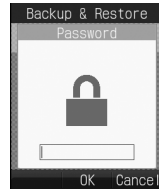
- Data transfer may not be carried out correctly when 9205C or Memory Card have low free space.
- 9205C can hold up to 200 schedules or tasks of Calendar and Tasks. When the number of items exceeds 200 during loading from Memory Card, a confirmation appears and the excess will not be saved.
- Yahoo! Keitai, PC Site Browser bookmarks are backed up.
- With some data format, the bookmarks with large size may not be transferred correctly.
- Some images set to Phonebook entries may not be transferred because of its size.
- Backup data saved in Memory Card is not accessible on 9205C until being loaded from Memory Card.
- Note the following precautions to back up Content Keys.
 - Backup file can hold only one Content Key at a time. To backup another Content Key, a confirmation appears and the previous backup file is overwritten (To keep the previously backed up files, load the Content Key to 9205C from Memory Card and then perform backup again).
 - To backup files to Memory Card, Content Key is moved from 9205C and the file is inaccessible.
 - To load to 9205C, Content Key is added and the existing Content Key on 9205C is not overwritten.

Backing Up to Memory Card

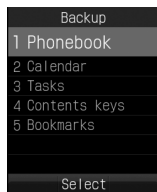
- 1  → *Settings* → *Memory settings* → *Memory card* → *Backup & Restore*



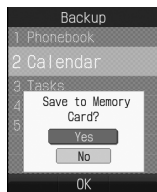
- 2 *Backup* → *Yes*



- 3 Enter Phone Password →
⓪ (OK)



- 4 Phonebook, Calendar, Tasks, Contents keys, or Bookmarks

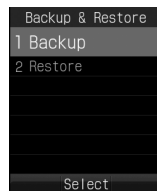


- 5 Confirmation appears, choose Yes

- Press **Y** (Cancel) to cancel backup.
- If Content Key backup file already exists, an overwrite confirmation appears. Press **Y** (Yes) to overwrite the file.

Loading from Memory Card

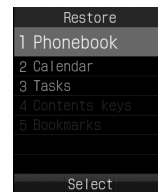
- 1 ⓪ → Settings → Memory settings → Memory card → Backup & Restore



- 2 Restore → Yes



- 3 Enter Phone Password → ⓪ (OK)



- 4 Phonebook, Calendar, Tasks, Contents keys, or Bookmarks



5 Select a file



- Press **[Y]** (Delete) and choose *Yes*.

6 Add or Overwrite

- Press **[Y]** (Cancel) to cancel restoration.

Advanced

Settings

- Backup Memory (☞ P.12-27)
- Restore Memory (☞ P.12-27)

Mass Storage

Connect 920SC, Memory Card inserted, to a PC via USB Cable to manage Memory Card files on the PC.

Connecting to a PC

- 1 **[Home]** → *Settings* → *Connectivity* → *Mass storage*



- 2 Enter Phone Password → **[Home]** (OK)



- 3 Connect 920SC to PC via USB Cable

4 Use PC to access Memory Card files

- Mass Storage is unavailable while receiving S! Mail, using Samsung PC Studio, or when *My status* in S! Friend's Status is *Online*.
- Calling and Messaging are unavailable in Mass Storage.

Removing Device

- 1 On PC, perform device removal
- 2 In Mass storage, **[Y]** (Exit)



- 3 Disconnect USB Cable

Note

- Never disconnect USB Cable before removing device from PC.

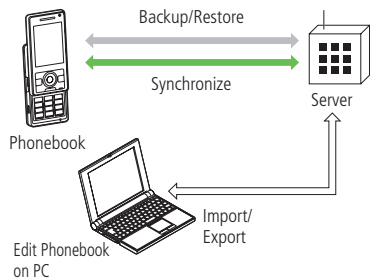
Advanced

Settings

- Activate Mass Storage (☞ P.12-26)

S! Addressbook Back-up (SAB)

Back up 920SC Phonebook entries on Server or synchronize 920SC Phonebook entries with SAB. Restore lost 920SC Phonebook entries from SAB.



- SAB use requires a separate subscription.
- If you should change handsets, select an SAB compatible handset to access SAB entries.

Note

- **Packet Communication charges apply to connections between 920SC and SAB (Backup, Restore, or Synchronize).**

SAB Precautions

- These items cannot be synchronized with SAB; using Restore for these items will delete them from 920SC:
 - Picture
 - Ringtone settings, Vibration settings (Voice Call, Video Call, Messages, S! Friend's Status, or S! Circle Talk)
 - Blood type
 - Hobby
- Select back up/restore timing and sync mode carefully to avoid accidental deletion of entries.
 - Delete all 920SC entries then select *Synchronize*, *Sync from client*, or *Backup* to delete all SAB entries.
 - Delete all SAB entries then select *Synchronize*, *Sync from server*, or *Restore* to delete all 920SC entries.
- If number of entry items savable on handset varies from SAB, synchronization will reflect lower number.
- Post handset change service continues as follows:

Content	Detail
SoftBank 3G Handsets	
SAB Supported	SAB entries remain.
SAB Not Supported	SAB service usable and entries remain; handset access unavailable but PC access available.

Content	Detail
V3, V4, V5, V6, V8 Series	
	SAB service is automatically canceled and SAB entries are deleted.

- When SAB service is canceled and Phonebook entries on Server are deleted.

Synchronization Modes

Available synchronization modes are as follows.

Sync Mode	Description
Synchronize	Backs up 920SC entries and updates SAB. ¹
Sync from client	Backs up updated 920SC entries. ²
Sync from server	Downloads updated SAB entries to 920SC. ³
Backup	Deletes SAB entries and uploads 920SC entries. ⁴
Restore	Deletes all 920SC entries and downloads SAB entries to 920SC (up to 920SC limit) last edited first. ⁵

- 1 If 920SC Phonebook entry and SAB entry item are both updated, SAB entry item takes priority.
- 2 Phonebook update information on Server is not applied to the one on 920SC.
- 3 Phonebook update information of 920SC is not applied to the one on Server.

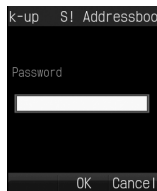
- 4 Be careful that all Phonebook entries on Server is deleted.
- 5 Be careful that all Phonebook entries of 9205C is deleted.

• *Slow sync* is performed regardless of Sync mode setting when using SAB for the first time or the last synch was not completed correctly by canceling, etc., *Slow sync* works as the same with *Synchronize*. View Sync type in Sync log to see if *Slow sync* was performed.

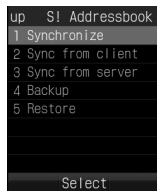
Synchronizing Phonebook

Connect to Phonebook managed on Server and synchronize it with 9205C Phonebook entries.

- 1 → **Phonebook** → **S! Addressbook Back-up** → **Start sync**



- 2 Enter Phone Password → (OK)



- 3 **Synchronize, Sync from client, Sync from server, Backup, or Restore** → **Yes** → (OK) → (OK)

Note

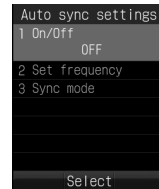
- Starting synch connect to network. Packet Communication charges apply. Network connection is automatically disconnected when the synchronization ends.

Synchronizing Phonebook Automatically

Setting *Auto sync* to *On* requires Set frequency and Sync mode settings.

Setting & Canceling Auto Sync

- 1 → **Phonebook** → **S! Addressbook Back-up** → **Auto sync settings** → **Enter Phone Password** → (OK)



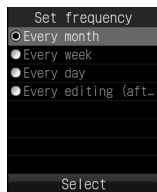
- 2 **On/Off** → **ON** or **OFF**
 - When selecting *ON*, press (OK)

Setting Frequency

- 1 → *Phonebook* → *S!*
Addressbook Back-up →
Auto sync settings → Enter
Phone Password → (OK)



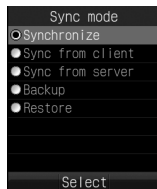
- 2 *Set frequency*



- 3 *Set items*

- **To back up once a month**
Every month → Enter date → Enter time
- **To back up once a week**
Every week → Select day → Enter time
- **To back up once a day**
Every day → Enter time
- **To back up 10 minutes after editing Phonebook entries**
Every editing (after 10 min)

- 4 *Sync mode*



- 5 *Synchronize, Sync from client, Sync from server, Back up, or Restore* → (OK)

Advanced

Advanced Settings P.11-16

Advanced Settings

Bluetooth® Settings

Disconnecting Currently Connected Device

→ *Settings* → *Connectivity* → *Bluetooth* → *Paired devices* → Highlight a device → → *Disconnect*

Browsing Currently Connected Device

→ *Settings* → *Connectivity* → *Bluetooth* → *Paired devices* → Highlight a device → → *Browse device* → Approve access on source device

Editing Name of Paired Device

→ *Settings* → *Connectivity* → *Bluetooth* → *Paired devices* → Highlight a device → → *Rename* → Rename paired device

Authorizing Paired Device


→ *Settings* → *Connectivity* → *Bluetooth* → *Paired devices* → Highlight a device → → *Authorize device* or *Unauthorize device*

- When *Authorize device* is set, the setting turns to *Unauthorized device*


Deleting Connected Device

● → Settings → Connectivity → Bluetooth → Paired devices


■ To delete an entry

Highlight a device →  → Delete → Selected → Yes


■ To delete all entries

 → Delete → All → Enter Phone password → ● (OK) → Yes

Viewing Paired Device Details


● → Settings → Connectivity → Bluetooth → Paired devices → Highlight a device →  → Device details

Searching Devices by Type

● → Settings → Connectivity → Bluetooth → Search for devices → Highlight Search new devices →  → Search setting → Select a search type

- Select an item from *All, Headset, Mobile phone, PC/PDA, Printer, or Device address*. When selecting *Device address*, Enter an address.




Acquiring Connected Device Data

● → Settings → Connectivity → Bluetooth → Paired devices → Highlight a device →  → Browse device → Approve access on source device



■ To acquire a file

 → Open → Highlight a file → ● (Get)

■ To acquire multiple files

 → Open →  → Get → Multiple → Check files →  (Get)



■ To acquire all files

 → Open →  → Get → All.


■ To acquire a folder

 → Get



Deleting Data on Connected Device

● → Settings → Connectivity → Bluetooth → Paired devices → Highlight a device →  → Browse device → Approve access on source device →  → Open


■ To delete a file

Highlight a file →  → Delete → Selected → Yes

■ To delete multiple files

Highlight a file →  → Delete → Multiple → Yes → Check files →  (Delete)

■ To delete all files

Highlight a file →  → Delete → All → Yes

S! Addressbook Back-up

Viewing S! Addressbook Back-up History

● → Phonebook → S! Addressbook Back-up → Sync log

Deleting S! Addressbook Back-up History

● → Phonebook → S! Addressbook Back-up → Sync log

■ To delete a log

Highlight a log →  (Delete) → Yes

■ To delete all logs

 (Delete all) → Yes

Handset Customization




Messaging Settings	12-2
Custom Mail Address	12-2
S! Mail & SMS	12-2
S! Mail	12-3
SMS	12-5
Internet Settings	12-5
Yahoo! Keitai	12-5
PC Site Browser	12-6
Media Player Settings	12-7
Music	12-7
Movie	12-7
Mobile Camera Settings	12-8
Camera & Video	12-8
Photo	12-9
Video	12-9
S! Appli Settings	12-10
Phonebook Settings	12-10
Standby Window Settings	12-11
Sounds & Alerts Settings	12-13
Manner Mode Settings	12-14
Display Settings	12-15

Phone Settings	12-17
Security Settings	12-19
Call Settings	12-20
Mode Settings	12-25
Connectivity Settings	12-25
Bluetooth®	12-25
Infrared	12-26
Mass Storage	12-26
Network	12-26
Memory Settings	12-26


Messaging Settings

Custom Mail Address






Customize or change handset mail address	 → <i>Settings</i> → <i>Custom mail address</i> → Follow onscreen instructions <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Change mail account name (alphanumerics before @). Random alphanumerics set by default.
--	--

S! Mail & SMS



Start Here

 → *Settings* → *Universal settings*


Change font size	Default Standard	<i>Font size</i> → <i>Large, Standard, Small, or Tiny</i>
Change scroll unit	Default Single line	<i>Scroll unit</i> → <i>Single line, Half screen, or Whole screen</i>
Request or cancel Delivery Report	Default Off	<i>Delivery report</i> → <i>On or Off</i> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>On</i>: Receive a message confirming successful delivery of a sent message.
Insert or hide Signature	Default Off	<i>Signature</i> → <i>Auto insert</i> → <i>On, New, or Off</i>
Edit Signature		<i>Signature</i> → <i>Edit</i> → Enter a signature
Show or hide transmission progress bar	Default Show	<i>Sending progress settings</i> → <i>Sending progress</i> → <i>Show or Do not show</i>
Always show or hide send result (progress bar hidden)		<i>Sending progress settings</i> → <i>Sending result notice</i> → <i>With notice, Without notice, or Check every time</i> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>Sending result notice</i> is only selectable when <i>Sending progress</i> is set to <i>Do not show</i>.
Set received message notice content or hide notice	Default Sender	<i>Message notice</i> → <i>View setting</i> → <i>Sender, Subject, Sender & Subject, or Off</i> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Received message notice scrolls above active function windows.
Select secret folder message notice setting	Default Show	<i>Message notice</i> → <i>Secret folder</i> → Enter Phone Password → <input checked="" type="radio"/> (OK) → <i>Show or Not show</i> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>Not show</i>: Incoming message notice window for messages sorted to secret folders or <i>Message notice</i> does not appear.
Change message list view	Default 2 line	<i>Message list view</i> → <i>2 line, 1 line (subject), or 1 line (sender)</i>

Change received message view	Default Folder view	<i>Received messages view</i> → <i>Folder view</i> or <i>List view</i>
Change sent message view	Default Folder view	<i>Sent messages view</i> → <i>Folder view</i> or <i>List view</i>
Adjust 3D Pictogram auto play setting	Default Always	<p><i>3D pictograms</i> → <i>3D Picto. Auto play</i> → <i>Always, Only unread, or Disable</i></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Each setting is as follows. <i>Always</i>: Apply 3D Pictogram for all messages <i>Only unread</i>: Apply 3D Pictogram for unread messages only <i>Disable</i>: Disable 3D Pictogram The first time a received message is viewed <i>3D Picto., Auto play</i> confirmation appears.
Select 3D Pictogram color settings	Default Pattern1	<p><i>3D pictograms</i> → <i>Color settings</i> → Press  to show target pattern →  (Select)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> In <i>Color settings</i>, press  (Preview) for current settings.
Select 3D Pictogram display speed	Default Standard	<p><i>3D pictograms</i> → <i>Display speed</i> → <i>Standard, High, or Low</i></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> In <i>Display speed</i>, press  (Preview) for current settings.
S! Mail		
	Start Here	 → <i>Settings</i> → <i>S! Mail settings</i>
Set message sending priority	Default Normal	<i>Sending options</i> → <i>Priority</i> → <i>Urgent, Normal, or Low</i>
Set sent message Mail Service Center expiry	Default Maximum	<p><i>Sending options</i> → <i>Expiry time</i> → <i>Maximum, 1 hour, 3 hours, 6 hours, 12 hours, 1 day, 3 days, or 1 week</i></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> When the expiry time has elapsed, S! Mails are automatically deleted from Mail Server.
Set time to send a message via Mail Service Center	Default Immediately	<p><i>Sending options</i> → <i>Delivery time</i> → <i>Immediately, 1 hour, 3 hours, 6 hours, 12 hours, 1 day, 3 days, or 1 week</i></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> When set time has elapsed, Mail Service Center sends S! Mail message.
Set receiving options for S! Mail	Default Auto download	<p><i>Receiving options</i> → <i>Home auto settings</i> → <i>Auto download, From number only, or Manual retrieval</i></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Each setting is as follows. <i>Auto download</i>: Mail Service Center sends complete S! Mail messages automatically <i>From number only</i>: Mail Service Center sends complete S! Mail sent to handset number <i>Manual retrieval</i>: Mail Service Center sends S! Mail Notice; retrieve complete message

Set receiving options for S! Mail while roaming Default Manual retrieval	<i>Receiving options</i> → <i>Roaming auto settings</i> → <i>Auto download</i> or <i>Manual retrieval</i> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Each setting is as follows. <i>Auto download</i>: Mail Service Center sends complete S! Mail messages automatically <i>Manual retrieval</i>: Mail Service Center sends S! Mail Notice; retrieve complete message
Select reply setting Default Off	<i>Reply settings</i> → <i>On</i> or <i>Off</i> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Each setting is as follows. <i>On</i>: Replies to sent messages are automatically addressed to "Reply to" address <i>Off</i>: Replies to sent messages are addressed to 9205C number/mail address Set address that appears in To: field of replies to messages sent from 9205C.
Set "reply to" address	<i>"Reply to" address</i> → <i>Phonebook</i> or <i>Enter address</i> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Select <i>Phonebook</i> → select an entry (P.2-20) → highlight number or address → (Select). Alternatively, select <i>Enter address</i> and enter an address.
Show or hide emotion in received Feeling Mail Notification Default On	<i>Link to feeling</i> → <i>Idle screen Info.</i> → <i>On</i> or <i>Off</i>
Set Feeling Mail vibration Default On	<i>Link to feeling</i> → <i>Vibration pattern</i> → <i>On</i> or <i>Off</i>
Set whether to sound 9205C when Feeling Mail arrives Default On	<i>Link to feeling</i> → <i>Ringtone</i> → <i>On/Off</i> → <i>On</i> or <i>Off</i>
Set Feeling Mail ringtone	<i>Link to feeling</i> → <i>Ringtone</i> → <i>Assign tone</i> → Select <i>Happy/Glad, OK/Good, Sad/Sorry, NG/Bad, or Important/Notice</i> → Select folder → Select file
Set Feeling Mail ringtone duration Default 5 seconds	<i>Link to feeling</i> → <i>Ringtone</i> → <i>Duration</i> → Enter time
Set attached image appearance Default Normal	<i>Picture appearance</i> → <i>Normal</i> or <i>Fit to screen</i>
Set attached image auto playback Default On	<i>Auto play file</i> → <i>Picture</i> → <i>On</i> or <i>Off</i>
Set attached sound auto playback Default Off	<i>Auto play file</i> → <i>Sound</i> → <i>On</i> or <i>Off</i>





SMS		Start Here	 → Settings → SMS settings
Set Mail Service Center message expiry time	Default None	Expiry time → None, 1 hour, 6 hours, 12 hours, 1 day, or 3 days • Upon expiry Mail Service Center SMS messages are automatically deleted.	
Set Message Center Number	Default Setting 1 +819066519300	Message center → Select an item	
Edit Message Center Number	Default +819066519300	Message center → Highlight item →  (Edit) → Edit Message center number	
Change character code	Default Unicode	Char-code → Unicode or GSM 7 bit	

Internet Settings

Yahoo! Keitai		Start Here	 → Yahoo! Keitai → Yahoo! Keitai browser settings
Change page font size	Default Standard	Font size → Small, Standard, or Large	
Set page scroll unit	Default Single line	Scroll unit → Single line, Half screen, or Whole screen	
Show or hide page images	Default Show images	Downloads → Images → Show images or Do not show • Select Do not show to help reduce download time.	
Play or mute page sounds	Default Play sounds	Downloads → Sounds → Play sounds or Do not play • Select Do not play to help reduce download time.	
Delete cache/Cookie/certificates		Memory manager → Clear cache, Delete cookies, or Delete certificates → Yes	
Show or hide Manufacture Number	Default Off	Security → Manufacture number → On or Off • On: 9205C automatically sends Manufacture Number to websites upon request as user ID.	
Send or hide Referer	Default Send	Security → Send referer → Send or Not send	
Select Cookie setting	Default Enabled	Security → Cookies → Enabled, Disable, or Confirm	
Select Script setting	Default Ask NW access	Security → Script → On, Ask NW access, Confirm, or Off	
Confirm Root Certificate		Security → Root certificates → Select a certificate	
Set Certificate retention period	Default Per browsing	Security → Certificate retention → Per browsing, On, or Off	

Initialize Browser		<i>Initialized browser</i> → Enter Phone Password → <input type="radio"/> (OK) → <i>Yes</i>
Reset settings		<i>Reset settings</i> → Enter Phone Password → <input type="radio"/> (OK) → <i>Yes</i>
PC Site Browser	Start Here	<input checked="" type="radio"/> → <i>Yahoo! Keitai</i> → <i>PC site browser</i> → <i>PC site browser settings</i>
Change page font size	Default Standard	<i>Font size</i> → <i>Small, Standard, or Large</i>
Set page scroll unit	Default Single line	<i>Scroll unit</i> → <i>Single line, Half screen, or Whole screen</i>
Show or hide page images	Default Show images	<i>Downloads</i> → <i>Images</i> → <i>Show images</i> or <i>Do not show</i> • Select <i>Do not show</i> to help reduce download time.
Play or mute page sounds	Default Play sounds	<i>Downloads</i> → <i>Sounds</i> → <i>Play sounds</i> or <i>Do not play</i> • Select <i>Do not play</i> to help reduce download time.
Delete cache/Cookie/certificates		<i>Memory manager</i> → <i>Clear cache, Delete cookies, or Delete certificates</i> → <i>Yes</i>
Show or hide Manufacture Number	Default Off	<i>Security</i> → <i>Manufacture number</i> → <i>On</i> or <i>Off</i> • <i>On</i> : 9205C automatically sends Manufacture Number to websites upon request as user ID.
Send or hide Referer	Default Send	<i>Security</i> → <i>Send referer</i> → <i>Send</i> or <i>Not send</i>
Select Cookie setting	Default Enabled	<i>Security</i> → <i>Cookies</i> → <i>Enabled, Disable, or Confirm</i>
Select Script setting	Default On	<i>Security</i> → <i>Script</i> → <i>On, Ask NW access, Confirm, or Off</i>
Confirm Root Certificate		<i>Security</i> → <i>Root certificates</i> → Select a certificate
Set Certificate retention period	Default Per browsing	<i>Security</i> → <i>Certificate retention</i> → <i>Per browsing, On, or Off</i>
Show or hide warning	Default Activate PC site browser: On, Switch to Yahoo! Keitai: On	<i>Warning messages</i> → <i>Activate PC site browser</i> or <i>Switch to Yahoo! Keitai</i> → <i>On</i> or <i>Off</i> • Show or hide PC Site Browser activation, or Yahoo! Keitai/PC Site Browser switching warning.
Initialize Browser		<i>Initialized browser</i> → Enter Phone Password → <input type="radio"/> (OK) → <i>Yes</i>
Reset settings		<i>Reset settings</i> → Enter Phone Password → <input type="radio"/> (OK) → <i>Yes</i>

Media Player Settings

Music		Start Here  → <i>Media Player</i> → <i>Settings</i> → <i>Music</i>
Set Repeat mode	Default Off	<i>Repeat mode</i> → <i>One</i> , <i>Shuffle (with repeat)</i> , <i>Shuffle (without repeat)</i> , <i>All</i> , or <i>Off</i> • Play a single track repeatedly, all music, or all files in Playlist randomly or repeatedly.
Set Equalizer	Default Normal	<i>Equalizer</i> → <i>Normal</i> , <i>Club</i> , <i>Live</i> , <i>Rock</i> , <i>Soft</i> , or <i>Soft rock</i> →  (OK) • Select Equalizer only when using Stereo Earphone Microphone or Bluetooth® headphones.
Adjust Tone volume level	Default 70	<i>Tone volume</i> → Use  to adjust volume →  (Save)
Set Music sub folders	Default Recent music, Most played music, Artist	<i>Music menu</i> → Check <i>Recent music</i> , <i>Most played music</i> , <i>Artist</i> , <i>Album</i> , or <i>Genre</i> →  (Save) • Select folders to appear in <i>Music</i> .
Movie		Start Here  → <i>Media Player</i> → <i>Settings</i> → <i>Movie</i>
Set Repeat mode	Default Off	<i>Repeat mode</i> → <i>One</i> , <i>Shuffle (with repeat)</i> , <i>Shuffle (without repeat)</i> , <i>All</i> , or <i>Off</i> • Play a single file repeatedly, all videos, or all files in Playlist randomly or repeatedly.
Adjust Tone volume level	Default 70	<i>Tone volume</i> → Use  to adjust volume →  (Save)
Set Backlight	Default Normal	<i>Backlight</i> → <i>Normal</i> , <i>Always On</i> , or <i>Always Off</i>
Set Video sub folders	Default Recent video, Most played video	<i>Video menu</i> → Check <i>Recent video</i> or <i>Most played video</i> →  (Save) • Select folders to appear in <i>Video</i> .
Show or hide Video thumbnails	Default On	<i>Video thumbnail display</i> → <i>On</i> or <i>Off</i>
Access or ignore linked information	Default On	<i>Web link</i> → <i>On</i> or <i>Off</i> • <i>On</i> : After playing a file with linked info, access confirmation appears.

Mobile Camera Settings










Camera & Video		Start Here	 (2+ seconds) →  → <i>Settings</i> → <i>General</i>
Show or hide Indicators	Default On	<i>Indicators</i> → <i>On</i> or <i>Off</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Set to <i>On</i> to show indicators.
Activate or cancel Anti-Shake	Default Off	<i>Anti-Shake</i> → <i>On</i> or <i>Off</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • If <i>Flash</i> is set, <i>Anti-Shake</i> is invalid. Setting <i>Flash</i> while <i>Auto-Shake</i> is <i>On</i>, cancels <i>Anti-Shake</i>.
Activate or cancel Auto Focus	Default On	<i>Auto focus</i> → <i>On</i> or <i>Off</i>	
Activate or cancel Digital Zoom	Default Off	<i>Digital zoom</i> → <i>On</i> or <i>Off</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Set to <i>On</i> to use Digital zoom (maximum 4 times).
Activate or cancel Auto Save	Default Off	<i>Auto Save</i> → <i>On</i> or <i>Off</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>On</i>: Images or video is automatically saved after capturing or recording.
Set Contrast	Default 0	<i>Contrast</i> → -2 to 2	
Set Saturation	Default 0	<i>Saturation</i> → -2 to 2	
Set Sharpness	Default 0	<i>Sharpness</i> → -2 to 2	
Show or hide menu item guidance	Default On	<i>Help</i> → <i>On</i> or <i>Off</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Set to <i>On</i> to show help for the selected menu.

Photo		Start Here  (2+ seconds) →  → <i>Settings</i> → <i>Photo</i>
Select Quality	Default Normal	<i>Quality</i> → <i>Superfine, Fine, Normal, or Economy</i>
Set ISO	Default Auto	<i>ISO</i> → <i>Auto, 100, 200, 400, or 800</i>
Set Exposure metering	Default Normal	<i>Exposure metering</i> → <i>Normal, Center-Weighted, or Spot</i>
Set save location	Default Phone	<i>Save to</i> → <i>Phone, Memory card, Digital camera, or Ask each time</i> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Digital Camera is unavailable for 320x240 or 240x320 images; save to Memory Card. • The save location when Memory Card is inserted is set. • If Memory Card is not inserted, images are automatically saved to 920SC.
Show or hide Guideline	Default Off	<i>Guideline</i> → <i>On or Off</i>
Set Shutter sound	Default Pattern1	<i>Shutter sound</i> → <i>Pattern1, Pattern2, or Pattern3</i>
Video		Start Here  (2+ seconds) →  → <i>Settings</i> → <i>Video</i>
Select Quality	Default Economy	<i>Quality</i> → <i>Fine, Normal, or Economy</i>
Set save location	Default Phone	<i>Save to</i> → <i>Phone or Memory card</i> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • When Memory Card is not inserted, images are automatically saved to 920SC.






S! Appli Settings **Start Here** → S! Appli → Settings

Adjust volume Default Level 3	<i>Volume</i> → Use  to adjust volume →  (OK) • While Manner mode is active, Manner mode setting is applied.
Adjust Backlight setting Default Normal settings	<i>Backlight</i> → <i>Always On, Always Off, or Normal settings</i> • <i>Normal settings</i> : Backlight setting in <i>Display settings</i> (➔P.12-15) applies.
Activate or cancel Vibration while S! Appli is in use Default On	<i>Vibration</i> → <i>ON or OFF</i>
Sort S! Appli Default By date	<i>S! Appli list sort</i> → <i>By date, By name, or By vendor</i>
Restore S! Appli settings to defaults	<i>Reset S! Appli settings</i> → Enter Phone Password →  (OK) → Yes
Confirm Java Root Certificate	<i>Java root certificate</i> → Select a certificate

Phonebook Settings **Start Here** → Phonebook → Settings










Select Phonebook Save Location Default Phone	<i>Save settings</i> → <i>Phone, USIM, or Ask each time</i> • <i>Ask each time</i> : A confirmation appears each time a new entry is saved.
Change Phonebook preference (Phone/USIM) Default Phone	<i>Change view</i> → <i>Phone or USIM</i>
Change Search Method Default A-ka-sa-ta-na	<i>Search method</i> → <i>A-ka-sa-ta-na, Reading, or Group</i>
Backup Phonebook entries	<i>Backup</i> → <i>Copy all to USIM or Copy all from USIM</i> → Yes
Change Phonebook font size Default Standard	<i>Font size</i> → <i>Large, Standard, or Small</i>

Standby Window Settings **Start Here** → Settings → Standby window




Show or hide Standby Window	Default On (manually)	On/Off → On (always), On (manually), or Off
Set/cancel Shortcut mode	Default On	Shortcut → Display On/Off → On or Off
Add functions to Shortcut		Shortcut → Set shortcut → Add → Select an item → Applications → Highlight item →  (Assign)
Add Yahoo! Keitai bookmark to Shortcut		Shortcut → Set shortcut → Add → Select an item → Bookmarks → Select Yahoo! Keitai bookmark → Select an icon
Cancel Shortcut mode		Shortcut → Set shortcut → Remove → Select item to remove
Add S! Friend's Status member to the list in Shortcut mode		Shortcut → Add member → Add → Select an item → From S! Friend's Status → Select a member to add
Add S! Friend's Status member from Phonebook in Shortcut mode		Shortcut → Add member → Add → Select an item → From phone book → Search Phonebook and select entry (P.2-20)
Cancel S! Friend's Status member in Shortcut mode		Shortcut → Add member → Remove → Select member to remove
Add contents in Shortcut mode		Shortcut → Add content → Add content → Select an item and save
Remove content from Shortcut mode		Shortcut → Add content → Remove content → Highlight content →  (Delete) → Yes <ul style="list-style-type: none"> To remove multiple contents, select Remove content →  → Delete → Multiple or All (P.1-22 Removing S! Quick News Content).
Add S! Loop topic in Shortcut mode		Shortcut → Add content → Add topic → Add a topic
Remove S! Loop topic from Shortcut mode		Shortcut → Add content → Remove topic → Highlight topic →  (Delete) → Yes <ul style="list-style-type: none"> To remove multiple topics, select Remove topic →  → Delete → Multiple or All (P.1-22 Removing S! Loop).
Change template for Shortcut mode	Default News (Only text)	Shortcut → Change templates → Select a template
Change marquee speed for news	Default Normal	Shortcut → Display settings → Marquee speed → Fast, Normal, or Slow
Change display type for news	Default Unread&Read	Shortcut → Display settings → Unread/Read setting → Unread&Read or Only unread

Refresh newflash	Default Off	Shortcut → Display settings → Auto refresh setting → S! Quick News → Flash news → <input type="radio"/> (OK) → 1 hour, 2 hours, 4 hours, 8 hours, or Off
Refresh general contents in Shortcut mode	Default Off	Shortcut → Display settings → Auto refresh setting → S! Quick News → General → <input type="radio"/> (OK) → On or Off
Select S! Loop auto refresh setting	Default Off	Shortcut → Display settings → Auto refresh setting → S! Loop → <input type="radio"/> (OK) → On or Off
Set/cancel News mode	Default On	News headline → Display On/Off → On or Off
Add News mode contents		News headline → Add content → Select content and save
Remove News mode contents		News headline → Remove content → Highlight content → <input type="checkbox"/> (Delete) → Yes <ul style="list-style-type: none"> To remove multiple contents, select Remove content → <input type="checkbox"/> → Delete → Multiple or All (➔P.1-22 Removing News Content).
Refresh newflash in News mode	Default Off	News headline → Auto refresh → Quick News → Flash news → <input type="radio"/> (OK) → 1 hour, 2 hours, 4 hours, 8 hours, or Off
Refresh general contents in News mode	Default Off	News headline → Auto refresh → Quick News → General → <input type="radio"/> (OK) → On or Off
Refresh S! Loop in News mode	Default Off	News headline → Auto refresh → S! Loop → <input type="radio"/> (OK) → On or Off
Show or hide image in News mode	Default On	News headline → Show image → On or Off
Set/cancel Communication mode	Default On	Communication → Display On/Off → On or Off
Add S! Friend's Status members from list		Communication → Add member → Select an item → From S! Friend's Status → Select member
Add S! Friend's Status members from Phonebook		Communication → Add member → Select an item → From phone book → Search Phonebook and select an entry (➔P.2-20)
Remove S! Friend's Status members		Communication → Remove member → Select member to remove

Sounds & Alerts Settings Start Here Settings → Sounds & Alerts










Adjust volume Default Voice call/Video call/Message/S! Friend's Status/S! Circle Talk/Missed call notification/S! Quick News/Delivery Report/Phone sounds: Level 3, S! Quick News: Off	<i>Volume</i> → <i>Voice call, Video call, Message, S! Friend's Status, S! Circle Talk, Missed call notification, S! Quick News, Delivery report, or Phone sounds</i> → Adjust volume →  (Play) →  (Select) • There is no <i>Play</i> option to sample <i>Phone sounds</i> .
Set Ringtone for Voice Call/Video Call/S! Circle Talk Default Voice call: Red tango.mmf, Video call: Revelation.mmf, S! Circle Talk: Chiming tone.mp4	<i>Ringtone</i> → <i>Voice call, Video call, or S! Circle Talk</i> → Select save location for a file → Highlight a file →  (Play) →  (Select)
Set ringtone other than Voice Call Default Chiming tone.mp4	<i>Ringtone</i> → <i>Message, S! Friend's Status, Missed call notification, S! Quick News, or Delivery report</i> → <i>Assign tone</i> → Select save location for a file → Highlight a file →  (Play) →  (Select)
Set ringtone duration other than Voice Call Default 5 Seconds	<i>Ringtone</i> → <i>Message, S! Friend's Status, Missed call notification, S! Quick News, or Delivery report</i> → <i>Duration</i> → Enter duration
Set Vibration Default Off	<i>Vibration</i> → <i>Voice call, Video call, Message, S! Friend's Status, S! Circle Talk, Missed call notification, S! Quick News, or Delivery report</i> → <i>Off</i> or <i>Pattern 1</i> to <i>Pattern 5</i> →  (Play) →  (Select)
Set Keypad tones Default Xylophone	<i>Phone sounds</i> → <i>Keypad tones</i> → <i>Beep, Xylophone, or Off</i>
Set system sounds for S! Circle Talk Default Xylophone	<i>Phone sounds</i> → <i>S! Circle Talk</i> → <i>Animal, Bird, Fantasy, Game, Joke, Xylophone, or P1</i>
Set system sounds Default Several tones on	<i>Phone sounds</i> → <i>System sounds</i> → <i>All, Popup box alerts, Minute minder, Call connect tone, Call end tone, Power on, Power off, Slide up/down, or Alerts on call</i> →  (Save)
Illuminate External Light for incoming transmissions Default On	<i>External light</i> → <i>Incoming</i> → <i>Voice call, Video call, Message, S! Friend's Status, S! Circle Talk, or Missed call notification</i> → <i>On</i> or <i>Off</i>
Illuminate External Light for missed calls Default On	<i>External light</i> → <i>Notification</i> → <i>Missed call, Message, Answering machine, S! Friend's Status, or Missed call notification</i> → <i>On</i> or <i>Off</i>











Manner Mode Settings **Start Here** → Settings → Manner mode settings

Set vibration Default Voice call/Video call/Message/S! Friend's Status/S! Circle Talk/Missed call notification/Delivery Report: Pattern 1, S! Quick News: Off	Vibration → Voice call, Video call, Message, S! Friend's Status, S! Circle Talk, Missed call notification, S! Quick News, or Delivery report → Off or Pattern 1 to Pattern 5 →  (Play) →  (Select)
Set system sounds Default Alerts on call	System sounds → Check All, Minute minder, Call connect tone, Call end tone, or Alerts on call →  (Save)
Illuminate External Light for incoming transmissions Default On	External light → Incoming → Voice call, Video call, Message, S! Friend's Status, S! Circle Talk, or Missed call notification → On or Off
Notify missed calls with external light Default On	External light → Notification → Missed call, Message, Answering machine, S! Friend's Status, or Missed call notification → On or Off
Set Answering Machine Default On	Answering machine → On or Off


















- Changes to *Manner mode* settings apply when *Manner* is selected in *Mode setting*.











Display Settings Start Here → Settings → Display settings

Change Wallpaper	Default Preset pictures	Wallpaper → (P.2-6 Wallpaper )
Set Menu style	Default Glow in the dark	Main menu style → Glow in the dark, Golden thread, or Snap photo • Change menu appearance (except Yahoo! Keitai menu).
Set Standby Display appearance	Default Off	Clock/Calendar → Select Digital clock, Dual clock, Calendar (1 month), Calendar (2 month), Today, or Off, and edit as required →  (OK) • To set clock type, select Digital clock → use  to select clock type →  (OK). • Dual clock: 2 clocks appear in Standby. Local time (set in Date & Time) appears on top. To set clock below it, Dual clock → highlight Time zone field → use  to specify an area → highlight Daylight saving field to check as required → press  (OK).
Set Font type	Default Font 1	Font → Font type → Font 1 or Font 2
Change font size for menu list	Default Large	Font → Font size → List font → Large or Small
Change font size for browser	Default Standard	Font → Font size → Browser → Large, Standard, or Small
Change font size for Phonebook menu	Default Standard	Font → Font size → Phonebook → Large, Standard, or Small
Change font size for text entry window	Default Standard	Font → Font size → Editor → Large, Standard, or Small
Change Message text font size	Default Standard	Font → Font size → Messages → Large, Standard, Small, or Tiny
Set S! Familiar Usability (Japanese)		S! Familiar Usability → Download S! Familiar Usability → Follow onscreen instructions
Adjust Display brightness	Default 3	Backlight → Brightness → Use  to adjust brightness →  (OK)
Set Backlight time	Default Backlight time: 15 seconds, Dim: 15 seconds	Backlight → Backlight time → Select On field → Off, 5 seconds, 10 seconds, 15 seconds, 30 seconds, or 1 minute → Select Dim field → 5 seconds, 10 seconds, 15 seconds, 30 seconds, or 1 minute →  (Save) • When Backlight time is set to Off, Display becomes dim. • Display becomes dimmer when Backlight time elapses and turns off when Dim time elapses.
























Set Popup menu	Default Off	<p><i>Popup menu</i> → <i>On</i> or <i>Off</i></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Set whether to display a sub menu in Popup window when a menu item is highlighted. • When a menu item with no sub menu is highlighted, Popup window does not appear. Also, Popup window for <i>Alarms</i> in Tool menu does not appear.
Set Dialling window font type	Default Font type: Normal	<p><i>Dialling display</i> → <i>Font type</i> → Use  to change the type →  (OK)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • When <i>Normal</i> or <i>Serif</i> is selected, font size, color, and backlight color can also be changed.
Set Dialling window font size	Default Standard	<p><i>Dialling display</i> → <i>Font size</i> → Use  to change the size →  (OK)</p>
Set Dialling window font color	Default Basic	<p><i>Dialling display</i> → <i>Font color</i> → Use  to change setting → Use  to highlight Color field → Use  to change color (only when <i>Monochrome</i> is selected) →  (OK)</p>
Set Dialling window background color		<p><i>Dialling display</i> → <i>Background color</i> → Use  to change color →  (OK)</p>
Set Operator name	Default Off	<p><i>Operator name</i> → <i>On</i> or <i>Off</i></p>

Phone Settings Start Here → Settings → Phone settings

Change user interface language	Default 日本語	言語選択 → Automatic, 日本語, English, or 한국어
Set Time zone updating	Default Prompt first	<p>Date & Time → Select Time zone updating field → Manual only, Prompt first, or Automatic →  (Select) →  (Save)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Automatic: A confirmation appears. Choose Yes to restart 920SC. • Time zone updating is disabled even when the setting is changed.
Change Home zone	Default GMT+09:00	<p>Date & Time → Select Home zone field → Use  to specify an area →  (Select) →  (Save)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Select the zone closest to your locality. Complete this setting before selecting Dual clock.
Set Daylight saving	Default Unchecked	Date & Time → Select Home zone field → Check Daylight saving →  (OK) →  (Save)
Set time		<p>Date & Time → Highlight Time field → Enter time →  (Save)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Some functions are disabled when time is not set.
Set AM/PM (when Time format is set to 12H)		Date & Time → Highlight Time field → Use  to move cursor to AM or PM → Use  to toggle setting →  (Save)
Set date		<p>Date & Time → Highlight Date field → Enter date →  (Save)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Some functions are disabled until date is set.
Change Time format	Default 24H	Date & Time → Select Time format field → 12H or 24H →  (Save)
Change Date format	Default YYYY/MM/DD	Date & Time → Highlight Date format field → DD/MM/YYYY, MM/DD/YYYY, YYYY/DD/MM, or YYYY/MM/DD →  (Save)
Activate or cancel S! Familiar Input (Japanese)	Default Off	<p>S! Familiar Input → Off, 603T, 810SH, A5509T, N901iC, P901i, or V603SH</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Change text entry to mimic that of selected handset model; may disable some entry functions. • Highlight a model and press  (Preview) to confirm text entry operations.
Save entries to User's Dictionary		User's dictionary → New entry → Select Word field → Enter word or sentence → Select Reading field → Enter reading →  (Save)
Edit User's Dictionary entries		User's dictionary → Edit entry → Select entry to edit → Edit word or reading →  (Save)


Delete User's Dictionary entries		<i>User's dictionary</i> → <i>Delete all</i> → Enter Phone Password →  (OK) → <i>Yes</i>
Reset entry history to default		<i>User's dictionary</i> → <i>Reset learning</i> → Enter Phone Password →  (OK) → <i>Yes</i> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Previous Kanji conversions appear first for predicted/conversion alternatives. This action clears conversion history.
Activate or cancel Simple Search	Default Off	<i>Simple search</i> → <i>On</i> or <i>Off</i> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>On</i>: In Standby, press keys assigned to characters used in Phonebook entry Readings.
Set Side Keys to activate Reject Call or mute ringer	Default Silence	<i>Side key</i> → <i>Reject</i> or <i>Silence</i> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Set handset action when  or  is pressed for 1+ seconds during incoming transmission.
Set Any key answer	Default Off	<i>Any key answer</i> → <i>On</i> or <i>Off</i> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Set to <i>On</i> to press any key except , , , , , and  to answer a call.
Activate or cancel 9205C open-to-answer calls function	Default Slide up: On	<i>Slide call</i> → <i>Slide up</i> → <i>On</i> or <i>Off</i>
Set whether to end call by closing 9205C	Default Slide down: Off	<i>Slide call</i> → <i>Slide down</i> → <i>On</i> , <i>Off</i> , or <i>Hold</i> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>Hold</i>: Place Voice Calls on hold for Call Waiting or Conference Call.












Security Settings **Start Here** → Settings → Security

Activate or cancel Phone Lock	Default Off	Phone lock → On or Off → Enter Phone Password →  (OK)
Activate or cancel Password Lock	Default Off	Password lock → On or Off → Enter Phone Password →  (OK)
Activate or cancel USIM Lock	Default Off	USIM lock → On or Off → Enter USIM password (4 to 8 digits) →  (OK) → Enter USIM password again as required →  (OK)
Activate or cancel Facial Recognition	Default Off	Facial recognition → On/Off → On or Off → Enter Phone Password →  (OK)
Show or hide Guidance	Default Preview	Facial recognition → Guidance → Off or Preview
Set Security Level	Default Normal	Facial recognition → Security level → High, Normal, or Low
Save Facial Recognition User	Default Empty	Facial recognition → User registration → User 1 to User 5 → Face image → Highlight image 1 to 5 →  (Capture) →  (Capture) →  (Save) → Yes →  (OK) →  → User name → Enter name → Riddle → Enter question → Answer → Enter answer • If Facial recognition is Off, activation confirmation appears after saving image. Choose Yes to activate.
Activate or cancel Application Lock	Default Unlock all	Application lock → Check All, Phonebook, Calendar, Messages, Call log, or Data Folder →  (Save) → Enter Phone Password →  (OK)
Activate or cancel Secret mode	Default Hide	Secret mode → Enter Phone Password →  (OK) → Show or Hide
Create or cancel Secret folders in Data Folder	Default Hide	Secret data folder → Enter Phone Password →  (OK) → Show or Hide
Delete Phonebook entries, messages, etc.		Reset → All reset → Enter Phone Password →  (OK) → Yes
Restore Settings to default values		Reset → Reset settings → Enter Phone Password →  (OK) → Yes
Activate or cancel PIN Certification	Default Off	PIN certification → On or Off → Enter PIN →  (OK)
Change PIN		Change PIN → Enter current PIN →  (OK) → Enter new PIN →  (OK) → Enter new PIN again →  (OK)
Change PIN2		Change PIN2 → Enter current PIN2 →  (OK) → Enter new PIN2 →  (OK) → Enter new PIN2 again →  (OK)








Change Phone Password	Default 9999	<i>Change password</i> → Enter current password → <input type="radio"/> (OK) → Enter new password → <input type="radio"/> (OK) → Enter new password again → <input type="radio"/> (OK)
Set IP service setting	Default Off	<i>IP service setting</i> → <i>On or Off</i>
Activate Mobile Tracker	Default Off	<i>Mobile tracker</i> → Enter Phone Password → <input type="radio"/> (OK) → Select Activation field → <i>On</i> → Select Recipients field → Select To field → Enter a recipient → <input type="text"/> (Save) → Select Sender field → Enter sender name → <input type="text"/> (Save) → Confirm entries → <input type="radio"/> (Agree) or <input type="checkbox"/> (Reject)








Call Settings Start Here → *Settings* → *Call settings*



Forward all calls to Voice Mail (920SC does not ring)	<i>Optional services</i> → <i>Voice mail/Call forwarding</i> → <i>Voice mail on</i> → <i>Always(0 sec.)</i>
Forward unanswered calls to Voice Mail (specify ring time)	<i>Optional services</i> → <i>Voice mail/Call forwarding</i> → <i>Voice mail on</i> → <i>No reply(5 to 30 sec.)</i> → <i>5 seconds, 10 seconds, 15 seconds, 20 seconds, 25 seconds, or 30 seconds</i>
Activate and set Forwarding	<i>Optional services</i> → <i>Voice mail/Call forwarding</i> → <i>Call forwarding on</i> → <i>Voice/Video call, Voice call, or Video call</i> → <i>Always(0 sec.) or No reply(5 to 30 sec.)</i> → <i>Last set number, Phonebook, or Enter number</i> → Enter number as required
Cancel Voice Mail/Call Forwarding	<i>Optional services</i> → <i>Voice mail/Call forwarding</i> → <i>Deactivate All</i> → <i>Yes</i>
Confirm current Voice Mail/Call Forwarding settings	<i>Optional services</i> → <i>Voice mail/Call forwarding</i> → <i>Get status</i>
Listen to Voice Mail message	<i>Optional services</i> → <i>Voice mail/Call forwarding</i> → <i>Listen to voice mail</i> → 
Activate or cancel Call Waiting	<i>Optional services</i> → <i>Call waiting</i> → <i>On or Off</i>
Confirm current Call Waiting settings	<i>Optional services</i> → <i>Call waiting</i> → <i>Get status</i>
Set Outgoing Call Barring	<i>Optional services</i> → <i>Call barring</i> → <i>Outgoing call</i> → <i>Bar all outgoing calls, Bar all international calls, or Bar international calls</i> → <i>On or Off</i> → Enter Network Password → <input type="radio"/> (OK)
Activate or cancel Incoming Call Barring	<i>Optional services</i> → <i>Call barring</i> → <i>Incoming call</i> → <i>Bar all incoming calls or Bar all roaming calls</i> → <i>On or Off</i> → Enter Network Password → <input type="radio"/> (OK)

Cancel all Call Barring	<i>Optional services</i> → <i>Call barring</i> → <i>Cancel all barring</i> → Enter Network Password →  (OK) → <i>Yes</i>
Confirm current Call Barring settings	<i>Optional services</i> → <i>Call barring</i> → <i>Get status</i> → <i>All outgoing calls, All international calls, International calls, All incoming calls, or All roaming calls</i>
Change Network Password	<i>Optional services</i> → <i>Call barring</i> → <i>Set security code</i> → Enter current Network Password in Old field  (OK) → Enter new Network Password in New field →  (OK) → Enter new Network Password again in Cnf field →  (OK)
Set Missed Call Notification	<i>Optional services</i> → <i>Missed call notification</i> → 
Change Network mode Default Automatic	<i>Optional services</i> → <i>International call</i> → <i>Select network</i> → <i>Automatic or Manual</i> • If <i>Manual</i> is selected, select an option from <i>3G/GSM, 3G, and GSM</i> .
Save International Code Default 0046010	<i>Optional services</i> → <i>International call</i> → <i>International code</i> → Enter Phone Password →  (OK) → Enter an international code
Add/change/delete Country Number Default 1: 日本 (Japan), 2: 韓国 (KOR), 3: イギリス (GBR), 4: イタリア (ITA), 5: スイス (CHE), 6: スペイン (ESP), 7: ドイツ (DEU), 8: ポルトガル (PRT), 9: オランダ (NLD), 0: フランス (FRA), *: モナコ (MCO), #: アメリカ合衆国 (USA), スウェーデン (SWE), オーストラリア (AUS), 中国 (CHN), 香港 (HKG), 台湾 (TWN)	<i>Optional services</i> → <i>International call</i> → <i>Country number</i> → Add, change, or delete item • To add/save, highlight an item from Country code →  (Change) → select Country name field → enter country name → highlight Enter country code field → enter country number →  (Save). • To delete, highlight item →  (Delete) → <i>Yes</i> .
Select Global Roaming network	<i>Optional services</i> → <i>International call</i> → <i>Select operator</i> → <i>Automatic or Manual</i> • When <i>Manual</i> is set, select a network.
Select Preferred Network from list	<i>Optional services</i> → <i>International call</i> → <i>Select operator</i> → <i>Preferred network</i> → <i>Set preferred</i> → Select a network to insert → Highlight a network from Network list →  (Insert)
Add Preferred Network	<i>Optional services</i> → <i>International call</i> → <i>Select operator</i> → <i>Preferred network</i> → <i>Add operator</i> → Enter Country number → Enter Network code → <i>GSM or 3G</i>
Check Call Time/Cost	<i>Call time & cost</i> → <i>All calls</i> • To reset call time/cost,  (Reset) → Enter PIN2 →  (OK).


Check last Call Time/Cost		<p><i>Call time & cost</i> → <i>Last calls</i></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> To reset last call time/cost, press [☎] (Reset).
Check Data Counter		<p><i>Call time & cost</i> → <i>Data counter</i></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> To reset sent/received data counter, press [☎] (Reset).
Show or hide Call Time/Cost after calls	Default Off	<p><i>Call time & cost</i> → <i>Show charge after call</i> → <i>On</i> or <i>Off</i></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> This function may not be available.
Change Call Cost Currency		<p><i>Call time & cost</i> → <i>Set currency</i> → Enter PIN2 → [OK] → Select Price field → Enter rate to the yen → Select Currency field → Enter currency unit → [☎] (Save)</p>
Set Call Cost Limit		<p><i>Call time & cost</i> → <i>Set max cost limit</i> → [☎] (Edit) → Enter PIN2 → [OK] → Select Upper limit after changing field → Enter upper limit → [☎] (Save)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> After reaching the call cost limit, only emergency calls can be made; messaging, web connections (fee-based operations) are disabled. When <i>Show charge after call</i> is not available, this function is also unavailable.
Cancel Call Cost Limit		<p><i>Call time & cost</i> → <i>Set max cost limit</i> → [☎] (Release) → Enter PIN2 → [OK]</p>
Activate or cancel Answering Machine	Default Off	<p><i>Answering machine</i> → <i>Setting</i> → <i>On</i> or <i>Off</i></p>
Set Answering Machine response time	Default 18 seconds	<p><i>Answering machine</i> → <i>Ringing duration</i> → 5 seconds, 10 seconds, 15 seconds, 30 seconds, or <i>Other (0-30secs)</i> → [OK] (Select)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> When <i>Other (0-30secs)</i> is selected, press [OK] to enter time.
Play Answering Machine records		<p><i>Answering machine</i> → <i>Recordings</i> → Highlight a record → [OK] (Play)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> To delete one record, highlight it → [☎] (Delete) → <i>Yes</i>. To delete all records, in list, press [☎] (Delete all) → Enter Phone Password → [OK] (OK) → <i>Yes</i>.
Set Answering Machine response language	Default 日本語	<p><i>Answering machine</i> → <i>Sound language</i> → 日本語, English, or 한국어</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Press [☎] (Play) to hear response in the selected language.
Set Preset Picture to appear in place of your own image		<p><i>Video call</i> → <i>Alternative picture</i> → <i>Preset picture</i> → [OK]</p>

Set Alternative Picture to appear in place of My Image		<i>Video call</i> → <i>Alternative picture</i> → <i>Pictures</i> → Select a file →  (OK) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> When Memory Card is inserted, after selecting <i>Pictures</i>, select <i>Pictures</i> or <i>Digital camera</i>, then select a picture.
Adjust incoming video quality	Default Standard	<i>Video call</i> → <i>Incoming video quality</i> → <i>Motion prioritized</i> , <i>Standard</i> , or <i>Quality prioritized</i>
Adjust outgoing video quality	Default Standard	<i>Video call</i> → <i>Outgoing video quality</i> → <i>Motion prioritized</i> , <i>Standard</i> , or <i>Quality prioritized</i>
Set Preset Picture to appear when Video Call is on hold		<i>Video call</i> → <i>Hold setting</i> → <i>Preset picture</i> →  (OK)
Set Hold setting		<i>Video call</i> → <i>Hold setting</i> → <i>Pictures</i> → Select a file →  (OK) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> When Memory Card is inserted, after selecting <i>Pictures</i>, select <i>Pictures</i> or <i>Digital camera</i>, then select a picture.
Activate or cancel voice muting for Video Call	Default Off	<i>Video call</i> → <i>Mute my voice</i> → <i>On</i> or <i>Off</i> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> If <i>On</i>, press  (Mute) → uncheck <i>Voice</i> → press  (Done), to temporarily send voice.
Activate or cancel Speaker Phone during Video Call	Default On	<i>Video call</i> → <i>Loud speaker</i> → <i>On</i> or <i>Off</i>
Set Backlight	Default On	<i>Video call</i> → <i>Backlight</i> → <i>On</i> or <i>Off</i> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> When <i>Off</i> is set, Display becomes dim.
Set handset response when Video Call cannot be connected	Default Always ask	<i>Video call</i> → <i>Retry with</i> → <i>Always ask</i> , <i>Voice call</i> , <i>Message</i> , or <i>None</i> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <i>None</i>: Calls are disconnected with no notification. When a Video Call cannot be connected, prompt appears to retry with the selected setting.
Answer Voice Call from specified party automatically	Default Off	<i>Video call</i> → <i>Auto answer</i> → <i>On/Off</i> → <i>On</i> or <i>Off</i> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> When a Video Call arrives from the specified party, a tone sounds and the call is automatically answered.
Create Auto Answer List		<i>Video call</i> → <i>Auto answer</i> → <i>Auto answer list</i> →  → <i>Add</i> → Enter Phone Password →  (OK) → <i>Direct input</i> , <i>Phonebook</i> , or <i>Call log</i> , and add an entry →  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> To delete the specified party, after selecting <i>Auto answer list</i>, highlight the party →  → <i>Delete</i> → <i>Selected</i> or <i>All</i> → <i>Yes</i>. When <i>All</i> is selected, enter Phone Password.
Show or hide your own image for Video Calls	Default On	<i>Video call</i> → <i>Show my image</i> → <i>On</i> or <i>Off</i>




Accept or reject calls from specified phone numbers	Default Off	<p><i>Reject incoming calls</i> → <i>Reject list</i> → <i>On/Off</i> → <i>On</i> or <i>Off</i></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> When a call from Reject list arrives, a caller hears a busy tone and call is not connected. <i>Rejected</i> appears in Standby. Press  (View) to check missed call.
Create or edit Black List		<p><i>Reject incoming calls</i> → <i>Reject list</i> → <i>Edit black list</i> →  → <i>Add</i> → <i>Direct input</i>, <i>Phonebook</i>, or <i>Call log</i>, and add an entry →  (Save)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> To delete saved phone numbers, select <i>Edit black list</i> → highlight phone number →  → <i>Delete</i> → <i>Selected</i> or <i>All</i> → <i>Yes</i>. When <i>All</i> is selected, enter Phone Password.
Accept or reject calls from unknown numbers	Default Off	<i>Reject incoming calls</i> → <i>Unknown</i> → <i>On</i> or <i>Off</i>
Accept or reject calls when number is withheld	Default Off	<i>Reject incoming calls</i> → <i>Withheld</i> → <i>On</i> or <i>Off</i>
Accept or reject calls from payphones	Default Off	<i>Reject incoming calls</i> → <i>Payphone</i> → <i>On</i> or <i>Off</i>
Accept or reject calls when number is unavailable	Default Off	<i>Reject incoming calls</i> → <i>Unavailable</i> → <i>On</i> or <i>Off</i>
Activate or cancel Offline mode	Default Off	<i>Offline</i> → <i>On</i> or <i>Off</i>
Show or hide your own number when placing calls		<p><i>Show my number</i> → <i>On/Off</i> → <i>On</i> or <i>Off</i></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> To check current status, select <i>Get status</i>.
Set 920SC to automatically redial busy numbers	Default Off	<p><i>Auto redial</i> → <i>On</i> or <i>Off</i></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <i>On</i>: 920SC automatically disconnects call and redials busy numbers. Auto redial repeats up to 10 times until  (Cancel) or  is pressed. Auto redial setting takes priority when Video Call retry setting is selected. If called party uses Call Forwarding or Voice Mail, call is forwarded accordingly.
Activate or cancel automatic ringer reduction	Default Off	<p><i>Ringtone reducer</i> → <i>On</i> or <i>Off</i></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> When ringtone volume level is high, the volume level is reduced to Level 1 for the first two seconds, then returns to the set level.
Enable or disable calling via Stereo Earphone Microphone	Default Earphone call: Off	<p><i>Earphone call</i> → <i>Earphone call activate</i> → <i>On</i> or <i>Off</i> → <i>Call number</i> → <i>Direct input</i>, <i>Phonebook</i>, or <i>Call log</i>, and add a phone number →  (Save)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <i>On</i>: Press Stereo Earphone Microphone switch for 1+ seconds to call specified number. To change specified number, repeat setup operation, saving the new number.

Adjust Earpiece volume	Hearing volume → Use  to adjust volume →  (Select)
------------------------	--

Mode Settings Start Here → Settings → Mode settings

Change mode	Normal, Manner, Drive, Meeting, or Outdoor <ul style="list-style-type: none"> To change settings for each mode, highlight a mode, press  (Edit) and set each item.
-------------	---

Connectivity Settings

Bluetooth® Start Here  → Settings → Connectivity → Bluetooth	
Activate or cancel Bluetooth® functions Default Off	Bluetooth On/Off → On or Off
Search for a new Bluetooth® device	Search for devices → Search new devices → Select device → Enter Authorization Code (4 to 16 digits) →  (OK) → Enter same code on device within 30 seconds
Reference connected device files	Paired devices → Select device → Enter Authorization Code on device <ul style="list-style-type: none"> To receive referred files, after authorization, select files to receive. To receive referred folders, after authorization, highlight a folder, press  and select <i>Get</i>.
Search/save from Bluetooth® devices Default Show my phone	Bluetooth settings → Visibility → Show my phone or Hide my phone <ul style="list-style-type: none"> To search and save from other Bluetooth® devices, make 920SC visible.
Adjust Handsfree setting Default Handsfree mode	Bluetooth settings → Handsfree → Private mode or Handsfree mode <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Each setting is as follows. <i>Private mode</i>: Use Microphone for handset calls or handsfree device for device calls. <i>Handsfree mode</i>: Talk via handsfree device.
Set Secure mode Default On	Bluetooth settings → Secure mode → On or Off <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <i>On</i>: A confirmation appears before transfers.
Set Answering mode Default Normal	Bluetooth settings → Answering mode → Normal, Any key, or Automatic <ul style="list-style-type: none"> To set automatic answer time, select <i>Automatic</i> then answer time.

Confirm 920SC device address		<i>Bluetooth settings</i> → <i>My phone details</i>
Edit 920SC name	Default 920SC	<i>Bluetooth settings</i> → <i>My phone details</i> → <i>Bluetooth name</i> → Edit name
Confirm available Bluetooth® functions		<i>Bluetooth settings</i> → <i>Bluetooth services</i> → Select a function to check
Activate or cancel S! Appli communication	Default On	<i>S! Appli request</i> → <i>On or Off</i>
Transfer all Phonebook or Calendar entries, or Bookmarks at once		<i>Transfer all</i> → Select a device → Enter Phone Password → <input type="radio"/> (OK) → <i>Phonebook, Calendar, or Bookmarks</i>

Infrared

Start Here
 → *Settings* → *Connectivity* → *Infrared*

Activate or cancel Infrared transmission	Default Off	<i>Infrared On/Off</i> → <i>On (3min.) or Off</i>
Transfer Phonebook or Calendar entries, and Bookmarks at once		<i>Transfer all</i> → Enter Phone Password → <input type="radio"/> (OK) → <i>Phonebook, Calendar or Bookmarks</i> → Enter Authorization Code (4 digits) → <input type="radio"/> (OK) • For <i>Phonebook</i> , choose <i>Yes</i> to transfer images.

Mass Storage

Start Here
 → *Settings* → *Connectivity*

Activate Mass Storage		<i>Mass storage</i> → Enter Phone Password → <input type="radio"/> (OK) → Connect 920SC to PC via USB Cable → Exchange files with PC
-----------------------	--	--

Network

Start Here
 → *Settings* → *Connectivity*

Retrieve Network Information manually		<i>Retrieve NW info</i> → <i>Yes or No</i>
---------------------------------------	--	--

Memory Settings **Start Here** → *Settings* → *Memory settings*

Check Memory Card details		<i>Memory card</i> → <i>Memory card details</i> • Check Memory Card name, memory capacity, or remaining memory.
Format Memory Card		<i>Memory card</i> → <i>Format memory card</i> → Enter Phone Password → <input type="radio"/> (OK) → <i>Yes</i>
Rename Memory Card		<i>Memory card</i> → <i>Rename memory card</i> → Enter name

Backup Memory	<i>Memory card</i> → Backup & Restore → Backup → Yes → Enter Phone Password → ● (OK) → Phonebook, Calendar, Tasks, Contents keys, or Bookmarks → Yes
Restore Memory	<i>Memory card</i> → Backup & Restore → Restore → Yes → Enter Phone Password → ● (OK) → Phonebook, Calendar, Tasks, Contents keys, or Bookmarks → Select a file → Add or Overwrite
Confirm total or remaining Phone Memory	<i>Phone memory</i> → Phone memory details ● View Phone memory capacity or remaining memory.
Clear Phone Memory	<i>Phone memory</i> → Clear phone memory → Check All, Data Folder, Messaging, Phonebook, Calendar, or User's dictionary → ☒ (Delete) → Enter Phone Password → ● (OK) → Yes
Set Default Memory to Phone or Memory Card	<i>Set default memory</i> → Phone, Memory card, or Always ask ● With Memory Card inserted, select 9205C (Phone) or Memory Card. Available when editing images, saving S! Mail attachments, downloading files, receiving data via Bluetooth®, etc. ● When <i>Memory card</i> or <i>Always ask</i> is selected with no Memory Card inserted, files are automatically saved to 9205C.
View Memory status	<i>Memory status</i> → Shared memory, Messaging, Data Folder, Calendar, or Phonebook ● To delete viewed memory, press ☒ (Delete) (P.2-47 Deleting Registered/Saved Data).

Appendix



Battery & Charger	13-2
Before Using Battery or Charger	13-2
Inserting & Removing Battery	13-3
USIM Card	13-4
Information & Precautions	13-4
Inserting & Removing USIM Card	13-5
PIN	13-6
Troubleshooting	13-7
Software Update	13-10
Function List	13-11
Key List for Text Entry	13-14
Symbols & Pictograms	13-15
Symbols	13-15
Pictograms	13-16
Memory List	13-17
Specifications	13-17
Index	13-19
Objective Index	13-25
Advanced Settings Index	13-27
Warranty & Service	13-28
Customer Service	13-29

Battery & Charger

Before Using Battery or Charger

Charge battery before first use of 920SC or after long periods of disuse.

Charging Battery

- Long periods of disuse may affect battery's ability to hold a full charge. Charge battery at least once every six months while not in use. Otherwise, battery may become unusable.
- 920SC uses a lithium-ion battery; charge battery anytime without damaging its ability to hold a charge.
- Do not charge battery under the following conditions:
 - In ambient temperatures beyond 5°C - 40°C
 - In high levels of humidity, vibration or dust (May cause malfunction)
 - Near a radio receiver (May cause feedback)
- 920SC or Charger may warm while charging. This is normal, however, should they become very hot to the touch, stop charging and contact Customer Service (☎P.13-29).
- Battery is a consumable; replace it if operating time shortens noticeably.

Note

- **Use specified Charger only. Do not use it for devices other than 920SC.**
- **Battery must be inside 920SC to charge it.**
- **When not in use, unplug Charger from outlet or cigarette lighter socket.**

Battery Life

Battery time/life may be reduced by any of the following:

- Environmental Factors
 - Storing/using 920SC beyond 5°C - 40°C
 - Using 920SC when signal is poor/out-of-range
 - Debris to collect on 920SC, battery or Charger Port
- Operational Factors
 - Active S! Appli
 - Camera use
 - Media Player use
 - Excessive Keypad use (e.g. for using S! Appli or messaging)
 - Bluetooth® transmissions
 - Frequently opening and closing 920SC
- Settings
 - Using Slide Show
 - Increasing *Brightness* or *Backlight time*
 - Using Media Player with Backlight set to *Always on*

Battery Disposal

Do not dispose of exhausted batteries with ordinary refuse. Tape over battery terminals before disposal or take to a SoftBank shop. Follow any and all local regulations regarding battery disposal. Lithium-ion batteries are recyclable.

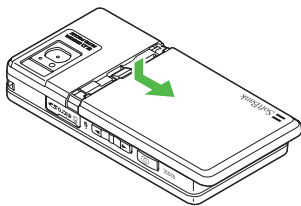
When Battery Runs Out

When battery is weak, a warning appears and 920SC beeps. Charge or replace battery; otherwise 920SC will automatically turn off.

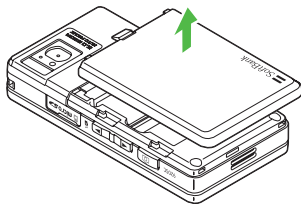
Inserting & Removing Battery

Inserting

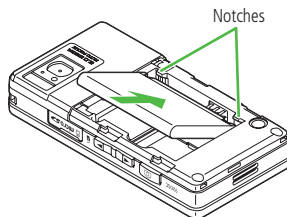
- 1 Slide Battery Cover as shown



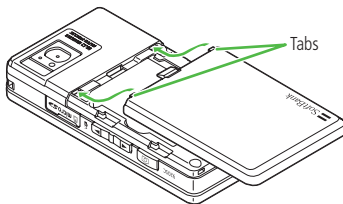
- 2 Fully remove Battery Cover as shown



- 3 Align Battery Slots and 920SC Notches to insert battery as shown



- 4 Align Battery Cover Tabs and 920SC Slots and slide Battery Cover as shown



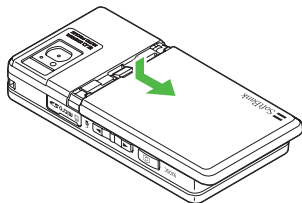
Note

- Remove battery cover with care; stress on tabs may damage them.
- Gently insert battery to avoid damaging 920SC tabs.

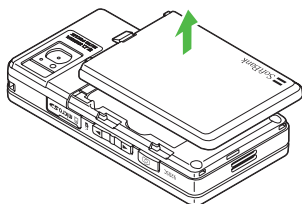
Removing

Always turn 920SC off before removing battery. Never remove battery while AC Charger or In-Car Charger is connected.

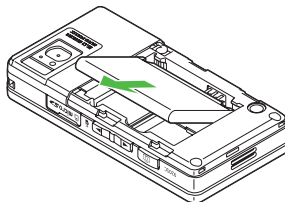
1 Slide Battery Cover as shown



2 Fully remove Battery Cover as shown



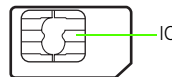
3 Lift battery up and remove as shown



USIM Card

Information & Precautions

Universal Subscriber Identity Module (USIM) Card is an IC card containing customer and authentication information, including handset number and limited storage for Phonebook entries and SMS. Install USIM Card to use 920SC.



USIM Card

Insert USIM Card into another compatible handset to access SMS and Phonebook entries saved on USIM Card. Note the following precautions regarding USIM Card usage and care (see USIM Card User Guide for details):

- Avoid using excessive force when Inserting/removing USIM Card.
- SoftBank is not liable for damage resulting from inserting USIM Card into IC card readers or other third party devices.
- Always keep USIM Card IC chip clean.
- Clean USIM Card IC chip with a soft, dry cloth.
- Do not attach labels to USIM Card; malfunction may result.

Note

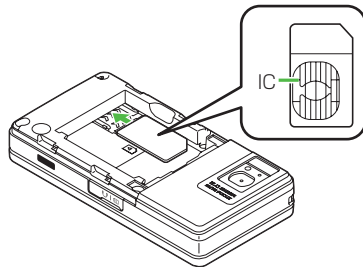
- USIM Card is the property of SoftBank.
- If USIM Card is lost or damaged, you will be charged for reissuing it.
- Return USIM Card to SoftBank upon termination of subscription.
- Returned USIM Cards are recycled.
- USIM Card specifications may change without prior notice.
- If USIM Card or 920SC with USIM Card inserted is lost or stolen in Japan or abroad, immediately contact Customer Service (☎P.13-29) to suspend service.
- Handset/USIM Card repairs, replacement, or upgrades may deactivate Chaku-Uta[®], Chaku-Uta Full[®], S! Appli, or video files on handset/Memory Card.
- Inserting another USIM Card (not the included one) into 920SC may deactivate preinstalled S! Appli or BookSurfing[®] files on handset.
- Back-up USIM Card files. SoftBank is not liable for lost files.

Inserting & Removing USIM Card

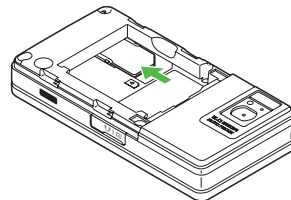
Always turn power off before opening 920SC to remove battery, or insert/remove USIM Card.

Inserting

- 1 Remove battery (☎P.13-4)
- 2 With IC chip down, insert USIM Card into card slot

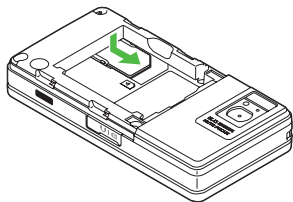


- 3 Push in USIM Card until it stops and locks



Removing

- 1 Remove battery (☞P.13-4)
- 2 Press down on USIM Card and gently slide it out



Note

- Inserting USIM Card with excessive force may damage it or 920SC.
- Do not misplace a removed USIM Card.
- To prevent damaging it, avoid touching the IC chip when inserting or removing USIM Card. Do not touch battery contacts.

PIN

USIM Card features 2 security codes: PIN and PIN2.

PIN

Use PIN (4- to 8-digit) to prevent unauthorized use of 920SC by others.

- Modify PIN (☞P.10-3).
- When PIN lock is activated, PIN entry is required each time 920SC is turned on or whenever USIM Card is re-inserted (☞P.10-2).

PIN2

PIN2 (4- to 8-digit) is required for Reset Call Cost or Edit Cost Limit, etc.

- Modify PIN2 (☞P.10-3).

Canceling PIN Lock (PUK/PUK2 Code)

Incorrectly entering PIN or PIN2 three consecutive times activates PIN Lock and limits 920SC function access. Enter PUK (PIN Unlocking Key) Code to cancel PIN Lock.

For more information, contact Customer Service (☞P.13-29).

Note

- Entering PUK or PUK2 incorrectly ten consecutive times locks USIM Card and deactivates 920SC. Take a note of PUK and PUK2.
- A locked USIM Card cannot be unlocked. Contact Customer Service (☞P.13-29).

Troubleshooting

■ 9205C does not turn on

- ☑ Is battery empty?
➔ Replace or charge battery.
- ☑ Is battery installed in 9205C?
➔ Install battery correctly.

■ When power is turned on, PIN entry window appears

- ☑ Is *PIN certification* set to *On*?
➔ If *PIN certification* is *On*, enter PIN.

■ When power is turned on, USIM password entry window appears

- ☑ Is *USIM lock* set to *On*?
➔ If *USIM lock* is *On*, enter USIM password.

■ Please insert USIM card, Incorrect USIM or USIM card failed appears when 9205C is turned on or executing a function

- ☑ Is USIM Card correctly installed?
➔ Check to see if USIM Card is correctly installed. If the message appears even though USIM Card is correctly installed, it may be damaged.
- ☑ Is USIM Card still being loaded?
➔ Try again after a while.
- ☑ Is an incorrect USIM Card used?
➔ Check to see if correct USIM Card is used. Use USIM Card specified by SoftBank.
- ☑ Is there debris on USIM Card IC chip?
➔ Remove debris with a clean, dry cloth, and then install USIM Card correctly.


■ 圏外 or Out appears and no calls can be made

- ☑ 9205C is out-of-range.
➔ Move to a place where the signal is stronger and try again.

■ Calls are interrupted or disconnected

- ☑ Does 圏外 or **Out** appear?
➔ Move to a place where the signal is stronger and try again.
- ☑ Is battery empty?
➔ Replace or charge battery.

■ Unable to make a call

- ☑ Is Call Barring set?
➔ Deactivate Call Barring.
- ☑ Is *Offline* set to *On*? ( appears)
➔ Set *Offline* to *Off*.

■ Unable to open Phonebook entry, Data Folder, Call Log, Calendar, or Messaging

- ☑ Is *Application lock* set?
➔ Cancel *Application lock*.

■ Clicking noise is heard during a call

- ☑ Noise may be generated when the signal is weak or while moving between coverage areas.

■ Unable to charge battery

- ☑ Is AC Charger Connector securely inserted into SBM Charger Connector Adapter?
 - ➔ Insert AC Charger Connector securely.
- ☑ Is SBM Charger Connector Adapter securely inserted?
 - ➔ Insert SBM Charger Connector Adapter securely.
- ☑ Is AC Charger plug securely inserted?
 - ➔ Insert AC Charger plug securely.
- ☑ Is battery installed in 920SC?
 - ➔ Install battery correctly.
- ☑ Are 920SC terminals and AC Charger clean?
 - ➔ Clean contacts with a dry cotton swab.
- ☑ Was battery charged in ambient temperature below 5 °C or above 40 °C?
 - ➔ Charge battery in ambient temperature between 5 °C and 40 °C.
- ☑ Battery may need to be replaced.
 - ➔ Install a new battery.
- ☑ Does battery always lose its charge quickly after being charged?
 - ➔ Battery life has expired. Replace with a new battery.

- ☑ Does 920SC or battery become very warm during charging?
 - ➔ If the temperature rises too much, charging may stop. After 920SC and battery are cool, retry charging.

■ Devices become hot

- ☑ During charging, AC Charger may heat up.
- ☑ 920SC may heat up during charging/long calls.
 - ➔ If 920SC can be touched with your hand, it is normal. If it is too hot to touch, immediately stop charging and contact Customer Service (☎P.13-29).

■ Battery drains quickly

- ☑ Battery may drain quickly depending on the operating environment (Ambient temperature, charging conditions, or Signal Strength), operations, and settings.
 - ➔ Use 920SC in an appropriate environment and reduce operations requiring high power (☎P.13-2).

■ Display flickers

- ☑ Is 920SC used near a fluorescent light?
 - ➔ Use 920SC as far away from a fluorescent light as possible.

■ Display is dim or unlit

- ☑ This may be due to the characteristics of Display and not a problem. The time (seconds) until Display is dimmed or unlit can be changed by adjusting the Backlight time.

■ Unable to play music via speaker

- ☑ Is *Manner mode* set?
 - ➔ Cancel *Manner mode*.
- ☑ Is the stereo earphone microphone connected?
 - ➔ Disconnect the connector for the stereo earphone microphone from 920SC.

■ Too many applications are already running. appears

- ☑ Memory is low or full.
 - ➔ Delete unnecessary S! Mail messages. If multiple functions are active, close some.

■ Unable to establish Bluetooth® or USB connections using Samsung PC Studio

- ☑ Is the USB driver installed? (for USB connection)
- ➔ If communications are executed connecting to a personal computer with the supplied USB Cable, installing the driver is required. Install the driver from the supplied CD-ROM.
- ☑ Is the connection method set correctly on the personal computer?
- ➔ Set the connection method to *USB* or *Bluetooth* on the Connection Manager of Samsung PC Studio or the Connection Wizard for the communication in use.
- ☑ Are Bluetooth® or PC USB connection port and Samsung PC Studio the same?
- ➔ Make sure port settings match those set for Samsung PC Studio Connection Manager or Connection Wizard.

■ Phonebook entry, Message folder, schedule event in Calendar, or Tasks do not appear

- ☑ Is 920SC set to *Hide* in *Secret mode*?
- ➔ Set to *Show* in *Secret mode*.

■ *Sending message failed* appears

- ☑ When sending message failed, the error message and the reason appear.
- ➔ Check the unsent reason and try again.

■ *Service not allowed* appears

- ☑ 920SC is outside the service area.
- ➔ Send from within the service area.

■ *Offline mode set.* appears

- ☑ *Offline* is set to *On*.
- ➔ Set *Offline* to *Off* and try again.

■ *Storage space short by * * bytes. Edit data folder files?* appears

- ☑ 920SC memory is full.
- ➔ Delete unnecessary files and try again.

■ *Cannot download. File corrupt.* appears

- ➔ File cannot be downloaded; cancel download.

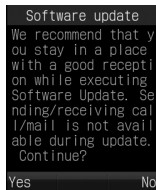
■ Unable to call via Stereo Earphone Microphone or Bluetooth®

- ☑ Is *Earphone call activate* set to *Off*?
- ➔ Even though the specified number is saved for *Earphone call*, unable to call with *Earphone call activate* set to *Off*. Set *Earphone call activate* to *On*.

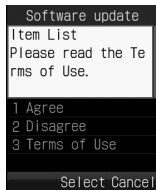
Software Update

Check for 920SC software updates and download as required. Choose to begin *Update* or *Schedule update*.

- 1 → **Tools** → **Software update**



- 2 (Yes)



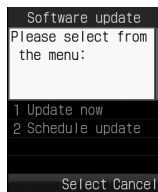
- 920SC connects to network by pressing (Yes).

- 3 Read Terms of Use and then **Agree**



- Read through Terms of Use before selecting **Agree**.

- 4 Enter Center Access Code
(⇒ P.1-15) → (OK) → (OK)



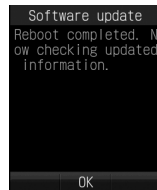
- Update Result appears.

- 5 Select one from the following updating methods

■ To update immediately

Update now


- The update starts. When completed, 920SC turns the power off and on again; then Notification window appears.

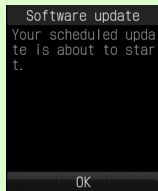


Notification Window




■ To schedule later update

Schedule update → (Yes) → Select schedule date → Select schedule time → Confirm schedule date & time → (OK)

- For procedures, find details on SoftBank Website (<http://www.softbank.jp>).
- No fees are applied to update checks or downloads.
- At scheduled update time, message appears. Press  (OK) or wait ten seconds. Update will not start while 920SC is in use. When operation ends, a message window appears. However if operation does not end within ten minutes of scheduled update time, scheduled update is automatically canceled.



Message Window

- To cancel Schedule update, perform Steps  to , select *Cancel schedule* and press  (Yes).

Note

- **Charge battery beforehand; if low, update may fail.**
- **If Scheduled update time arrives while 920SC is out-of-range, Software Update is canceled.**
- **Remain within strong, stable signal conditions.**
- **920SC Phonebook entries, media files, and other contents are not affected by software updates, but always back-up important information (note that some files cannot be copied). SoftBank is not liable for damage from lost information, etc.**
- **920SC transmissions are disabled during update.**
- **Update may take some time to complete.**
- **Update failure may disable 920SC. Contact SoftBank Customer Center, Customer Assistance.**

Function List

Main Menu Item	Page
Messaging	
Received messages	P.4-10, P.4-12
Create new	P.4-3
Retrieve new	P.4-22
Drafts	P.4-12, P.4-24
Templates	P.4-12, P.4-20, P.4-21
Sent messages	P.4-12
Unsent	P.4-12
Server mail	P.4-25
Create new SMS	P.4-8
Settings	P.12-2
Memory Status	P.2-37
Yahoo! Keitai	
Yahoo! Keitai	P.5-3
Bookmarks	P.5-6
Saved pages	P.5-7
Enter URL	P.5-3, P.5-4

Main Menu Item	Page
Yahoo! Keitai	
History	P.5-15, P.5-20
PC site browser	P.5-4
Yahoo! Keitai browser settings	P.12-5
Media Player	
Music	P.7-4
Movie	P.7-6
Streaming	P.5-8
Settings	P.12-7
Communication	
S! Town	P.5-13
S! Loop	P.5-14
S! Friend's Status	P.9-2
S! Circle Talk	P.9-6
Near Chat	P.9-10
Camera	
Take photo	P.6-5
Record video	P.6-10
Bar code reader	P.8-10
Dynamic effect	P.6-13
Video editor	P.7-9
Slide show	P.2-6

Main Menu Item	Page
S! Appli	
S! Appli library	P.7-10
Settings	P.12-10
Tools	
Alarms	P.8-4
Calculator	P.8-5
Converter	P.8-5
World clock	P.8-7
Notepad	P.8-7
Tasks	P.8-8
Voice recorder	P.8-9
Bar code reader	P.8-10
Stopwatch	P.8-13
Dictionary	P.8-14
Software update	P.13-10
Data Folder	
Pictures	P.2-24
My Pictograms	P.2-24
Ring songs · tones	P.2-24
S! Appli	P.2-24
Music	P.2-24
Videos	P.2-24
Books	P.2-24

Main Menu Item	Page
Data Folder	
S! Familiar Usability	P.2-7 P.2-24
S! Mail templates	P.2-24
Flash®	P.2-24
Flash® Ringtones	P.2-24
Other documents	P.2-24
Memory status	P.2-24
Entertainment	
S! Quick News	P.5-9
BookSurfing®	P.8-15
Calendar	
Calendar	P.8-2
Phonebook	
Phonebook	P.2-20
Create new entry	P.2-18
Call log	P.3-9
Group settings	P.2-42
Account details	P.2-23
Speed dial	P.3-7
S! Addressbook Back-up	P.11-13
Settings	P.12-10
Memory status	P.2-42

Main Menu Item	Page
Settings	
Standby window	P.12-11
Sounds & Alerts	P.12-13
Manner mode settings	P.12-14
Display settings	P.12-15
Phone settings	P.12-17
Security	P.12-19
Call settings	P.12-20
Mode settings	P.12-25
Connectivity	P.12-25
Memory settings	P.12-26

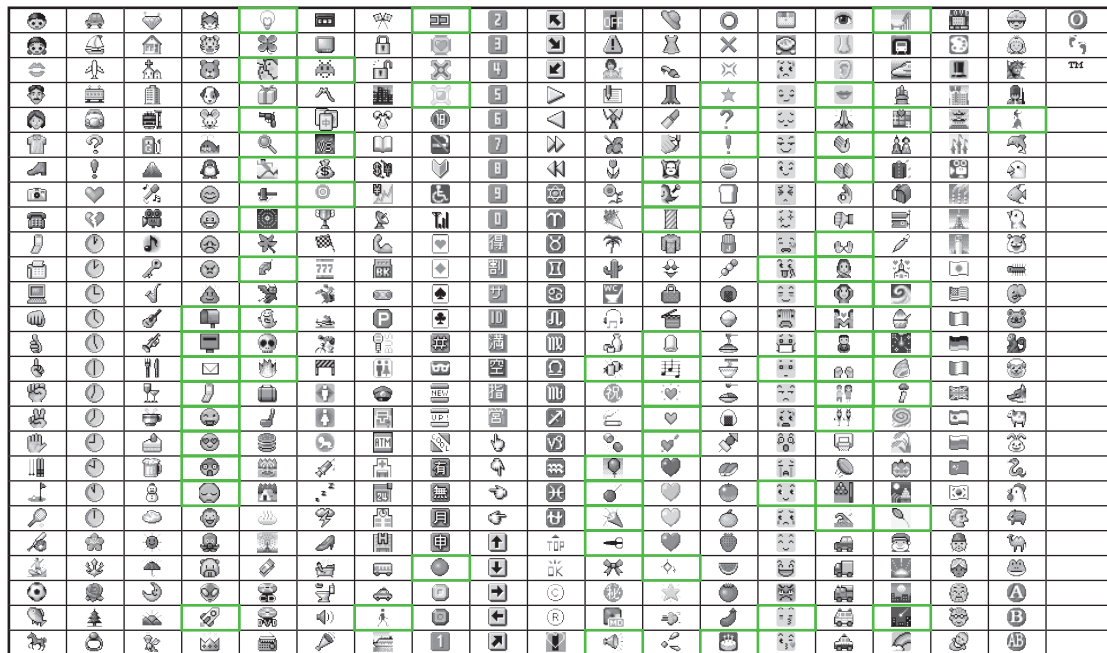
Key List for Text Entry


Multiple characters are assigned to each key. Press a key repeatedly until the target character appears.

Key	Kanji/Hiragana	Katakana	Alphanumerics	Numbers
1	あいうえおあいうえお 1	アイウエオアイウエオ 1	.,@-_:~ ⁻¹ 1	1
2	かきくけこ 2	カキクケコ 2	abcABC2	2
3	さしすせそ 3	サシスセソ 3	defDEF3	3
4	たちつとっ 4	タチツテトッ 4	ghiGHI4	4
5	なにぬねの 5	ナニヌネノ 5	jkjJKL5	5
6	はひふへほ 6	ハヒフヘホ 6	mnoMNO6	6
7	まみむめも 7	マミムメモ 7	pqrPQRS7	7
8	やゆよゃゅょ 8	ヤユヨャュョ 8	tuvTUV8	8
9	らりるれろ 9	ラリルレロ 9	wxyzWXYZ9	9
0	わをん、。 - 0	ワヲン、。 - 0	„-_!? <Space> 0	0
*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Add * /° to unfixed, convertible Kana • Toggle Pictograms, Emoticons 		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Toggle Pictograms, Emoticons 	
#	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Toggle Double-byte Symbols, Single-byte Symbols 			
↶	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Reverse toggle characters assigned to the same key before finalizing character selection 			-
⌘	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Toggle upper/lower-case 			

¹ When double-byte, "-" cannot be used ("～" appears on Display).

Pictograms



- Pictograms with  are animated.
- Some pictograms and animated pictograms may not appear properly on some models of SoftBank handsets or other devices.

Memory List

S! Mail	Received messages	Up to 500 messages
	Drafts	Up to 10 messages
	Sent messages	Up to 250 messages
	Unsent	Up to 10 messages
SMS	Received messages	Up to 500 messages
	Drafts	Up to 10 messages
	Sent messages	Up to 250 messages
	Unsent	Up to 10 messages
Data Folder	Pictures	Up to 999 items (files and subfolders) per folder
	My Pictograms	
	Ring songs · tones	
	S! Appli	
	Music	
	Videos	
	Books	
	S! Familiar Usability	
	S! Mail templates	
	Flash [®]	
Flash [®] Ringtones		
Other documents		

Specifications

920SC specifications may change without prior notice.

SoftBank 920SC

Item	Specification
Weight	129 g*
Continuous Talk Time	Voice Call: 200 minutes* (in Japan, W-CDMA)/350 minutes* (GSM) Video Call: 110 minutes* (in Japan, W-CDMA)
Continuous Standby Time (920SC closed)	340 hours* (in Japan, W-CDMA · GSM)
Dimensions (W x H x D)	52 x 101.5 x 18.9 mm* (920SC closed)
Maximum Output	0.25 W

*Approximate Value

- 920SC with battery installed.
- Battery Time is calculated by SoftBank under stable signal conditions. Calling in poor signal conditions or leaving 920SC on out-of-range will consume more power and may reduce Battery Time by more than half.
- Frequent 920SC operations requiring Backlight (e.g., Yahoo! Keitai) may reduce Continuous Talk Time and Continuous Standby Time.
- Using video for Wallpaper may significantly reduce Continuous Talking and Continuous Standby Times.
- Using S! Appli may reduce Continuous Talking and Continuous Standby Times.

- Continuous Talk Time is an average measured with a battery in stable signal conditions. Continuous Standby Time is an average measured with a new, fully charged battery with 920SC closed without calls or operations, in Standby, in stable signal conditions. Alternating between usage and Standby shortens Continuous Talk Time and Continuous Standby Time. Talk Time/Standby Time may vary by environment (battery status, ambient temperature, etc.).

Battery

Item	Specification
Voltage	3.7 V
Type	Lithium-ion
Capacity	1000 mAh
Dimensions (W x H x D)	47.3 x 36.9 x 5.6 mm* (without protruding parts)

* Approximate Value

Index

A

AC Charger	1-5
Account details	2-23
Reset	2-43
Alarms	8-4
All reset	10-12
Answering Machine	3-4
Cancel	3-4
Play recordings	3-4
Set	3-4
Any key answer	12-18
Application lock	10-5
Auto answer	3-25, 12-23
Auto answer list	3-25
Add	3-25, 12-23
Auto redial	12-24

B

Bar code reader	8-10
Create QR Code	8-12
Scanning	8-10, 8-11, 8-22
Battery	13-2
Bluetooth®	11-5
Activate	11-6
Address	12-26

Answering mode	12-25
Applicable profiles	11-5
Authorization Code	11-7
Bluetooth services	12-26
Connect to compatible device	11-7, 12-25
Delete paired devices	11-16
Edit device name	12-26
Edit name of paired device	11-15
New devices	11-6
Paired device	11-7
Paired devices indicators	11-7
Print	6-14
Receive data	11-7, 11-8
Search setting	11-16
Secure mode	12-25
Send data	11-7, 11-8
Visibility	12-25

Bookmark	5-6
Delete	5-23
Internet connection	5-7
Save	5-6
Send URL	5-22, 5-23

BookSurfing®	8-15
---------------------------	-------------

C

Cache	5-2
Calculator	8-5
Calendar	8-2
Delete schedule	8-17

Display settings	8-17
Holiday	8-17
Schedule	8-2, 8-16
View schedule	8-3, 8-16

Call barring service	3-13, 3-19
Call forwarding service	3-13, 3-16

Call log	3-9
Check	3-9
Delete	3-10

Call time & cost	3-8
Check	3-8
Reset	3-8
Set max cost limit	12-22
Show charge after call	12-22

Call waiting service	3-13, 3-17
-----------------------------------	-------------------

Camera	6-2
Anti-Shake	12-8
Attach to message for sending still image	6-16
Attach to message for sending video	6-18
Capture video	6-10
Composite still image	6-13
Dynamic effect	6-13
Edit still image	6-12
Edit video	7-9
Effect	6-16, 6-18
Face detection	6-16
Flash	6-15
Frame shot	6-9
Macro	6-15
Multi-shot	6-7

Normal	6-4	Convert currency or unit	8-5	External light	1-11	
Panorama shot	6-9	Copy item	2-42, 2-43	F		
Photo Combination	6-8	Country number	12-21	Facial Recognition	10-7	
Quick play	6-16	D			Activate	10-9
Scene	6-4	Data Folder	2-23	User registration	10-8	
Self-timer	6-16, 6-17	Date & Time	12-17	File	2-25	
Send a still image via Bluetooth®	6-16	Daylight saving time	8-19	Copy	2-30	
Send a still image via infrared	6-16	Dictionary	8-14	Delete	2-30	
Send video via Bluetooth®	6-18	Display	1-4	Details	2-44	
Send video via infrared	6-18	Backlight	12-15	Displayed icon	2-24, 2-25	
Settings	12-8, 12-9	Brightness	12-15	Lock/Unlock	2-45	
Shortcut operations	6-6, 6-11	Clock/Calendar	12-15	Rename file	2-28	
Switch cameras	6-15, 6-17	Dialing display	12-16	Set image to Wallpaper etc.	2-46	
Viewfinder	6-3	Font size	12-15	Set Ringtone	2-46	
Cancel PIN lock	10-3	Main menu style	12-15	Sort	2-45	
Center access code	1-15	Operator name	12-16	File Viewer	8-14	
Change mode	1-10	Popup menu	12-16	Shortcut operations	8-15	
Change mode settings	1-10	Wallpaper	2-6	Folder	2-27	
Phone sounds	1-11, 1-15	Display language	12-17	Copy	2-30	
Phone sounds volume	1-10	Download Content key	2-45	Create	2-27	
Volume	1-10	E			Delete	2-31
Change PIN	10-3	Earphone call	12-24	Rename folder	2-28	
Change PIN2	10-3	Emergency call	1-16	G		
Charge	1-5, 1-6	Emergency Location Report	1-16	Global Roaming	3-11	
Charger Port	1-3	Encoding	5-16, 5-20			
Clear memory	10-11	External device port	1-3			
Conference call	3-13, 3-18					
Conference call operations	3-19					
Content Key info	2-45					

H

Hearing volume	3-23, 12-25
History	5-8
Delete	5-15, 5-20, 5-25
Internet connection	5-8, 5-15, 5-20

I

In-car charger	1-6
International code	12-21
Internet page	5-2, 5-5

K

Key Lock	1-8
-----------------------	------------

L

Language	12-17
-----------------------	--------------

M

Make a call	3-2
Make international call	3-22
Make Video Call	3-5
Manner mode	1-9
Mass Storage	11-12
Media Player	7-2
Add to Playlist	7-11, 7-13
Adjust Tone volume	12-7
Create Playlist	7-8

Download	7-2
Edit video	7-9
Play music	7-4
Play Playlist	7-8
Play video	7-6
Repeat mode	12-7
Settings	12-7
Shortcut operations	7-5, 7-7
Video resolution	7-14

Memory Card

2-35

Insert/remove	2-35
---------------------	------

Memory card backup

11-10

Memory Status

2-24, 2-37

Message

4-2

Action settings	4-19
Add new folder	4-16
Add text template	2-38
Arrange	4-5, 4-20
Attach a file	4-4
Change folder name	4-26
Character code	4-22
Create	4-3, 4-8
Custom mail address	4-2
Delete	4-15, 4-22
Delete messages in server	4-26
Delete template	2-39
Details	4-22
Draft message indicators	4-13
Drafts	4-12
Forward	4-11

Forward messages in server	4-25
Indicators for attached files	4-5
Lock	4-23
Mail Server	4-2, 4-10
Mailbox	4-12
Memory status	4-26
Message list view	4-23, 12-2
Message notice	12-2
Move	4-16
Picture appearance	4-22
Receive server mail	4-25
Received message indicators	4-13
Received messages	4-12
Reply	4-10, 4-23
Retrieve all mails	4-25
Retrieve mail list	4-25
Retry function	4-2
Save attachment	4-23
Save to drafts	4-18
Scroll jump	4-22
Scroll unit	4-19, 4-22
Send from Drafts	4-24
Send S! Mail template	4-20
Send unsent message	4-25
Sending options	4-19, 4-21
Sent message indicators	4-13
Sent messages	4-12
Server mail	4-25
Server mail memory	4-26
Set secret	4-26

SMS	4-2, 4-21
Sort	4-17
Sort by	4-24
S! Mail	4-2
Templates	4-12
Unlock	4-23
Unsent	4-12
Unsent message indicators	4-13
Use text template	2-39
View	4-9, 4-12
View attachment	4-23
3D Pictogram display	4-19, 4-22
3D Pictograms	4-9
3D pictogram display setting	12-3
Missed call	3-3
Mobile Internet	5-2
Mobile tracker	10-6
Multi Search	2-4
Multi Selector	vii
Mute	1-11

N

Near Chat	9-10
Network mode	3-11
Network password	1-16
Change	3-21
Notepad	8-7

O

Offline mode	1-9
---------------------	------------

P

Password lock	10-5
PC Site Browser	5-4
Clear cache	5-21, 12-6
Cookie setting	5-21
Copy text	5-19
Delete certificates	12-6
Delete cookies	5-21, 12-6
Details	5-20
Enter URL	5-4
Font size	5-20, 12-6
Manufacture number	5-21, 12-6
PC screen	5-21
Refresh	5-19
Reset settings	5-21
Root certificates	5-16, 5-21, 12-6
Script	5-21
Search	5-20
Send URL	5-20
Phone lock	10-4
Phone Password	1-15, 10-2
Phonebook	2-16
Copy	2-41
Default number	2-42
Delete	2-22
Edit	2-42

Group	2-41
Save	2-18
Search	2-20
Set Secret mode	2-40
Setting search method	2-22

Picture browser	2-26
PIN	13-6
PIN Certification	10-2
PIN lock	10-3
PIN2	13-6
Power On/Off	1-7
Prediction On/Off	2-39
Preferred network	3-12
Print still images	6-14
PUK Code	10-3, 13-6

R

Receive a call	3-3
Receive Video Call	3-6
Record	3-24
Reject incoming calls	12-24
Edit black list	12-24
Payphone	12-24
Reject list	12-24
Side key	12-18
Unavailable	12-24
Unknown	12-24
Withheld	12-24

Reset settings	10-11
Ringtones reducer	12-24

S

Saved pages	5-7
Delete	5-24
Rename	5-24
Save	5-7
View	5-7, 5-24
Secret data folder	10-6
Secret mode	10-5
Security code	1-15
Select function from Main Menu	2-2
Select function with Switch Bar	2-3
Select item with keypad	2-2
Select network	3-11
Send DTMF	3-23, 3-26
Set Default memory	12-27
Shortcuts	2-3
Show my number	3-13, 3-22
Side key	12-18
Simple search	2-21, 12-18
Slide call	12-18
Slide show	2-6, 2-44
Softkey	vi
Software update	13-10
Sounds & Alerts	1-11
Speaker phone call	3-23, 3-24

Speed dial	3-7
SSL/TLS	5-2
Standby Window	1-17
Add member	1-20, 1-21
Add news content	1-19, 1-21
Add/overwrite shortcut	1-19
Cancel shortcut	1-21
Change mode	1-18
Display settings	1-17
News mode	1-20
Shortcut mode display settings	1-18
Use communication mode	1-20
Use shortcut mode	1-18
Stopwatch	8-13
Streaming	5-8
SVG-T/Flash® viewer	2-27
S! Addressbook Back-up	11-13
Sync log	11-16
Sync mode	11-13
S! Appli	
Activate	7-10
Backlight	12-10
Details	7-16
Download	7-11
Exit/Pause	7-10
Lock	7-15
Network S! Appli	7-10
Permission	7-16
Reset settings	12-10

Resume	7-11
Settings	12-10
Sort	12-10
Unlock	7-15
Vibration	12-10
Volume	12-10
S! Circle Talk	9-6
Delete	9-14
Members list	9-9
S! Familiar Input	12-17
S! Familiar Usability	2-7
Cancel	2-8
Download	2-7
Set	2-8
S! Friend's Status	9-2
Members list	9-2, 9-3
My Status	9-3, 9-5
S! Friend's Status notification	9-3
S! Town	5-13

T

Tasks	8-8, 8-20
Delete	8-21
Text	2-10
Text entry	2-10
Copy	2-39
Cursor position	2-39
Cut	2-39
Delete	2-14

Edit	2-14
Enter emoticon	2-12
Enter pictogram	2-12
Enter symbol	2-12
Entry Mode	2-9
Paste	2-39
Quick Address List	2-39
Quote	2-39
Undo	2-39
Time zone	12-17

U

USB connection	11-9
User's dictionary	2-14
Add	2-15
USIM Card	13-4
Insert/remove	13-5
USIM lock	10-4
USIM password	10-4

V

vFile	2-24, 2-46
Via infrared	11-2
Authorization Code	11-2
Receive data	11-3, 11-4
Send data	11-3, 11-4
Vibration	1-11, 2-41, 8-18
Video Call	3-5
Adjust ringtone volume	3-6

Alternative picture	12-23
Auto answer	12-23
Mute	3-24, 12-23
Put a call on hold	3-25
Retry with	12-23
Show my image	12-23

View Account details 2-23

Voice Call	3-2
Adjust ringtone volume	3-3
Put a call on hold	3-23

Voice mail service 3-13, 3-14

Voice recorder	8-9
Lock/Unlock sound files	8-22
Play sound files	8-10
Record settings	8-22
Record sound	8-9
Send sound files	8-21

W

World clock	8-7
--------------------	------------

Y

Yahoo! Keitai	5-3
Certificates	12-5
Clear cache	5-16, 12-5
Cookie setting	5-16
Copy text	5-14
Delete cookies	5-16, 12-5
Details	5-16

Enter URL	5-3
Font size	5-16, 12-5
Manufacture number	5-16, 12-5
Refresh	5-14
Reset settings	5-16
Root certificates	5-16, 12-5
Save image	5-15, 5-17
Save sound	5-15, 5-17, 5-18
Script	5-16, 12-5
Search	5-15
Send URL	5-15

Objective Index

Adjust volume

Hearing volume	3-23, 12-25
Media Player	12-7
Phone sounds	1-10
Ringtone volume	1-10, 3-3, 3-6
S! Appli	12-10

Back up

Memory card	11-10
Phonebook	11-13

Cancel/Unlock

Answering Machine	3-4
Call forwarding	3-16
Call waiting	3-17
File lock	2-45
Locked messages	4-23
Manner mode	1-9
Offline mode	1-9
Phonebook Secret mode	2-40
PIN lock	10-3
S! Appli lock	7-15
S! Familiar Usability	2-8
Voice mail	3-14

Change

E-mail address	4-2
Font size	5-20, 12-15
Mode	1-10
Network Password	3-21

Phone Password	10-2
PIN	10-3
PIN2	10-3

Copy

File/Folder	2-30
Items	2-42, 2-43
Phonebook	2-41
Text	2-39

Delete/Clear

Calendar	8-17
File/Folder	2-30, 2-31
Messages	4-15, 4-26
Phonebook	2-22
S! Appli	7-16
S! Circle Talk	9-14
Tasks	8-21

Edit

Calendar	8-16
Phonebook	2-42
Text	2-14

Insert/Remove

Battery	13-3
Memory Card	2-35
USIM Card	13-5

Make

Emergency call	1-16, 1-17
International call	3-22
Video Call	3-5
Voice Call	3-2

Play

Voice recorder	8-10
Answering Machine	3-4
Media Player	7-4, 7-6

Protect/Lock

File	2-45
Messages	4-23
Phonebook Secret mode	2-40
S! Appli	7-15

Receive

Bluetooth®	11-7, 11-8
Messages	4-13, 4-25
Via infrared	11-3, 11-4

Reset

Account details	2-43
All reset	10-12
Call time & cost	3-8
PC site browser	5-21
Reset settings	10-11
S! Appli	12-10
Yahoo! Keitai	5-16

Save

Facial Recognition	10-8
Messages	2-38
Phonebook	2-16, 2-18
S! Friend's Status	9-2, 9-3
Standby Window	1-19
User's dictionary	2-15

Search

Bluetooth®	11-6
------------	------

Multi Search	2-4
Phonebook	2-20

Send

Bluetooth®	11-7, 11-8
Manufacture number	5-16, 5-21
Messages	4-3, 4-8
URL	5-15, 5-16, 5-20, 5-21
Via infrared	11-3, 11-4

Set

All keys lock	1-8
Answering Machine	3-4
Any key answer	12-18
Bluetooth®	11-6
Calendar	8-17
Call barring	3-13, 3-19
Call forwarding	3-16
Call waiting	3-17
Clock/Calendar	12-15
Date & Time	12-17
Facial Recognition	10-9
Images	2-46
International code	12-21
Manner mode	1-9
Media Player	12-7
Mode	1-10
Offline mode	1-9
Phone lock	10-4
Phone sounds	1-11
Phonebook	2-22
Photo/Video	12-8, 12-9

Reject incoming calls	12-24
S! Appli	7-16
S! Familiar Usability	2-8
Secret mode	10-5
Side key	12-18
Simple search	12-18
Sounds & Alerts	1-11
Standby Window	1-17
Voice mail	3-14

Show

Calendar	8-2
Call log	3-9
Cost after call	12-22
Data Folder	2-23
Standby Window	1-17

View

Account details	2-23
Calendar	8-3
Call log	3-9
Call time & cost	3-8
Memory status	2-37
Messages	4-9, 4-12, 4-23, 4-26

Advanced Settings Index

Account Details	2-43	S! Addressbook Back-up	11-16
Alarm	8-18	S! Appli	7-15
Bar Code Reader	8-22	S! Circle Talk	9-14
Basic Operations	2-37	S! Friend's Status	9-12
Bluetooth® Settings	11-15	S! Quick News	5-25
Bookmarks	5-22	S! Town	5-26
Calendar	8-16	Saved Pages	5-24
Call Logs	3-26	Sending S! Mail	4-18
Capturing Still Images	6-15	Sending SMS	4-21
Conference Call	3-27	Slide Show	2-38
Currency or Unit Conversion	8-19	Standby Window Settings	1-21
Editing Still Images	6-18	Streaming	5-24
Facial Recognition	10-12	Tasks	8-20
File Viewer	8-23	Text Entry	2-38
File/Folder Management	2-44	User's Dictionary	2-39
Folder Management	4-26	Using & Managing Messages	4-23
Memory Status	2-47	Video Call	3-24
Music Playback	7-11	Video Playback	7-13
Notepad	8-20	Viewing Files	2-44
Page Operations	5-22	Voice Call	3-22
PC Site Browser	5-19	Voice Recorder	8-21
Phonebook	2-40	World Clock	8-19
Playlist	7-15	Yahoo! Keitai	5-14
Received Messages	4-22		
Recording Videos	6-17		

Warranty & Service

Warranty

920SC purchase includes Warranty.

- Confirm shop name and date of purchase.
- Read through the contents of the Warranty and keep it in a safe place.
- The warranty period can be found in the Warranty.

SoftBank is not liable for damage to you or a third party from missed calls, etc. due to handset failure or malfunction, etc.

Repair Requests

Before submitting 920SC for repair, consult "Troubleshooting" for a solution. If problem persists, contact Customer Service (☎P.13-29) or the nearest SoftBank shop; be prepared to describe problem in detail.

- During the warranty period, repairs will be made under the terms and conditions described in the warranty.
- After the warranty period, repairs will be upon request; if said repairs can be made, you will be charged for them.

Note

- 920SC files and settings may be lost or altered due to accidents or repairs. Keep a copy of important files, etc. like Phonebook entries. SoftBank is not liable for damage resulting from accidental loss or alteration of 920SC files (Phonebook, Data Folder, etc.) or settings.
- Disassembling or modifying this product may be a violation of the Radio Law. Note that SoftBank will not accept repair requests for disassembled or modified products.

Customer Service

For SoftBank handset or service information, call General Information. For repairs, call Customer Assistance.









SoftBank Customer Center

From a SoftBank handset, dial 157 for General Information, or 113 for Customer Assistance, toll free

SoftBank International Call Center

From outside Japan, dial **+81-3-5351-3491**
(Please take care to dial correctly. International charges will apply.)

Call these numbers toll free from landlines.

Subscription Areas	Contact	
Hokkaido, Aomori, Akita, Iwate, Yamagata, Miyagi, Fukushima, Niigata, Tokyo, Kanagawa, Chiba, Saitama, Ibaraki, Tochigi, Gunma, Yamanashi, Nagano, Toyama, Ishikawa, Fukui	General Information	 0088-240-157 (Toll-free)
	Customer Assistance	 0088-240-113 (Toll-free)
Aichi, Gifu, Mie, Shizuoka	General Information	 0088-241-157 (Toll-free)
	Customer Assistance	 0088-241-113 (Toll-free)
Osaka, Hyogo, Kyoto, Nara, Shiga, Wakayama	General Information	 0088-242-157 (Toll-free)
	Customer Assistance	 0088-242-113 (Toll-free)
Hiroshima, Okayama, Yamaguchi, Tottori, Shimane, Tokushima, Kagawa, Ehime, Kochi, Fukuoka, Saga, Nagasaki, Oita, Kumamoto, Miyazaki, Kagoshima, Okinawa	General Information	 0088-250-157 (Toll-free)
	Customer Assistance	 0088-250-113 (Toll-free)

SoftBank 920SC User Guide

March 2008, Second Edition

SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp.



モバイル・リサイクル・ネットワーク
携帯電話・PHSのリサイクルにご協力を。

To help protect the environment and recycle valuable resources, mobile phone, and PHS shops displaying the above mark accept mobile phones, batteries, and chargers of all manufacturers.

Mobile phones, batteries, and chargers collected for recycling cannot be returned.

To protect your privacy, delete any personal information (telephone numbers, call log records, messages, etc.) beforehand.

For more information, please visit your nearest SoftBank Shop.

Model Name: SoftBank 920SC

Manufacturer: Samsung Electronics Co., Ltd.
